

UC-NRLF



\$B 257 368

REESE LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.

Received

July

, 1900.

Accession No. 80368 . Class No. 753

K35



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation





<u>I</u>	ō	ī
<u>II</u>	ī ū	īs
<u>III</u>	ū	ūs
<u>IV</u>	ē	ēt

	<u>I</u>	<u>II</u>	<u>III</u>	<u>IV</u>	<u>V</u>
	a	us	s	us, ū	ēs
	al	ī	is	īs	ēi
	al	ō	ī	ū ū	ēt
e	am	um	em, in; um, ū		em
	a	e	s	us ū	ēs
h	ā	ō	e, ī	ū	e

Singula

	<u>I</u>	<u>II</u>	<u>III</u>
V & V	al	ī ā	ēs, a, ia.
G	arum	um, ōrum; um, ium	
o & A	is ābus	is, ibus	ibus
Pl.	as	os; a	is, ēs, a, ra

Plura

IV  
 ūs ūa  
 ūum  
 ūbus, ūbus  
 ūs, ūa

V  
 ēs  
 erum  
 ēbus  
 ēs

# AN ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR

OF THE

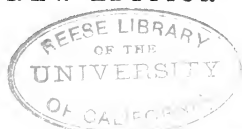
## LATIN LANGUAGE

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS

BY BENJAMIN HALL KENNEDY, D.D.

CANON OF ELY

NEW EDITION



LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON

NEW YORK AND BOMBAY

1897

80368

PA 2095

K46

1897

MAIN

## PREFACE

TO

## THE THIRD EDITION.

THE distinctive features of this Elementary Latin Grammar, as compared with that of Lilly, may be stated as follows.

I. *Accidence*.—1. Quantity is briefly noticed in the first chapter, and the quantities of Latin words are marked throughout; thus the learner is impressed with the importance of pronunciation, and prepared for the study of Prosody. 2. The Adjective is set down as a distinct part of speech, instead of the Participle. 3. The use of the Pronoun *hic, hæc, hoc*, in the declension of Nouns is dispensed with as unnecessary,—all that it is intended to teach being supplied by judicious Praxis. (See “the Child’s Latin Primer.”) 4. The term *Conjunctive Mood* is adopted from the best modern writers, its special uses (Potential, Subjunctive, &c.) being reserved for explanation in the Syntax. 5. The Participle, or Gerundive, in *dus* has been deprived of the name of *Future*, to which it certainly has no claim. 6. The Future Perfect in *ro* has been removed from the Conjunctive to its proper place in the Indicative Mood. 7. The Tenses are translated by one sign only, the other English signs being afterwards specially noticed. In like manner, the varying forms, *ere* for *erunt*, *re* for *ris*, *fui* for *sum*, &c., are omitted in the paradigms, and specially noticed in a subsequent place. It is hoped that the paradigms have been made easier to the learner by these changes, and also by the synoptical form in which they are printed. 8. The old memorial hexameters for genders of Nouns, flexion of Verbs, &c., are replaced by rhyming Latin lines

in octosyllabic rhythm, which are learnt (as the Author has found) with infinitely greater ease, remembered quite as well, and applied with at least equal readiness. In adopting this alteration, the Author has followed not only the dictates of his own judgment, but also the general practice of Continental School Grammars.

II. *Smaller Syntax and First Rules of Construing*.—These rules are intended to introduce the beginner to the practice of construing simple sentences, before he enters upon the further study of Syntax.

III. In the *larger Syntax*, the Author has applied the improved principles of modern philology to the memorial system of instruction. He has chosen Latin rules on account of their superior conciseness; and, while he has made the individual rules short and clear enough for memorial citation, he has also adhered as nearly as he might to philosophical accuracy in their arrangement; following the growth of the sentence from its simplest to its complex forms, and carefully explaining the distinction between the simple and compound sentence, as also between the several kinds of compound sentences. It is only by an accurate understanding of these distinctions that a learner can thoroughly master the doctrine of the Subjunctive mood, so eminently important in Latin; and, how easily and perfectly it can be mastered by the method here adopted, the Author knows from long experience. By the Second Part of this Syntax (§§ 180—200) the Author is willing that the merits of this Grammar should be tested: it being remembered that boys are not supposed to study those rules until they are practically grounded in the *Syntaxis Minor*. It has not been thought necessary to append a translation of the higher Syntax.

IV. The elementary rules of *Prosody* are thrown into the form of memorial Latin verses. This plan is appropriate to the subject itself, and suited to learners who have already made some progress in the language. Although it has been impossible in these verses to avoid occasional deviations from approved rhythm, yet, it will

be found that the objectionable lines do not form so much as one tenth part of the whole number ; while of verses decidedly inharmonious there are only 5 or 6 out of 225 ; and even these may be turned to advantage, as examples of what should be avoided in rhythm.

The Author has never departed from the usual Grammatical Nomenclature, except for powerful reasons. In addition to the instances before mentioned, he wishes to draw the attention of scholars to the great advantage of the term *Copulative Verbs*, as applied by him to the class of Verbs (*sum, fio, videor, vocor, &c.*), which *couple* a Subject and a Nominal Predicate. He is not aware that any collective term has heretofore been invented for them and the Syntax rules affecting them have been consequently vague and loose. In order to appropriate here the word Copulative, the Author has given to *et, que, &c.*, the name of *Sociative Conjunctions*, and to *aut, vel, &c.*, that of *Dissociative* : terms also better in themselves than *Copulative* and *Disjunctive*.







# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

## ACCIDENCE, OR WORD-FORMATION.

---

### SIGNS OF SPEECH.

§ 1. GRAMMAR teaches the rules of speech. Latin Grammar teaches the rules of the Latin speech, which was spoken by the ancient Romans.

§ 2. The Parts of Speech are Words: and the elements of Words are Letters.

§ 3. The Latin LETTERS are twenty-five, being the same as the English without W.

Capitals: A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

Small: a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

§ 4. Six of the Letters are VOCALIS, Vowels, self-sounding, a, e, i, o, u, y: the rest are CONSONANTES, Consonants, which cannot be sounded without a vowel.

§ 5. CONSONANTS are divided into Liquids, Double Consonants, and Mutes.

The Liquids are l, m, n, r; Double Consonants, x, z; the rest are Mutes.

§ 6. A SYLLABLE consists of one or more letters pronounced in one breath ; as ī-lēx.

A DIPHTHONG is the sound of two vowels meeting in one syllable.

There are three usual diphthongs, æ, œ, au ; and three seldom used, ai, ei, eu.

§ 7. Every Syllable is considered SHORT (˘) or LONG (¯) in quantity, according as its vowel is short or long.

A Vowel may be	{	Short by nature, . . .	as āmŏr.
		Long by nature, . . .	as ēsū.
		Short by position before another vowel, . . .	as pīōs.
		Long by position before two con- sonants or a double consonant, as	pērnōx.

*Obs.* All diphthongs are long ; as caūdāe.

§ 8. PUNCTA, the Signs of Punctuation, or Stops, are the same in Latin as in English : Comma (,) ; Semicolon (;) ; Colon (:) ; Full Stop (.) ; Note of Interrogation (?) , Note of Admiration (!).

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 9. THE PARTS OF SPEECH, or Words, are of three kinds :

I. NOMINA, Nouns ; which are threefold :

(1) NOMINA SUBSTANTIVA, Nouns Substantive, or names of persons and things : as, Cēsār, *Cæsar* ; ōvum, *an egg* ; virtūs, *virtue*.

(2) NOMINA ADJECTIVA, Nouns Adjective ; which express the qualities of persons and things : as, clārūs, *illustrious* ; grāndīs, *large* ; libēr, *free*.

(3) PRONOMINA, Pronouns ; which are used to avoid

the frequent repetition of Substantives : as, *ěgŏ, I; tŭ, thou; illě, he; quī, who.*

*Note.* Names of persons and places are called Proper Names : other Substantives are called Common Nouns, or Appel-  
latives.

II. VERBA, Verbs ; which express what persons and things do, suffer, or are : as, *Cāsār vēnīt, Cæsar comes; vīrtūs laūdātŭr, virtue is praised; ōvum ēst grāndě, the egg is large.*

III. PARTICULÆ, Particles ; which are four-fold :

- (1.) ADVERBIA, Adverbs ; which express the qualities of verbs or adjectives : as, *běně, well; cělěritě, quickly; nŭnc, now.*
- (2.) PRÆPOSITIONES, Prepositions ; which express the relations of nouns to each other : as, *Cāsār ĩn Itāliam vēnīt, Cæsar comes into Italy.*
- (3.) CONJUNCTIONES, Conjunctions ; which connect the other parts of speech : as, *ěgŏ ět Cāsār, I and Cæsar; vēnīt ūt laūdētŭr, he comes that he may be praised.*
- (4.) INTERJECTIONES, Interjections ; words of exclamation : as, *heŭ, ēheŭ, heī, vā, alas! heŭs, ho! O, oh! ēn, ēccě, lo!*

§ 10. THEREFORE the PARTS of SPEECH are Eight ; viz.

- |                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Substantive ;</i>        | 5. <i>Adverb ;</i>                 |
| 2. <i>Adjective ;</i>          | 6. <i>Preposition ;</i>            |
| 3. <i>Pronoun ;</i>            | 7. <i>Conjunction ;</i>            |
| 4. <i>Verb ;</i>               | 8. <i>Interjection ;</i>           |
| which are Flēxībīliā,          | which are Inflēxībīliā, <i>In-</i> |
| <i>Flexible, or, declined.</i> | <i>flexible, or, undeclined.</i>   |

*Note.* FLEXIO, Flexion, is the manner of changing the endings of words in order to show their relations to other words. The flexion of Nouns is called Dēclīnātīŏ, *Declension* ; the flexion of Verbs Cōnjūgātīŏ, *Conjugation*.

## DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 11. THE SUBSTANTIVE is declined by Number and Case.

NUMERI, the Numbers, are two :

- I. Singŭlārīs, *Singular*, which speaks of one, as, Măgīstēr, *a master*.
- II. Plūrālīs, *Plural*, which speaks of more than one, as, Măgīstrī, *masters*.

CASUS, the Cases, are six :

- I. Nōmīnātīvŭs, the *Nominative* (or Subject) Case, usually goes before a Verb, and answers the question Who, or What? as, *Who teaches?* Măgīstēr dōcēt, *the master teaches*.
- II. Gēnītīvŭs, the *Genitive* Case, has the sign *of*, and answers the question, Whose, or Whereof? as, *Whose voice?* Măgīstrī vōx, *the voice of the master*.
- III. Dātīvŭs, the *Dative* Case, has the signs *to*, *for*, and answers the question, To or for Whom? To or for What? as, *To whom do I speak?* Lōquōr măgīstrō, *I speak to the master*.
- IV. Accūsātīvŭs, the *Accusative* (or Object) Case, follows the Verb, and answers the question, Whom or What? as, *Whom do I see?* Vīdēō măgīstrum, *I see the master*. It also follows Prepositions.
- V. Vōcātīvŭs, the *Vocative* Case, is of one called or spoken to: as, O măgīstēr! *O master!*
- VI. Ablātīvŭs, the *Ablative* Case, has the signs *by*, *with*, *from*, *in*, and others, and often follows Prepositions: as, *By whom am I taught?* Dōcēōr ā măgīstrō, *I am taught by the master*.

§ 12. There are Five DECLENSIONS of Latin Substantives, known by the endings of the Genitive Case Singular.

The Genitive Singular of the 1st Declension ends in *æ*.

”	”	2nd	”	”	<i>i.</i>
”	—	”	3rd	”	<i>īs.</i>
”	”	”	4th	”	<i>ūs.</i>
”	”	”	5th	”	<i>ei.</i>

§ 13. GENERA, the Genders, of Nouns are three :

I. Māscūlinum, *Masculine*.

II. Fēmīnīnum, *Feminine*.

III. Neūtrum, *Neuter*.

*Note.* When a Noun can be either Masculine or Feminine, its Gender is called Cōmmūnē, *Common* : as, *pārēns*, a *parent*.



## FIRST DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES

§ 14. The Nominative of the First Declension ends in *a* : except a few Greek words, chiefly Proper Names, which end in *as*, *es*, or *e*.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Mēns-ā, <i>a table</i>	Mēns-æ, <i>tables</i>
Gen.	Mēns-æ, <i>of a table</i>	Mēns-ārum, <i>of tables</i>
Dat.	Mēns-æ, <i>to or for a table</i>	Mēns-īs, <i>to or for tables</i>
Acc.	Mēns-am, <i>a table</i>	Mēns-ās, <i>tables</i>
Voc.	Mēns-ā, <i>O table</i>	Mēns-æ, <i>O tables</i>
Abl.	Mēns-ā, <i>by, with, or from a table.</i>	Mēns-īs, <i>by, with, or from tables.</i>

*Obs.* 1. Some Nouns take *um* as well as *arum* in the Genitive Plural : as, *cœlicōlum* or *cœlicōlārum*.

*Obs.* 2. *Děā*, a goddess, has Dative and Ablative Plural *děābūs*. So *filiā*, a daughter, *filiābūs*.

*Note.* Greek Nouns in *as*, *es*, *e*, are thus declined : —

Nom.	Ænē-ās,	Gen.	æ,	Dat.	æ,	Acc.	ān or am,	Voc.	ā	Abl.	ā.
Nom.	Anchīs-ēs,	Gen.	æ,	Dat.	æ,	Acc.	ēn	Voc.	ē or ā,	Abl.	ā or ē
Nom.	Cýbēl-ē,	Gen.	ēs,	Dat.	æ,	Acc.	ēn	Voc.	ē	Abl.	ē

## SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 15. The Nominative of the Second Declension ends in *us* or *er*, of the Masculine gender : in *um* of the Neuter gender.

## (a) Masculine Substantives.

## 1.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Dömln-ūs, <i>a lord</i>	Dömln-ī, <i>lords</i>
Gen.	Dömln-ī, <i>of a lord</i>	Dömln-ōrum, <i>of lords</i>
Dat.	Dömln-ō, <i>to or for a lord</i>	Dömln-īs, <i>to or for lords</i>
Acc.	Dömln-um, <i>a lord</i>	Dömln-ōs, <i>lords</i>
Voc.	Dömln-ě, <i>O lord</i>	Dömln-ī, <i>O lords</i>
Abl.	Dömln-ō, <i>by, with, or from a lord.</i>	Dömln-īs, <i>by, with, or from lords.</i>

## 2.

Nom.	Măgīst-ēr, <i>a master</i>	Măgīstr-ī, <i>masters</i>
Gen.	Măgīstr-ī, <i>of a master</i>	Măgīstr-ōrum, <i>of masters</i>
Dat.	Măgīstr-ō, <i>to or for a master</i>	Măgīstr-īs, <i>to or for masters</i>
Acc.	Măgīstr-um, <i>a master</i>	Măgīstr-ōs, <i>masters</i>
Voc.	Măgīst-ēr, <i>O master</i>	Măgīstr-ī, <i>O masters</i>
Abl.	Măgīstr-ō, <i>by, with, or from a master</i>	Măgīstr-īs, <i>by, with, or from masters.</i>

## 3.

Nom.	Pŭ-ēr, <i>a boy</i>	Pŭēr-ī, <i>boys</i>
Gen.	Pŭēr-ī, <i>of a boy</i>	Pŭēr-ōrum, <i>of boys</i>
Dat.	Pŭēr-ō, <i>to or for a boy</i>	Pŭēr-īs, <i>to or for boys</i>
Acc.	Pŭēr-um, <i>a boy</i>	Pŭēr-ōs, <i>boys</i>
Voc.	Pŭ-ēr, <i>O boy</i>	Pŭēr-ī, <i>O boys</i>
Abl.	Pŭēr-ō, <i>by, with, or from a boy.</i>	Pŭēr-īs, <i>by, with, or from boys.</i>

## (b) Neuter.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Rēgn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ă, <i>kingdoms</i>
Gen.	Rēgn-ī, <i>of a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ōrum, <i>of kingdoms</i>
Dat.	Rēgn-ō, <i>to or for a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-īs, <i>to or for kingdoms</i>
Acc.	Rēgn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ă, <i>kingdoms</i>
Voc.	Rēgn-um, <i>O kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ă, <i>O kingdoms</i>
Abl.	Rēgn-ō, <i>by, with, or from a kingdom.</i>	Rēgn-īs, <i>by, with, or from kingdoms.</i>

**Obs. 1** Most Substantives in *er* are declined like *măgîstēr*, dropping *e* in the Genitive. Those declined like *pŭēr*, keeping *e*, are:

*sŏcēr*, *gĕnĕr*, *ărmîgĕr*,  
*ădŭltĕr*, *vĕspĕr*, *signîfĕr*.

**Obs. 2.** *Lîbĕr*, a book, is declined like *măgîstĕr*. *Lîbĕr*, *Bacchus*, and *libĕrî*, 'children, like *pŭĕr*.

**Obs. 3.** *Fîlîŭs*, *gĕnîŭs*, and Roman Proper Names in *îŭs*, make the Vocative in *î*: as, *fîlî*, *O son*; *gĕnî*, *O genius*; *Mĕrcŭrî*, *O Mercurius*; *Căi*, *O Caius*. *Pŏmpĕî*, *O Pompeius*.

**Obs. 4.** Genitives in *îi* were anciently contracted into *î*; as *îngĕnĭum*, *disposition*, *îngĕnîi*, *îngĕnî*.

**Obs. 5.** Some Nouns take *um* as well as *orum* in the Genitive Plural: as, *nŭmmum* or *nŭmmŏrum*.

**Note 1.** *Dĕŭs*, *God*, is thus declined: —

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	<i>Dĕŭs</i> , <i>God</i>	<i>Dî</i> (seldom <i>Dĕî</i> or <i>Dîi</i> ), <i>Gods</i>
Gen.	<i>Dĕî</i> , <i>of God</i>	<i>Dĕŏrum</i> or <i>Dĕŭm</i> , <i>of Gods</i>
Dat.	<i>Dĕŏ</i> , <i>to God</i>	<i>Dîs</i> (seldom <i>Dĕis</i> or <i>Dîis</i> ), <i>to Gods</i>
Acc.	<i>Dĕum</i> , <i>God</i>	<i>Dĕŏs</i> , <i>Gods</i>
Voc.	<i>Dĕŭs</i> , <i>O God</i>	<i>Dî</i> (seldom <i>Dĕî</i> or <i>Dîi</i> ), <i>O Gods</i>
Abl.	<i>Dĕŏ</i> , <i>by, with, or from God</i> .	<i>Dîs</i> (seldom <i>Dĕis</i> or <i>Dîis</i> ), <i>by with, or from Gods</i> .

**Note 2.** *Vîr*, a man, Gen. *vîrî*, &c. Plur. Nom. *vîrî*, &c.

**Note 3.** Greek words in *ŏs*, *ŏn*, are thus declined. —

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>
Nom.	<i>Dĕlŏs</i>	Nom.	<i>Cŏlŏn</i>
Gen.	<i>Dĕlî</i>	Gen.	<i>Cŏlî</i>
Dat.	<i>Dĕlŏ</i>	Dat.	<i>Cŏlŏ</i>
Acc.	<i>Dĕlŏn</i> or <i>Dĕlum</i>	Acc.	<i>Cŏlŏn</i>
Voc.	<i>Dĕlē</i>	Voc.	<i>Cŏlŏn</i>
Abl.	<i>Dĕlŏ</i> .	Abl.	<i>Cŏlŏ</i> .

### THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 16. The Nominative of the Third Declension ends in *a*, *e*, *o*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*: the Genitive always ends in *îs*, but is formed from the Nominative in many different ways.

## § 17. Formation of the Genitive in Third Declension.

Nom. Termination.		Gender.	
A	- -	Gen. adds <i>tīs</i> : as, pōēmā, pōēmātīs. - -	N.
E	- -	Gen. <i>īs</i> : as mārē, mārīs. - - - -	N.
O	- -	Gen. adds <i>nīs</i> : as, lēō, lēōnīs ; nātīō, nātīōnīs. But cārō, cārīs. - - - -	M. F.
	DO, GO	Gen. <i>inīs</i> : as, ōrdō, ōrdīnīs ; vīrgō, vīrgīnīs. So hōmō, nēmō, tūrbō, Apōllō. But ligō, ligōnīs ; Mācēdō, Mācēdōnīs. -	F. M.
C	- -	Lāc, lāctīs. - - - -	N.
L	- -	Gen. adds <i>īs</i> : as, sōl, sōlīs. But mēl, mēllīs ; fēl, fēllīs ; sāl, sālīs. - - - -	N. M.
N	ĀN, ĒN, ŌN	Gen. adds <i>īs</i> : as, Tītān, Tītānīs ; rēn. rēnīs. But sīndōn, sīndōnīs ; so Gōrgōn ; hālcŷōn ; with others. Some Proper Names make <i>ontīs</i> , as, Xēnōphōn, Xēnōphōntīs. - -	M. F.
	ĒN	Gen. <i>inīs</i> : as, lūmēn, lūmīnīs : so pēctēn. -	N. M.
R	AR	Gen. <i>ārīs</i> : as, cālcār, cālcārīs ; or <i>ārīs</i> , as, jūbār, jūbārīs ; pār, pārīs. But fār, fārīs. -	N.
	ER	Gen. adds <i>īs</i> : as, cārcēr, cārcērīs ; vēr, vērīs. - - - -	M. N.
	TER	Gen. casts out <i>e</i> and adds <i>īs</i> : as, pātēr, patrīs. (So also īmbēr, īmbērīs ; and names of months in <i>er</i> ; as, Nōvēmbēr, Nōvēmbērīs.) But Jūppītēr, Jōvīs ; ītēr, ītīnērīs ; lātēr, lātērīs. - - - -	M. N.
	OR	Gen. <i>ōrīs</i> : as, hōnōr, hōnōrīs ; but ārbōr, ārbōrīs ; āquōr, āquōrīs ; mārmōr, mār- mōrīs ; cōr, cōrdīs. - - - -	M. F. N
	UR	Gen. adds <i>īs</i> : as, fūlgūr, fūlgūrīs ; fūr, fūrīs. Gen. <i>ōrīs</i> : as, ēbūr, ēbōrīs. But jēcūr, jēcīnōrīs and jēcōrīs. - - - -	N. M.
S	AS	Gen. <i>ātīs</i> : as, āētās, āētātīs. But vās, vāsīs ; vās, vādīs ; mās, mārīs ; ās, āssīs. - -	F. M. N
		Gen. <i>āntīs</i> : as, Pāllās, Pāllāntīs ; eo gīgās ; ēlēphās ; ādāmās. - - - -	M.
		Gen. <i>ādīs</i> : as, Pāllās, Pāllādīs. - - - -	F.
	rs (parisyl.)	Gen. <i>is</i> : as, nūbēs, nūbīs. - - - -	F. M.
	es (impari- syl.)	Gen. <i>ītīs</i> : as, mīlēs, mīlītīs : so hōspēs ; sāt- tēllēs ; mērgēs. - - - -	M. F.
		Gen. <i>ētīs</i> : as, sēgēs, sēgētīs : so īntērprēs, tēgēs. - - - -	M. F.
		Gen. <i>ētīs</i> : as, quīēs, quīētīs. - - - -	F.
		— <i>īdīs</i> : as ōbsēs, ōbsīdīs. - - - -	M. F.
		— <i>ēdīs</i> : only pēs, pēdīs, with its com- pounds. - - - -	M. F.
		— <i>ēdīs</i> : only mērcēs, hērēs. - - - -	F. M
		But Cērēs, Cērērīs ; ās. ārīs (N.) ; prās, prādīs.	



Nom. Termination.		Gender.
is (parisyl.) is (imparisyl.)	Gen. <i>īs</i> : as, āvis, āvis; āmnīs, āmnīs.	F. M.
	Gen. <i>īdīs</i> : as, lāpīs, lāpīdīs : so cāssīs ( <i>helmet</i> ) : <i>tigrīs</i> (also parisyll.). - - -	M. F.
	— <i>ērīs</i> : as cīnīs, cīnērīs; pūlvīs, pūlvērīs. - - -	M.
	— <i>ītīs</i> : -līs, lītīs : so Sāmnīs, Quīrīs, Dīs. But sānguīs, sānguīnīs; glīs, glīrīs.	M. F.
os	Gen. <i>ōtīs</i> : as, dōs, dōtīs : so cōs; sācērdōs. — <i>ōrīs</i> . as, flōs, flōrīs; ōs, ōrīs. - -	M. F. M. N.
	But cūstōs, cūstōdīs; bōs, bōvīs; ōs, ōssīs.	
ūs	Gen. <i>ūtīs</i> : as, vīrtūs, vīrtūtīs : so sērvītūs; jīvētūs; sēnētūs; sālūs. - -	F.
	— <i>ūdīs</i> : as, pālūs, pālūdīs : so īncūs. But pēcūs, pēcūdīs. - - -	F.
	— <i>ūrīs</i> : as, tēllūs, tēllūrīs; and monosyllables; as rūs, mūs. - - -	N. M. F.
	But grūs, grūīs; sūs, sūīs. - - -	
ūs	Gen. <i>ērīs</i> : as, vūlnūs, vūlnērīs; Vēnūs, Vēnērīs. - - -	N. F
	— <i>ōrīs</i> : as, pēcūs, pēcōrīs. - - -	N.
A ūS	Gen. <i>aūdīs</i> : only laūs, laūdīs; fraūs, fraūdīs.	F.
LS, NS, RS	Gen. <i>tīs</i> for <i>s</i> : as, pūs, pūtīs; frōns, frōntīs; pārs, pārtīs. But frōns, frōndīs; glāns, glāndīs. - - -	F. M.
BS, PS, MS	Gen. inserts <i>i</i> before <i>s</i> : as, trābs, trābīs; stīrps, stīrpīs; hīēms, hīēmīs. But cālēbs, cālībīs. - - -	F. M.
CĒPS	Gen. <i>cīpīs</i> : as mūnīcēps, mūnīcīpīs. So prīncēps, aūcēps. - - -	C.
I' - -	Gen. <i>ītīs</i> : cāpūt, cāpītīs, and its compounds.	N.
X AX	Gen. <i>ācīs</i> : as, pāx, pācīs. But fāx, fācīs.	F.
EX	Gen. <i>īcīs</i> : as, jūdēx, jūdīcīs : so vīndēx; īndēx; īlēx; cārēx. But vībēx, vībīcīs; vērvēx, vērvēcīs; nēx, nēcīs. - - -	M. F.
	— <i>ēgīs</i> : as, lēx, lēgīs. But grēx, grēgīs; rēmēx, rēmīgīs. - - -	M. F.
	Remark sēnēx, sēnīs; sūpēllēx, sūpēllētīlīs.	
IX	Gen. <i>īcīs</i> : as, cōrnīx, cōrnīcīs : so phōēnīx. — <i>īcīs</i> : as, cālīx, cālīcīs : so fōrnīx. But strīx, strīgīs; nīx, nīvīs. - - -	F. M. F.
OX	Gen. <i>ōcīs</i> : as, vōx, vōcīs. But nōx, nōctīs.	F.
UX	Gen. <i>ūcīs</i> : as, nūx, nūcīs. But lūx, lūcīs; Pōllūx, Pōllūcīs; cōnjūx, cōnjūgīs. -	F. M.
YX	Gen. <i>ȳgīs</i> : as, Phrȳx, Phrȳgīs. Some have <i>ȳcis</i> , <i>ȳcis</i> . - - -	F. M.
NX, RX	Gen. <i>cīs</i> or <i>gīs</i> : as, lȳnx, lȳncīs; ārx, ārcīs; Sphīnx, Sphīngīs. - - -	F.

**Obs.** Parisyllable is a Noun having as many syllables in the Gen. Sing. as in the Nom.; Imparisyllable a Noun having more syllables in the Gen. Sing. than in the Nom.

## § 18.

## EXAMPLES IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

## A. Masculine and Feminine Substantives.

(a) Parisyllables ; or not increasing in the Genitive Singular.

## 1.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Nūb-ēs, <i>a cloud</i>	Nūb-ēs, <i>clouds</i>
Gen.	Nūb-īs, <i>of a cloud</i>	Nūb-īum, <i>of clouds</i>
Dat.	Nūb-ī, <i>to or for a cloud</i>	Nūb-ībūs, <i>to or for clouds</i>
Acc.	Nūb-em, <i>a cloud</i>	Nūb-ēs, <i>clouds</i>
Voc.	Nūb-ēs, <i>O cloud</i>	Nūb-ēs, <i>O clouds</i>
Abl.	Nūb-ē, <i>by, with, or from a cloud.</i>	Nūb-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from clouds.</i>

## 2.

Nom.	Cīv-īs, <i>a citizen</i>	Cīv-ēs, <i>citizens</i>
Gen.	Cīv-īs, <i>of a citizen</i>	Cīv-īum, <i>of citizens</i>
Dat.	Cīv-ī, <i>to or for a citizen</i>	Cīv-ībūs, <i>to or for citizens</i>
Acc.	Cīv-em, <i>a citizen</i>	Cīv-ēs, <i>citizens</i>
Voc.	Cīv-īs, <i>O citizen</i>	Cīv-ēs, <i>O citizens</i>
Abl.	Cīv-ē, <i>by, with, or from a citizen.</i>	Cīv-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from citizens.</i>

(b) Imparisyllables ; or increasing in the Genitive Singular.

## 1.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Lěō, <i>a lion</i>	Lěōn-ēs, <i>lions</i>
Gen.	Lěōn-īs, <i>of a lion</i>	Lěōn-um, <i>of lions</i>
Dat.	Lěōn-ī, <i>to or for a lion</i>	Lěōn-ībūs, <i>to or for lions</i>
Acc.	Lěōn-em, <i>a lion</i>	Lěōn-ēs, <i>lions</i>
Voc.	Lěō, <i>O lion</i>	Lěōn-ēs, <i>O lions</i>
Abl.	Lěōn-ē, <i>by, with, or from a lion.</i>	Lěōn-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from lions.</i>

## 2.

Nom.	Virgō, <i>a virgin</i>	Virgīn-ēs, <i>virgins</i>
Gen.	Virgīn-īs, <i>of a virgin</i>	Virgīn-um, <i>of virgins</i>
Dat.	Virgīn-ī, <i>to or for a virgin</i>	Virgīn-ībūs, <i>to or for virgins</i>
Acc.	Virgīn-em, <i>a virgin</i>	Virgīn-ēs, <i>virgins</i>
Voc.	Virgō, <i>O virgin</i>	Virgīn-ēs, <i>O virgins</i>
Abl.	Virgīn-ē, <i>by, with, or from a virgin.</i>	Virgīn-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from virgins.</i>

## 3.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur</i>
Nom. Ætās, <i>an age</i>	Ætāt-ēs, <i>ages</i>
Gen. Ætāt-īs, <i>of an age</i>	Ætāt-um, <i>of ages</i>
Dat. Ætāt-ī, <i>to or for an age</i>	Ætāt-ībūs, <i>to or for ages</i>
Acc. Ætāt-em, <i>an age</i>	Ætāt-ēs, <i>ages</i>
Voc. Æt-ās, <i>O age</i>	Ætāt-ēs, <i>O ages</i>
Abl. Ætāt-ě, <i>by, with, or from an age.</i>	Ætāt-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from ages.</i>

## 4.

Nom. Cōmēs, <i>a companion</i>	Cōmīt-ēs, <i>companions</i>
Gen. Cōmīt-īs, <i>of a companion</i>	Cōmīt-um, <i>of companions</i>
Dat. Cōmīt-ī, <i>to or for a companion</i>	Cōmīt-ībūs, <i>to or for companions</i>
Acc. Cōmīt-em, <i>a companion</i>	Cōmīt-ēs, <i>companions</i>
Voc. Cōmēs, <i>O companion</i>	Cōmīt-ēs, <i>O companions</i>
Abl. Cōmīt-ě, <i>by, with, or from a companion.</i>	Cōmīt-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from companions.</i>

## 5.

Nom. Sērpēs, <i>a serpent</i>	Sērpēt-ēs, <i>serpents</i>
Gen. Sērpēt-īs, <i>of a serpent</i>	Sērpēt-ium, <i>of serpents</i>
Dat. Sērpēt-ī, <i>to or for a serpent</i>	Sērpēt-ībūs, <i>to or for serpents</i>
Acc. Sērpēt-em, <i>a serpent</i>	Sērpēt-ēs, <i>serpents</i>
Voc. Sērpēs, <i>O serpent</i>	Sērpēt-ēs, <i>O serpents</i>
Abl. Sērpēt-ě, <i>by, with, or from a serpent.</i>	Sērpēt-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from serpents.</i>

## B. Neuter Substantives.

(a) Plural *ia*.

## 1.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. Mār-ě, <i>the sea</i>	Mār-ĩa, <i>seas</i>
Gen. Mār-īs, <i>of the sea</i>	Mār-ium, <i>of seas</i>
Dat. Mār-ī, <i>to or for the sea</i>	Mār-ībūs, <i>to or for seas</i>
Acc. Mār-ě, <i>the sea</i>	Mār-ĩa, <i>seas</i>
Voc. Mār-ě, <i>O sea</i>	Mār-ĩa, <i>O seas</i>
Abl. Mār-ī, <i>by, with, or from the sea.</i>	Mār-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from seas.</i>

## 2.

Nom. Anīmāl, <i>an animal</i>	Anīmāl-ĩa, <i>animals</i>
Gen. Anīmāl-īs, <i>of an animal</i>	Anīmāl-ium, <i>of animals</i>
Dat. Anīmāl-ī, <i>to or for an animal</i>	Anīmāl-ībūs, <i>to or for animals</i>
Acc. Anīmāl, <i>an animal</i>	Anīmāl-ĩa, <i>animals</i>
Voc. Anīmāl, <i>O animal</i>	Anīmāl-ĩa, <i>O animals</i>
Abl. Anīmāl i, <i>by, with, or from an animal.</i>	Anīmāl-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from animals.</i>

(b) Plural *a*.

## 1.

	<i>Sing</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Opŭs, <i>a work</i>	Opěr-ă, <i>works</i>
Gen.	Opěr-is, <i>of a work</i>	Opěr-um, <i>of works</i>
Dat.	Opěr-i, <i>to or for a work</i>	Opěr-ibŭs, <i>to or for works</i>
Acc.	Op-ŭs, <i>a work</i>	Opěr-ă, <i>works</i>
Voc.	Op-ŭs, <i>O work</i>	Opěr-ă, <i>O works</i>
Abl.	Opěr-ě, <i>by, with, or from a work.</i>	Opěr-ibŭs, <i>by, with, or from works.</i>

## 2.

Nom.	Fŭlměn, <i>lightning</i>	Fŭlmĭn-ă, <i>lightnings</i>
Gen.	Fŭlmĭn-is, <i>of lightning</i>	Fŭlmĭn-um, <i>of lightnings</i>
Dat.	Fŭlmĭn-i, <i>to or for lightning</i>	Fŭlmĭn-ibŭs, <i>to or for lightnings</i>
Acc.	Fŭlměn, <i>lightning</i>	Fŭlmĭn-ă, <i>lightnings</i>
Voc.	Fŭlměn, <i>O lightning</i>	Fŭlmĭn-ă, <i>O lightnings</i>
Abl.	Fŭlmĭn-ě, <i>by, with, or from lightning.</i>	Fŭlmĭn-ibŭs, <i>by, with, or from lightnings.</i>

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 19. The Nominative of Masculine and Feminine Substantives of the Fourth Declension ends in *us*; that of Neuter Substantives in *u*.

## 1.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur</i>
Nom.	Grăd-ŭs, <i>a step</i>	Grăd-ŭs, <i>steps</i>
Gen.	Grăd-ŭs, <i>of a step</i>	Grăd-ŭum, <i>of steps</i>
Dat.	Grăd-ŭi, <i>to or for a step</i>	Grăd-ibŭs, <i>to or for steps</i>
Acc.	Grăd-un, <i>a step</i>	Grăd-ŭs, <i>steps</i>
Voc.	Grăd-ŭs, <i>O step</i>	Grăd-ŭs, <i>O steps</i>
Abl.	Grăd-ŭ, <i>by, with, or from a step.</i>	Grăd-ibŭs, <i>by, with, or from steps</i>

## 2.

Nom.	Gĕn-ŭ, <i>a knee</i>	Gĕn-ŭă, <i>knees</i>
Gen.	Gĕn-ŭs, <i>of a knee</i>	Gĕn-ŭum, <i>of knees</i>
Dat.	Gĕn-ŭ, <i>to or for a knee</i>	Gĕn-ibŭs, <i>to or for knees.</i>
Acc.	Gĕn-ŭ, <i>a knee</i>	Gĕn-ŭă, <i>knees</i>
Voc.	Gĕn-ŭ, <i>O knee</i>	Gĕn-ŭă, <i>O knees</i>
Abl.	Gĕn-ŭ, <i>by, with, or from a knee.</i>	Gĕn-ibŭs, <i>by, with, or from knees.</i>

**Obs. 1.** The following words take *ūbūs* instead of *ībūs* in the Dative and Ablative Plural :

Arcūs, trībūs, ārtūs,	Quērcūs, ācūs,
Spēcūs, pōrtūs, pārtūs,	Vērū, lācūs.

**Obs. 2.** Dōmūs is peculiarly declined. See **NOTES**.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 20. The Nominative ends in *es*.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Fācī-ēs, <i>a face</i>		Fācī-ēs, <i>faces</i>
Gen.	Fācī-ēī, <i>of a face</i>		Fācī-ērum, <i>of faces</i>
Dat.	Fācī-ēī, <i>to or for a face.</i>		Fācī-ēbūs, <i>to or for faces</i>
Acc.	Fācī-em, <i>a face</i>		Fācī-ēs, <i>faces</i>
Voc.	Fācī-ēs, <i>O face</i>		Fācī-ēs, <i>O faces</i>
Abl.	Fācī-ē, <i>by, with, or from a face</i>		Fācī-ēbūs, <i>by, with, or from faces.</i>

## ON SOME CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

§ 21.

*Im* prō *em* Accūsātīvō,  
*I* prō *e* in Ablātīvō  
Dānt būris, cūcūmīs, āmūssīs,  
Rāvis, sītīs, vīs, ēt tūssīs ;  
Et flūmīnā quāe claudīt is,  
Ut Albīs, Lirīs, Tībērīs.  
*Im* vėl *em* Accūsātīvō,  
*I* vėl *e* in Ablātīvō [*clāvīs*,  
Dānt nēptīs, febrīs, mēssīs,  
Pūppīs, pēlvīs, rēstīs, nāvīs,  
Sēcūrīs, tūrrīs ; āddē hīs  
Sēmētīs ātquē strīgīlīs.

§ 22.

*I* Singulārīs Ablātīvī,  
*Ia* Plūrālīs Nōmīnātīvī  
Neutrā gaudēt fingērē,  
Quāe ēxēunt in *al*, *ar*, *e*.  
Hīs ēxcēptā sūnt in *ar*,  
Bāccār, nēctār, jūbār, fār.

§ 23.

*Ium* prō *um* quāe ēffērūnt  
Plūrālī Gēnītīvō sūnt :

- (1) *I* fōrmāntiā Ablātīvō .
- (2) Nōn crēscēntiā Gēnītīvō :
- (3) Plērāquē in *x* vėl *s*  
Pōst cōnsōnāntem pōsītis :
- (4) Cum āliīs Mōnōsyllābīs :  
Mās, mūs, nīx, nōx, ōs  
(ōssīs), cōs,  
Sāl, sōl, cōr, pāx, glīs  
līs, et dōs.

Hīs ēxcēpiēndā sūnt  
(Quāe *um* libēntēr ēffērūnt),  
Vātēs, sēnēx, pātēr, pānīs.  
Et āccēpitēr, ēt cānīs,  
Frātēr, mātēr, jūvēnīs,  
Et sēpiūs āpis, vōlūcrīs

## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

- § 24. A. Adjectives of THREE TERMINATIONS in *us*, *a*, *um*, or *er*, *a*, *um*, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter Genders like Substantives of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine Gender like Substantives of the First Declension : as, *bōnūs*, *good* ; *nīgēr*, *black* ; *tēnēr*, *tender*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Bōn-ūs	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-æ	bōn-ā
G. Bōn-ī	bōn-æ	bōn-ī	Bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum
D. Bōn-ō	bōn-æ	bōn-ō	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs
A. Bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um	Bōn-ōs	bōn-ās	bōn-ā
V. Bōn-ē	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-æ	bōn-ā
A. Bōn-ō	bōn-ā	bōn-ō	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs
N. Nīg-ēr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-æ	nigr-ā
G. Nigr-ī	nigr-æ	nigr-ī	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
D. Nigr-ō	nigr-æ	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
A. Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ā
V. Nīg-ēr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-æ	nigr-ā
A. Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
N. Tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-æ	tēnēr-ā
G. Tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-æ	tēnēr-ī	Tēnēr-ōrum	tēnēr-ārum	tēnēr-ōrum
D. Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-æ	tēnēr-ō	Tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs
A. Tēnēr-um	tēnēr-am	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-ōs	tēnēr-ās	tēnēr-ā
V. Tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-æ	tēnēr-ā
A. Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-ō	Tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs

*Obs.* The Adjectives declined like *tēnēr* are, *āspēr*, *lācēr*, *libēr*, *mīsēr*, *prōspēr*, and the compounds of *fērō* and *gērō*, as *aūrīfēr*, *bēllīgēr*. *Dēxtēr* is declined both ways.

- § 25. B. Adjectives with TWO TERMINATIONS or ONE TERMINATION follow the Third Declension of Substantives : as, *trīstīs*, *sad* ; *fēlix*, *happy* ; *ingēns*, *huge* ; *mēllīōr*, *better*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M. F.	N.		M. F.	N.	
N. Trīst-īs	trīst-ē		Fēl-īx		Ingēns
G. Trīst-īs		Fēl-īx			Ingēnt-īs
D. Trīst-ī		Fēl-ī			Ingēnt-ī
A. Trīst-em	trīst-ē	Fēl-īx			Ingēnt-em
V. Trīst-īs	trīst-ē	Fēl-īx			Ingēns
A. Trīst-ī		Fēl-ī			Ingēnt-ī or ē

*Plural.*

N.	Trist-ēs	trīst-īā	Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-īā	Ingēnt-ēs	īngēnt-īā
G.	Trist-īum		Fēlic-īum		Ingēnt-īum	
D.	Trist-ībūs		Fēlic-ībūs		Ingēnt-ībūs	
A.	Trist-ēs	trīst-īā	Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-īā	Ingēnt-ēs	īngēnt-īā
V.	Trist-ēs	trīst-īā	Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-īā	Ingēnt-ēs	īngēnt-īā
A.	Trist-ībūs		Fēlic-ībūs		Ingēnt-ībūs	

*Singular.*

	M. F.	N.
Nom.	Mēlī-ōr	mēlī-ūs
Gen.	Mēlīōr-īs	
Dat.	Mēlīōr-ī	
Acc.	Mēlīōr-em	mēlī-ūs
Voc.	Mēlī-ōr	mēlī-ūs
Abl.	Mēlīōr-ē or ī	

*Plural.*

	M. F.	N.
Nom.	Mēlīōr-ēs	mēlīōr-ā
Gen.	Mēlīōr-um	
Dat.	Mēlīōr-ībūs	
Acc.	Mēlīōr-ēs	mēlīōr-ā
Voc.	Mēlīōr-ēs	mēlīōr-ā
Abl.	Mēlīōr-ībūs	

*Obs* Adjectives in *er*, following the Third Declension of Substantives, have Three Terminations in the Nom. Sing. : as, ācēr, ācr-īa, ācr-ē, *sharp* ; cēlēr, cēlēr-īa, cēlēr-ē, *swift*.

*Sing.*

	M	F.	N.
Nom.	Acēr	ācr-īs	ācr-ē
Gen.	Acr-is	ācr-īs	ācr-īs
Dat.	Acr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī
Acc.	Acr-em	ācr-em	ācr-ē
Voc.	Acēr	ācr-īs	ācr-ē
Abl.	Acr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī

*Sing.*

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Cēlēr	cēlēr-īs	cēlēr-ē
Gen.	Cēlēr-īs	cēlēr-īs	cēlēr-īs
Dat.	Cēlēr-ī	cēlēr-ī	cēlēr-ī
Acc.	Cēlēr-em	cēlēr-em	cēlēr-ē
Voc.	Cēlēr	cēlēr-īs	cēlēr-ē
Abl.	Cēlēr-ī	cēlēr-ī	cēlēr-ī

The Plural terminations are like those of *trīstīs*; except *cēlērūm*, Genitive Plural of *cēlēr*.

## § 26. The following are irregularly declined in the Singular

*Unūs, one.*

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Un-ūs	ūn-ā	ūn-um
Gen.		Un-iūs	
Dat.		Un-ī	
Acc.	Un-um	ūn-am	ūn-um
Abl.	Un-ō	ūn-ā	ūn-ō

*Utēr, which of two.*

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ut-ēr	utr-ā	utr-um
Gen.		Utr-iūs	
Dat.		Utr-ī	
Acc.	Utr-um	utr-am	utr-um
Abl.	Utr-ō	utr-ā	utr-ō

*Aliūs, another.*

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Alī-ūs	ālī-ā	ālī-ūd
Gen.		Alī-iūs	
Dat.		Alī-ī	
Acc.	Alī-um	ālī-am	ālī-ūd
Abl.	Alī-ō	ālī-ā	ālī-ō

*Altēr, one of two.*

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Altēr	āltēr-ā	āltēr-um
Gen.		Altēr-iūs	
Dat.		Altēr-ī	
Acc.	Altēr-um	āltēr-am	āltēr-rum
Abl.	Altēr-ō	āltēr-ā	āltēr-ō

*Obs.* Like *ūnūs* are declined *ūllūs*, *any* ; *nūllūs*, *none* ; *sōlūs*, *alone* ; *tōtūs*, *whole*. Like *ūtēr* : *neūtēr*, *neither* ; *ūtērquē*, *each* ; *ūtēr-vīs*, *utērlibēt*, *which you will*.

## COMPARISON.

§ 27. THE ADJECTIVE is compared by three Degrees, the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative: as,

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
Dūrūs, <i>hard</i> ;	dūrīōr, <i>harder</i> ;	dūrīssīmūs, <i>hardest</i> ;

The Comparative is formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *ior*.

The Superlative is formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *issimus*: as,

Pos.	Gen.	Comp.	Sup.
Dūrūs, <i>hard</i> ,	dūr-ī	dūr-īōr	dūr-issīmūs
Brēvis, <i>short</i> ,	brēv-is	brēv-īōr	brēv-issīmūs
Aūdāx, <i>bold</i> ,	aūdāc-is	aūdāc-īōr	aūdāc-issīmūs

## § 28. EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Adjectives in *er* form the Superlative by adding *-rimus* to the Nominative: as, pūlhēr, *beautiful*, Comp. pūlhēr-īōr, Sup. pūlhēr-rīmūs; cēlēr, *swift*, cēlēr-īōr, cēlēr-rīmūs. So vētūs, *ancient*, (Gen. vētēris,) Sup. vētērrīmūs.

(2) The following form the Superlative in *illimūs*:  
fācīlīs, difficīlīs,  
sīmīlīs, dīssīmīlīs,  
grācīlīs, et hūmīlīs.

(3) Adjectives in *dīcūs*, *fīcūs*, *vōlūs*, form their Comparatives and Superlatives as if from Positives in *dīcēns*, *fīcēns*, *vōlēns*: as,

mālēdīcūs, *slanderosus*, mālēdīcēntīōr, mālēdīcēntīssīmūs,  
bēnēfīcūs, *beneficent*, bēnēfīcēntīōr, bēnēfīcēntīssīmūs,  
bēnēvōlūs, *benevolent*, bēnēvōlēntīōr, bēnēvōlēntīssīmūs.

(4) If the Positive has a vowel before *us*, the Comparative and Superlative are formed by prefixing the Adverbs māgīs, *more*, mākīmē, *most*, to the Positive: as, ārdū-ūs, *steep*; māgīs ārdūūs, *more steep*; mākīmē ārdūūs, *most steep*. But those in *quus* are compared as usual: as, āntīquūs, *ancient*, āntīquīōr, āntīquīssīmūs. So strēnūūs, *vigorous*, forms Sup. strēnūīssīmūs; pīūs, *pious*, pīīssīmūs.



## § 29.

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
Bōnūs, <i>good</i>	mēliōr	ōptimūs
Mālūs, <i>bad</i>	pējōr	pēssimūs
Māgnūs, <i>great</i>	mājōr	māximūs
Pārvūs, <i>small</i>	mīnōr	mīnimūs
Mūltūs, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimūs
Nēquam, <i>wicked</i>	nēquiōr	nēquissimūs
Dīvēs, <i>rich</i>	divitiōr or ditīōr	divitissimūs or ditissimū*
Sēnēx, <i>old</i>	sēniōr	(nātū māximūs)
Jūvenīs, <i>young</i>	jūniōr	(nātū mīnimūs)
Extērūs, <i>outward</i>	extēriōr	extremūs and ēxtimūs
Infērūs, <i>low</i>	infēriōr	infimūs and imūs
Sūpērūs, <i>high</i>	sūpēriōr	supremūs and sūmmūs
Pōstērūs, <i>hindward</i>	pōstēriōr	pōstrēmūs and pōstūmūs.

## Comparatives and Superlatives formed from Prepositions.

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
(Citrā, <i>this side of</i> )	citēriōr	cī*imūs
(Intrā, <i>within</i> )	intēriōr	intimūs
(Ultrā, <i>beyond</i> )	ultēriōr	ultimūs
(Præ, <i>before</i> )	priōr	primūs
(Prōpē, <i>near</i> )	prōpiōr	prōximūs.

## Comparatives and Superlatives formed without a Positive.

Comp.	Sup.	Comp.	Sup.
Dētēriōr, <i>worse</i>	dētērrimūs	Ociōr, <i>swifter</i>	ōcissimūs
Pōtiōr, <i>more desirable</i>	pōtissimūs		

**Obs.** Many Adjectives are not compared at all; others have no Comparative; some no Superlative.

§ 30. ADVERBS derived from Adjectives are compared in *us* and *e*: as,

(Dignūs, *worthy*), dignē, *worthily*, digniūs, dignissimē.

(Grāvis, *weighty*) grāvitēr, *weightily*, grāviūs, grāvissimē.

In the same manner, —

Sāpē, *often*, sāpiūs, sāpissimē.

Dīū, *long*, dīutiūs, dīutissimē.

Pēnitūs, *deeply*, pēnitīūs, pēnitissimē.

Māgis, *more*, māximē; dētēriūs, *worse*, dētērrimē; pōtiūs, *rather*, pōtissimum; ōciūs, *more quickly*, ōcissimē; priūs, *sooner*, primum; have no Positive.

Bellē, *prettily*, bellissimē; mēritō, *deservedly*, mēritissimē; nūpēr, *lately*, nūpērrimē; have no Comparative.

Sātis, *enough*, sātīūs; sēcūs, *differently*, sēcīūs; have no Superlative.

SIGLA NUMERORUM ARABICA.	SIGLA ROMANA.	CARDINALIA ; answering the question Quot ? how many ?	ORDINALIA ; answering the question Quotus ? which in numeric order ?	DISTRIBUTIVA ; answering the question Quoteni ? how many each ?	ADVERBIA NUMERALIA ; answering the question Quoties ? how many times ?
1	I	ūnus	prīmus	singūli	sēmēl.
2	II	dūo	sēcundūs	binī	bi.
3	III	trēs	tērtiūs	tērnī or trīnī	tēr.
4	IV	quāttūr	quārtūs	quāternī	quāter.
5	V	quinquē	quintūs	quinī	quīnquies.
6	VI	sēx	sēxtūs	senī	sexies.
7	VII	sēptem	sēptimūs	sēptēnī	sēpties.
8	VIII	octō	octāvūs	octonī	octies.
9	IX	nōvem	nōnūs	nōvēnī	nōvies.
10	X	dēcem	dēcimūs	dēnī	dēcies.
11	XI	undēcim	undēcimūs	undēnī	undēcies.
12	XII	dūōdēcim	dūōdēcimūs	dūōdēnī	dūōdēcies.
13	XIII	trēdēcim	tērtiūs dēcimūs	tērnī dēnī	trēdēcies.
14	XIV	quāttuōrdecim	quārtūs dēcimūs	quāternī dēnī	quāttuōrdecies.
15	XV	quīndēcim	quintūs dēcimūs	quinī dēnī	quīndēcies.
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sēxtūs dēcimūs	senī dēnī	sēdēcies.
17	XVII	sēptēndēcim	sēptimūs dēcimūs	sēptēnī dēnī	sēptiesdēcies.
18	XVIII	dūōdēvigintī	dūōdēvicesimūs	dūōdēvicēnī	dūōdēvicies.
19	XIX	undēvigintī	undēvicesimūs	undēvicēnī	undēvicies.
20	XX	vīgintī	vicesimūs	vicēnī	vicies.
21	XXI	ūnus ēt vīgintī	ūnūs ēt vicesimūs	vicēnī singulī	sēmēl ēt vicies.
28	XXVIII	dūōdētrīgintā	dūōdētrigesimūs	dūōdētricēnī	dūōdētricies.
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrigesimūs	undētricēnī	undētricies.
30	XXX	trīgintā	trigesimūs	tricēnī	tricies.
40	XL	quādrāgintā	quādrāgesimūs	quādrāgēnī	quādrāgies.

50	L	quīnquagīntā	quīnquagēsīmūs	quīnquagēnī	quīnquagīlēs.
60	LX	sēxagīntā	sēxagēsīmūs	sēxagēnī	sēxagīlēs.
70	LXX	sēptuagīntā	sēptuagēsīmūs	sēptuagēnī	sēptuagīlēs.
80	LXXX	octogīntā	octogēsīmūs	octogēnī	octogīlēs.
90	XC	nonagīntā	nonagēsīmūs	nonagēnī	nonagīlēs.
99	IC	undecentum	undecētēsīmūs	undecētēnī	undecētīlēs.
100	C	centum	cētēsīmūs	cētēnī	cētīlēs.
101	CI	centum et unūs	cētēsīmūs prīmūs	cētēnī singulū	cētīlēs sēmēl.
200	CC	ducentī (ā, ā)	ducentēsīmūs	ducentī	ducentīlēs.
300	CCC	trecentī	trecentēsīmūs	trecentī	trecentīlēs.
400	CCCC	quadringentī	quādringētēsīmūs	quādringēnī	quādringētīlēs.
500	D or I <sub>5</sub>	quingentī	quīngētēsīmūs	quīngēnī	quīngētīlēs.
600	DC	sexcentī	sēxcētēsīmūs	sēcēnī	sēxcētīlēs.
700	DCC	septingentī	sēptīngētēsīmūs	sēptīngēnī	sēptīngētīlēs.
800	DCCC	octingentī	octīngētēsīmūs	octīngēnī	octīngētīlēs.
900	DCCCC	nongentī	nōngētēsīmūs	nōngēnī	nōngētīlēs.
1000	M or cI <sub>5</sub>	millē	mīlēsīmūs	singulā millīā	mīlīlēs.
2000	MM or IIM	duo millīā	bīsmīlēsīmūs	bīnā millīā	bīs mīlīlēs.
5000	VM or I <sub>55</sub>	quīnquē millīā	quīnquēs mīlēsīmūs	quīnā millīā	quīnquēs mīlīlēs.
10,000	XM or ccI <sub>55</sub>	decem millīā	dēcīlēs mīlēsīmūs	dēnā millīā	dēcīlēs mīlīlēs.
50,000	LM or I <sub>555</sub>	quīnquagīntā millīā	quīnquagīlēs mīlēsīmūs	quīnquagēnā millīā	quīnquagīlēs mīlīlēs.
100,000	cccI <sub>555</sub>	centum millīā	cētīlēs mīlēsīmūs	cētēnā millīā	cētīlēs mīlīlēs.
500,000	I <sub>5555</sub>	quīngentā millīā	quīngētīlēs mīlēsīmūs	quīngēnā millīā	quīngētīlēs mīlīlēs.
1,000,000	ccccI <sub>5555</sub>	dēcīlēs centum millīā	dēcīlēs cētīlēs mīlēsīmūs	dēcīlēs cētēnā millīā	dēcīlēs cētīlēs mīlīlēs.

*Obs.* 1. **MULTIPLICATIVA**, answering the question Quōtuplēs ? *how many fold ?* are: simplēs, duplēs, triplēs, quādruplēs, quīntuplēs, &c. So sēptēmplēs, *sevenfold* ; dēcēmplēs, *tenfold* ; centuplēs, *a hundredfold*.

*Obs.* 2. **PROPORTIONALIA**, answering the question Quōtuplūs ? *how many times more ?* are: sīmplūs, duplūs, triplūs, quādruplūs, &c.

*Obs.* 3. See Unūs declined, § 26

§ 32. Dŭō, *two*, Trēs, *three*, and Milliā, *thousands*.

			<i>Plural.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>	
	M.	F.	N.		M. F.	N.		M. F.	N.		M. F.	N.
N.	Dŭō	dŭāē	dŭō		Trēs	triā		Trīum	trīū		Milliā	Milliū
G.	Dŭōrum	dŭārum	dŭōrum					Triūm	trīū		Milliū	Milliū
D.	Dŭōbŭs	dŭābŭs	dŭōbŭs					Triūm	trīū		Milliū	Milliū
A.	Dŭōs	dŭās	dŭō		Trēs	triā		Triūm	trīū		Milliū	Milliū
A.	Dŭōbŭs	dŭābŭs	dŭōbŭs					Triūm	trīū		Milliū	Milliū

Note 1. Ambo, *both*, is declined like Dŭō.

Note 2. The other Cardinal Numbers, from quāttŭōr to cēntum, are undeclined. Millē is also an undeclined Adjective.

## DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

## § 33. PRONOMINA, Pronouns, are

- A. PERSONALIA, Personal Pronouns: *ěgō, I; tū, thou; sŭi, himself, herself, or themselves.*
- B. POSSESSIVA, Possessive Pronouns, which are derived from the Genitives of the Personal Pronouns: *as, mēūs, my, mine; tŭūs, thy, thine; sŭūs, his, her, or their own; nōstēr, our; vēstēr, your.*
- C. DEMONSTRATIVA, Demonstrative Pronouns: *hīc, this; illē, istē, that; and DETERMINATIVA: is, that; ipsē, self; idem, the same.*
- D. RELATIVUM, the Relative Pronoun *quī, who or which; INTERROGATIVUM, the Interrogative, quīs, quī, who or what? and their compounds.*

## § 34.

## A. PERSONALIA.

## 1.—Pronoun of 1st Person.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Egō, <i>I</i>	Nōs, <i>we</i>	
Gen.	Mēi, <i>of me</i>	Nōstri and nōstrŭm, <i>of us</i>	
Dat.	Mīhi, <i>to or for me</i>	Nōbīs, <i>to or for us</i>	
Acc.	Mē, <i>me</i>	Nōs, <i>us</i>	
Abl.	Mē, <i>by, with, or from me.</i>	Nōbīs, <i>by, with, or from us.</i>	

## 2.—Pronoun of 2d Person.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Tū, <i>thou</i>	Vōs, <i>ye</i>	
Gen.	Tŭi, <i>of thee</i>	Vēstri and vēstrŭm, <i>of you</i>	
Dat.	Tībi, <i>to or for thee</i>	Vōbīs, <i>to or for you</i>	
Acc.	Tē, <i>thee</i>	Vōs, <i>you</i>	
Abl.	Tē, <i>by, with, or from thee.</i>	Vōbīs, <i>by, with, or from you</i>	

## 3. — Pronoun of 3d Person.

*Sing. and Plur.***Nom.** (wanting)**Gen.** Sīi, *of himself, herself, or themselves***Dat.** Sibi, *to or for himself, herself, or themselves***Acc.** Sē or sēsē, *himself, herself, or themselves***Abl.** Sē or sēsē, *by himself, herself, or themselves.*

*Obs.* These Pronouns sometimes take the syllable met: as, ēgōmēt, *I myself*; vōsmēt, *ye yourselves*; sībimēt, *to himself*.

## § 35.

## B. POSSESSIVA.

Mēūs, mēā. mēum; tūūs, tūā. tūum; sūūs, sūā. sūum; like bōnūs, § 24  
Nōstēr, nōstrā. nōstrum; vēstēr, vēstrā. vēstrum; like nīgēr, § 24.

*Obs.* 1. Mēūs, Voc. Masc. mī.

*Obs.* 2. GENTILIA POSSESSIVA: nōstr-ās, -ātīs, *of our country*; vēstr-ās  
-ātīs, *of your country*; cūj-ās, -ātīs, *of what country?*

*Obs.* 3. The POSSESSIVE RELATIVE, cūjūs, cūjā. cūjum, *whose?*

## § 36. C. DEMONSTRATIVA ēt DETERMINATIVA.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Sing.</i>			
N.	Hīc	hāc	hōc	Illē	illā	illūd	Is	ēā	īd
G.	Hūjūs			Illius				Ejūs	
D.	Huic			Uli				Ei	
A.	Hūnc	hānc	hōc	Illum	illam	illūd	Eum	ēam	īd
A.	Hōc	hāc	hōc	Illō	illā	illō	Eō	ēā	ēō
<i>Plur.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>			
N	Hī	hāc	hāc	Illī	illāc	illā	Iī	ēāc	ēā
G.	Hōrum	hārum	hōrum	Illōrum	illārum	illōrum	Eōrum	ēārum	ēōrum
D.	His			Illīs				Iīs or ēīs	
A.	Hōs	hās	hāc	Illōs	illās	illā	Eōs	ēās	ēā
A.	His			Illīs				Iīs or ēīs	

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
Nom.	Idem	ēādem	īdem	ēādem	ēādem
Gen.		Ejūdem	Eōrūdem	ēārūdem	ēōrūdem
Dat.		Eīdem	Iisdem or ēisdem		
Acc.	Eūdem	ēādem	īdem	ēādem	ēādem
Abl.	Eōdem	ēādem	ēōdem	Iisdem or ēisdem	

*Obs.* Istē is declined like illē; īpsē like illē, but with Neut. S. īpsum

## § 37.

## D. RELATIVUM.

<i>Sing.</i>				<i>Plur.</i>		
Nom.	Quī	quā	quōd	Quī	quā	quā
Gen.		Cūjūs		Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.		Cuī			Quībūs or queis	
Acc.	Quem	quam	quōd	Quōs	quās	quā
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō		Quībūs or queis	

The following are mostly declined like *Qui*.

- (1) *Quīs, quīd, and Quī, quā, quōd*; G. *cūjūs, &c.*; *who or what?* (Interrogative.)
- (2) *Quīs, quā, quīd, any one.* (Indefinite.) *Quī* is also used indefinitely.
- (3) *Quīdam, quādam, quōddam or quīddam*; G. *cūjūsdam*; D. *cuīdam*; Acc. *quēndam, quādam, quōddam, &c.*; *a certain one.*
- (4) *Quīvīs, quāvīs, quōdvīs or quīdvīs*; G. *cūjūsvīs*; *any one.*
- (5) *Quīlibēt, quālibēt, quōdlibēt or quīdlibēt*; G. *cūjūslībēt*; *any one*
- (6) *Quīcūquē, quācūquē, quōdcūquē*; G. *cūjūscūquē*; *who or whatsoever.*
- (7) *Quīsnam, quīdnam, and quīnam, quānam, quōdnam*; G. *cūjūsnam*; *who or what?*
- (8) *Quīsquīs, Neut. quīdquīd*; Abl. *quōquō*; *who or whatsoever.*
- (9) *Quīsquē, quāquē, quōdquē or quīdquē, each.*
- (10) *Quīsquā [quāquā], quīdquā, any one.* Plural wanting.
- (11) *Quīspīam, quāpīam, quīdpīam, any one.*
- (12) *Alīquīs, alīquā, alīquīd, and alīquī, alīquā, alīquōd, some one.*
- (13) *Ecquīs, ecquā, ecquīd, and ecquī, ecquā, ecquōd, any one?*
- (14) *Unīsquīquē, unāquāquē, unūmquōdquē or unūmquidquē*; G. *ūnīuscūjūsquē*; *each one.*

## THE VERB.

### § 38. VERBS have TWO VOICES (*Vōcēs*):

- (1) *VOX ACTIVA*, the Active (or Doing) Voice: *as, āmō, I love.*
- (2) *VOX PASSIVA*, the Passive (or Suffering) Voice: *as, āmōr, I am loved.*

Verbs of the Active Voice are either

- (1) *TRANSITIVA*, acting on an object: *as, āmō Dēum, I love God*: or,
- (2) *INTRANSITIVA, vel NEUTRA*, expressing a state: *as, stō, I stand.*

*Obs.* Neuter Verbs Active have no Passive Voice, except as Impersonals in the Third Persons Singular.

**DEPONENTIA**, Deponent Verbs, though conjugated in the Passive Voice chiefly, lay aside (*deponunt*) the Passive, and take an Active signification: some being Transitive; *as, hōrtōr, I exhort*; some Neuter; *as, mōrīōr, I die.*

§ 39. Verbs have Three proper MOODS (Mödi):

- |       |   |  |
|-------|---|--|
| Modus | { | (1) INDICATIVUS, Indicative, for unconditional action: as, <i>ămō</i> , <i>I love</i> .      |
|       |   | (2) CONJUNCTIVUS. Conjunctive, for conditional action: as, <i>ămem</i> , <i>I may love</i> . |
|       |   | (3) IMPERATIVUS, Imperative, for command or entreaty: as, <i>ămā</i> , <i>love thou</i> .    |

*Obs.* The Conjunctive Mood in some of its uses is called Subjunctive, in some Potential.

Verbs have also:

- (1) INFINITIVUS, an Infinitive (improper) Mood, expressing the action of the Verb without relations of Person: as, *ămārē*, *to love*, *ămāvissē*, *to have loved*.

- (2) GERUNDIA, Gerunds; Three in number:

- (a) *ămāndī*, *of loving*,  
 (b) *ămāndō*, *for or by loving*,  
 (c) *ămāndum*, *the loving*;

- (3) SUPINA, Supines; Two in number:

- (a) *ămātum*, *to love*,  
 (b) *ămātū*, *to be loved*;

Which serve as Cases of the Infinitive.

- 4) PARTICIPIA, Participles; Two for each Voice: as,

Active { Present Part., *ămāns*, *loving*,  
 Future Part., *ămātūrūs*, *about to love*.

Passive { Past Part., *ămātūs*, *loved*,  
 Part., in *dus ămāndūs*, *meet to be loved*.

*Note.* Participles are so called, because they *take part* of the properties of Verbs, as Tense and Transitive Power, and *part* of the properties of Adjectives, as Case and Gender. Thus they are the *Adjectives* of the Verb, as the Infinitive (with the Gerunds and Supines) forms its Substantive.

§ 40. Verbs have Six TENSES (Tēmpöră); Three for unfinished action, Three for finished action

*Unfinished Action.*

- (1) **PRÆSENS**, Present ; as, *āmō*, *I love*, or *am loving*.  
 (2) **PRÆTERITUM IMPERFECTUM**, Preterimperfect : as, *āmābam*,  
*I was loving*.  
 (3) **FUTURUM IMPERFECTUM**, **vĕl SIMPLEX**, Future Imperfect  
 or Simple : as, *āmābō*, *I shall love*, or *shall be loving*.

*Finished Action.*

- (1) **PRÆTERITUM PERFECTUM**, Preterperfect : as, *āmāvī*, *I loved*,  
 or *have loved*.  
 (2) **PRÆTERITUM PLUSQUAMPERFECTUM**, Preterpluperfect : as,  
*āmāvēram*, *I had loved*.  
 (3) **FUTURUM PERFECTUM** **vĕl EXACTUM**. Future Perfect or  
**Exact** : as, *āmāvērō*, *I shall have loved*.

§ 41. Verbs are conjugated also by Two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural ; and by Three PERSONS in each Number :

The First expressing the Person or Persons who speak : as,	} <i>ĕgō āmō</i> , <i>I love</i> , <i>nōs āmāmūs</i> , <i>we love</i> .
The Second expressing the Per- son or Persons to whom one speaks : as, - - -	
The Third expressing that of which one speaks : as, -	
	} <i>tū āmās</i> , <i>thou lovest</i> , <i>vōs āmātis</i> , <i>ye love</i> .
	} <i>illĕ āmāt</i> , <i>he loves</i> , <i>illī āmānt</i> , <i>they love</i>



## CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

§ 42. There are Four CONJUGATIONS of Latin Verbs.

- I. The First Conjugation is known by *ā* before *rĕ* : as,  
*āmārĕ*, *hōrtārĕ*.  
 II. The Second Conjugation is known by *ē* before *rĕ* :  
 as, *mōnērĕ*, *vērērĕ*.  
 III. The Third Conjugation is known by *ĕ* before *rĕ* : as,  
*rĕgĕrĕ*, *lōquĕrĕ*.  
 IV. The Fourth Conjugation is known by *ī* before *rĕ* :  
 as, *aūdīrĕ*, *pārtīrĕ*.

§ 43. In order to conjugate a Latin Verb, it is necessary to know : (1) The Present Indic. Act. 1st Person ; (2) The Preterperfect Indic. Act. 1st Person ; (3) The Infinitive Pres. Act. ; (4) The Supine in *um*. For from these the other Tenses may be derived.



§ 44. It is useful for the learner, when conjugating a Verb, to mention also the 2d Person Sing. Pres. Indic. Act., the Gerunds, Supines, and Participles. He will therefore conjugate the Verbs as follows:—

## ACTIVE VOICE.

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Pres. Ind. 1st Pers.	ām-ō	mōn-ēō	rēg-ō	aūd-īō
„ 2d Pers.	ām-ās	mōn-ēs	rēg-īs	aūd-īs
Preterperfect	ām-āvī	mōn-ūī	rēx-ī	aūd-īvī
Infinitive	ām-arē	mōn-ērē	rēg-ērē	aūd-īrē
Gerund in <i>di</i>	ām-āndī	mōn-ēndī	rēg-ēndī	aūd-iēndī
„ <i>do</i>	ām-āndō	mōn-ēndō	rēg-ēndō	aūd-iēndō
„ <i>dum</i>	ām-āndum	mōn-ēndum	rēg-ēndum	aūd-iēndum
Supine in <i>um</i>	ām-ātum	mōn-ītum	rēct-um	aūd-ītum
„ <i>u</i>	ām-ātū	mōn-ītū	rēct-ū	aūd-ītū
Participle Present	ām-āns	mōn-ēns	rēg-ēns	aūd-iēns
„ Future	ām-ātūrūs	mōn-ītūrūs	rēct-ūrūs	aūd-ītūrūs

## PASSIVE VOICE.

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Pres. Ind. 1st Pers.	ām-ōr	mōn-ēōr	rēg-ōr	aūd-īōr
„ 2d Pers.	ām-arīs	mōn-ērīs	rēg-ērīs	aūd-īrīs
Preterperfect	ām-ātus sum	mōn-ītus sum	rēct-ūs sum	aūd-itus sum
Infinitive	ām-arī	mōn-ērī	rēg-ī	aūd-īrī
Participle Perfect	ām-ātūs	mōn-ītūs	rēct-ūs	aūd-itūs
„ in <i>dus</i>	ām-āndūs	mōn-ēndūs	rēg-ēndūs	aūd-iēndūs

## EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

1st Conj., like ām-ō.

ār-ō, *I plough*  
 cērt-ō, *I contend*  
 clām-ō, *I cry out*  
 cūr-ō, *I regard*  
 ōpt-ō, *I wish*  
 pūgn-ō, *I fight*  
 nōmīn-ō, *I name*  
 ædific-ō, *I build.*

2d Conj., like mōn-ēō.

hāb-ēō, *I have*  
 dēb-ēō, *I owe*  
 tērr-ēō, *I frighten*  
 prōhib-ēō, *I forbid*  
 ēxerc-ēō, *I exercise*  
 prāb-ēō, *I afford*  
 ādhīb-ēō, *I apply*  
 cōhib-ēō, *I restrain.*

3d Conj., like rēg-ō.

tēg-ō, *I cover*  
 sūg-ō, *I suck*  
 jūng-ō, *I join*  
 cīng-ō, *I gird*  
 dīc-ō, *I say*  
 dūc-ō, *I lead*  
 vēh-ō, *I carry*  
 cōqu-ō, *I cook*

4th Conj., like aūd-īō.

fīn-īō, *I end*  
 pūn-īō, *I punish*  
 mūn-īō, *I fortify*  
 nūtr-īō, *I nourish*  
 vēst-īō, *I clothe*  
 cūstōd-īō, *I guard*  
 īmpēd-īō, *I hinder*  
 ēīrūl-īō, *I instruct.*

	<i>Indicative Mood.</i>	<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>
<b>Present Tense.</b>	<i>S.</i> Rĕg-ō, <i>I rule,</i> rĕg-īs, <i>thou rulest</i> rĕg-īt, <i>he rules</i> <i>Pl.</i> rĕg-īmūs, <i>we rule</i> rĕg-ītīs, <i>ye rule</i> rĕg-ūnt, <i>they rule</i>	rĕg-am, <i>I may</i> rĕg-ās, <i>thou mayst</i> rĕg-āt, <i>he may</i> rĕg-āmūs, <i>we may</i> rĕg-ātīs, <i>ye may</i> rĕg-ānt, <i>they may</i>
<b>Preterimperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> rĕg-ēbam, <i>I was</i> rĕg-ēbās, <i>thou wast</i> rĕg-ēbāt, <i>he was</i> <i>Pl.</i> rĕg-ēbāmūs, <i>we were</i> rĕg-ēbātīs, <i>ye were</i> rĕg-ēbānt, <i>they were</i>	rĕg-ĕrem, <i>I might</i> rĕg-ĕrēs, <i>thou mightst</i> rĕg-ĕrēt, <i>he might</i> rĕg-ĕrēmūs, <i>we might</i> rĕg-ĕrētīs, <i>ye might</i> rĕg-ĕrēnt, <i>they might</i>
<b>Preterperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> rĕx-ī, <i>I ruled</i> rĕx-īstī, <i>thou ruledst</i> rĕx-īt, <i>he ruled</i> <i>Pl.</i> rĕx-īmūs, <i>we ruled</i> rĕx-īstīs, <i>ye ruled</i> rĕx-ērūnt, <i>they ruled.</i>	rĕx-ĕrim, <i>I may</i> rĕx-ĕris, <i>thou mayst</i> rĕx-ĕrīt, <i>he may</i> rĕx-ĕrimūs, <i>we may</i> rĕx-ĕritīs, <i>ye may</i> rĕx-ĕrīnt, <i>they may</i>
<b>Preterpluperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> rĕx-ĕram, <i>I had</i> rĕx-ĕrās, <i>thou hadst</i> rĕx-ĕrāt, <i>he had</i> <i>Pl.</i> rĕx-ĕrāmūs, <i>we had</i> rĕx-ĕrātīs, <i>ye had</i> rĕx-ĕrānt, <i>they had</i>	rĕx-īssēm, <i>I would</i> rĕx-īssēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> rĕx-īssēt, <i>he would</i> rĕx-īssēmūs, <i>we would</i> rĕx-īssētīs, <i>ye would</i> rĕx-īssēnt, <i>they would</i>
<b>Future Imperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> rĕg-am, <i>I shall</i> rĕg-ēs, <i>thou shalt</i> rĕg-ēt, <i>he shall</i> <i>Pl.</i> rĕg-ēmūs, <i>we shall</i> rĕg-ētīs, <i>ye shall</i> rĕg-ēnt, <i>they shall</i>	rĕct-ūrūs sim, <i>I may</i> rĕct-ūrūs sis, <i>thou mayst</i> rĕct-ūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i> rĕct-ūrī sīmūs, <i>we may</i> rĕct-ūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> rĕct-ūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i>
<b>Future Perfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> rĕx-ĕrō, <i>I shall</i> rĕx-ĕris, <i>thou shalt</i> rĕx-ĕrīt, <i>he shall</i> <i>Pl.</i> rĕx-ĕrimūs, <i>we shall</i> rĕx-ĕritīs, <i>ye shall</i> rĕx-ĕrīnt, <i>they shall</i>	
<b>Gerunds.</b>		rĕg-ēndī, <i>of ruling</i> rĕg-ēndō, <i>for or by ruling</i> rĕg-ēndum, <i>the ruling</i>

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<p>řěg-ě, řěg-ītō, rule thou  řěg-ītō, let him rule</p> <p>řěg-ītě, řěg-ītōtě, rule ye  řěg-ūntō, let them rule</p>	<p>řěg-ěřě, to rule, or  be ruling.</p>	<p>řěg-ěns, ruling.</p>
	<p>rěx-issě, to have  ruled.</p>	
	<p>rěct-ūrum ěssě, to  be about to rule.</p>	<p>rěct-ūrňs, about to  rule.</p>
<p><i>Supines.</i> { rěct-um, to rule.  rěct-ū, to be ruled.</p>		

	Indicative Mood.	Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.	<p><i>S.</i> Am-ō, <i>I love</i>  ām-ās, <i>thou lovest</i>  ām-āt, <i>he loves</i></p> <p><i>Pl.</i> ām-āmūs, <i>we love</i>  ām-ātis, <i>ye love</i>  ām-ānt, <i>they love.</i></p>	<p>ām-em, <i>I may</i>  ām-ēs, <i>thou mayst</i>  ām-ēt, <i>he may</i>  ām-ēmūs, <i>we may</i>  ām-ētīs, <i>ye may</i>  ām-ēnt, <i>they may</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>love.</i></p>
Preterimperfect.	<p><i>S.</i> ām-ābam, <i>I was</i>  ām-ābās, <i>thou wast</i>  ām-ābāt, <i>he was</i></p> <p><i>Pl.</i> ām-ābāmūs, <i>we were</i>  ām-ābātīs, <i>ye were</i>  ām-ābānt, <i>they were</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>loving.</i></p>	<p>ām-ārem, <i>I might</i>  ām-ārēs, <i>thou mightst</i>  ām-ārēt, <i>he might</i>  ām-ārēmūs, <i>we might</i>  ām-ārētīs, <i>ye might</i>  ām-ārēnt, <i>they might</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>love.</i></p>
Preterperfect.	<p><i>S.</i> ām-āvī, <i>I loved</i>  ām-āvistī, <i>thou lovedst</i>  ām-āvīt, <i>he loved</i></p> <p><i>Pl.</i> ām-āvīmūs, <i>we loved</i>  ām-āvistīs, <i>ye loved</i>  ām-āvērunt, <i>they loved.</i></p>	<p>ām-āvërim, <i>I may</i>  ām-āvëris, <i>thou mayst</i>  ām-āvërit, <i>he may</i>  ām-āvërimūs, <i>we may</i>  ām-āvëritīs, <i>ye may</i>  ām-āvërint, <i>they may</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have loved.</i></p>
Preterpluperfect.	<p><i>S.</i> ām-āvēram, <i>I had</i>  ām-āvērās, <i>thou hadst</i>  ām-āvērāt, <i>he had</i></p> <p><i>Pl.</i> ām-āvērāmūs, <i>we had</i>  ām-āvērātīs, <i>ye had</i>  ām-āvērānt, <i>they had</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>loved.</i></p>	<p>ām-āvïssem, <i>I would</i>  ām-āvïssēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>  ām-āvïssēt, <i>he would</i>  ām-āvïssēmūs, <i>we would</i>  ām-āvïssētīs, <i>ye would</i>  ām-āvïssēnt, <i>they would</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have loved.</i></p>
Future Imperfect.	<p><i>S.</i> ām-ābō, <i>I shall</i>  ām-ābīs, <i>thou shalt</i>  ām-ābīt, <i>he shall</i></p> <p><i>Pl.</i> ām-ābīmūs, <i>we shall</i>  ām-ābītīs, <i>ye shall</i>  ām-ābūnt, <i>they shall</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>love.</i></p>	<p>ām-ātūrūs sim, <i>I may</i>  ām-ātūrūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i>  ām-ātūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i>  ām-ātūrī sīmūs, <i>we may</i>  ām-ātūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i>  ām-ātūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>be about to love.</i></p>
Future Perfect.	<p><i>S.</i> ām-āvērō, <i>I shall</i>  ām-āvēris, <i>thou shalt</i>  ām-āvērit, <i>he shall</i></p> <p><i>Pl.</i> ām-āvērimūs, <i>we shall</i>  ām-āvēritīs, <i>ye shall</i>  ām-āvērint, <i>they shall</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have loved.</i></p>	
Gerunds. {		ām-āndī, <i>of loving</i> ām-āndō, <i>for or by loving</i> ām-āndum, <i>the loving.</i>

# CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<p>ăm-ā, ăm-ātō, <i>love thou</i>  ăm-ātō, <i>let him love</i>  ăm-ātē, ăm-ātōtē, <i>love ye</i>  ăm-āntō, <i>let them love.</i></p>	<p>ăm-ārē, <i>to love, or</i>  <i>be loving.</i></p>	<p>ăm-āns, <i>loving.</i></p>
	<p>ăm-āvissē, <i>to have</i>  <i>loved.</i></p>	
	<p>ăm-ātūrum ēssē, <i>to</i>  <i>be about to love.</i></p>	<p>ăm-ātūrūs, <i>about</i>  <i>to love.</i></p>
<p><i>Supines.</i> { ăm-ātum, <i>to love.</i>  ăm-ātū, <i>to be loved.</i></p>		

	<i>Indicative Mood.</i>	<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>
<b>Present Tense.</b>	<p><i>S.</i> Am-ör, <i>I am</i>  äm-ärís, <i>thou art</i>  äm-ätür, <i>he is</i></p> <p><i>Pl.</i> äm-āmūr, <i>we are</i>  äm-āmīnī, <i>ye are</i>  äm-antür, <i>they are</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>loved.</i></p>	<p>äm-ër, <i>I may</i>  äm-ërís, <i>thou mayst</i>  äm-ëtür, <i>he may</i>  äm-ēmür, <i>we may</i>  äm-ēmīnī, <i>ye may</i>  äm-ëntür, <i>they may</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>be loved.</i></p>
<b>Preterimperfect.</b>	<p><i>S.</i> äm-ābār, <i>I was</i>  äm-ābārís, <i>thou wast</i>  äm-ābätür, <i>he was</i></p> <p><i>Pl.</i> äm-ābāmür, <i>we were</i>  äm-ābāmīnī, <i>ye were</i>  äm-ābantür, <i>they were</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>being loved.</i></p>	<p>äm-ārër, <i>I might</i>  äm-ārërís, <i>thou mightst</i>  äm-ārëtür, <i>he might</i>  äm-ārēmür, <i>we might</i>  äm-ārēmīnī, <i>ye might</i>  äm-ārëntür, <i>they might</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>be loved.</i></p>
<b>Preterperfect.</b>	<p><i>S.</i> äm-ätüs sum, <i>I was</i>  äm-ätüs ës, <i>thou wast</i>  äm-ätüs ësť, <i>he was</i></p> <p><i>Pl.</i> äm-ätī sümüs, <i>we were</i>  äm-ätī ësťís, <i>ye were</i>  äm-ätī sünt, <i>they were</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>loved.</i></p>	<p>äm-ätüs sim, <i>I may</i>  äm-ätüs sís, <i>thou mayst</i>  äm-ätüs sít, <i>he may</i>  äm-ätī sīmüs, <i>we may</i>  äm-ätī sītís, <i>ye may</i>  äm-ätī sīnt, <i>they may</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have been loved.</i></p>
<b>Preterpluperfect.</b>	<p><i>S.</i> äm-ätüs eram, <i>I had</i>  äm-ätüs eräs, <i>thou hadst</i>  äm-ätüs erät, <i>he had</i></p> <p><i>Pl.</i> äm-ätī erämüs, <i>we had</i>  äm-ätī erätís, <i>ye had</i>  äm-ätī eränt, <i>they had</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>been loved.</i></p>	<p>äm-ätüs essem, <i>I would</i>  äm-ätüs essës, <i>thou wouldst</i>  äm-ätüs essët, <i>he would</i>  äm-ätī essēmüs, <i>we would</i>  äm-ätī essëtís, <i>ye would</i>  äm-ätī essënt, <i>they would</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have been loved.</i></p>
<b>Future Imperfect.</b>	<p><i>S.</i> äm-ābör, <i>I shall</i>  äm-ābërís, <i>thou shalt</i>  äm-ābītür, <i>he shall</i></p> <p><i>Pl.</i> äm-ābīmür, <i>we shall</i>  äm-ābīmīnī, <i>ye shall</i>  äm-ābüntür, <i>they shall</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>be loved.</i></p>	
<b>Future Perfect.</b>	<p><i>S.</i> äm-ätüs ërō, <i>I shall</i>  äm-ätüs ërís, <i>thou shalt</i>  äm-ätüs ërīt, <i>he shall</i></p> <p><i>Pl.</i> äm-ätī ërīmüs, <i>we shall</i>  äm-ätī ërītís, <i>ye shall</i>  äm-ätī ërünt, <i>they shall</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have been loved.</i></p>	

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
ăm-ărě, ăm-ătōr, <i>be thou</i> ăm-ătōr, <i>let him be</i> ăm-ămīnī, ăm-ămīnōr, <i>[ye be</i> ăm-ăntōr, <i>let them be</i>	ăm-ārī, <i>to be loved.</i>	
	ăm-ătum ăsă, <i>to have been loved.</i>	ăm-ătūs, <i>loved.</i>
	ăm-ătum lri, <i>to be about to be loved.</i>	
		ăm-ăndūs, <i>meet to be loved.</i>

	<i>Indicative Mood.</i>	<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>
<b>Present Tense.</b>	<i>S.</i> Mön-ěō, <i>I advise</i> mön-ēs, <i>thou advisest</i> mön-ēt, <i>he advises</i> <i>Pl.</i> mön-ēmūs, <i>we advise</i> mön-ētīs, <i>ye advise</i> mön-ēnt, <i>they advise.</i>	mön-ěam, <i>I may</i> mön-ěās, <i>thou mayst</i> mön-ěāt, <i>he may</i> mön-ěāmūs, <i>we may</i> mön-ěātīs, <i>ye may</i> mön-ěānt, <i>they may</i>
<b>Preterimperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> mön-ēbam, <i>I was</i> mön-ēbās, <i>thou wast</i> mön-ēbāt, <i>he was</i> <i>Pl.</i> mön-ēbāmūs, <i>we were</i> mön-ēbātīs, <i>ye were</i> mön-ēbānt, <i>they were</i>	mön-ērem, <i>I might</i> mön-ērēs, <i>thou mightst</i> mön-ērēt, <i>he might</i> mön-ērēmūs, <i>we might</i> mön-ērētīs, <i>ye might</i> mön-ērēnt, <i>they might</i>
<b>Preterperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> mön-ūī, <i>I advised</i> mön-ūīstī, <i>thou advisedst</i> mön-ūīt, <i>he advised</i> <i>Pl.</i> mön-ūīmūs, <i>we advised</i> mön-ūīstīs, <i>ye advised</i> mön-ūērūnt, <i>they advised.</i>	mön-ūērim, <i>I may</i> mön-ūēris, <i>thou mayst</i> mön-ūērīt, <i>he may</i> mön-ūērimūs, <i>we may</i> mön-ūērītīs, <i>ye may</i> mön-ūērīnt, <i>they may</i>
<b>Preterpluperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> mön-ūēram, <i>I had</i> mön-ūērās, <i>thou hadst</i> mön-ūērāt, <i>he had</i> <i>Pl.</i> mön-ūērāmūs, <i>we had</i> mön-ūērātīs, <i>ye had</i> mön-ūērānt, <i>they had</i>	mön-ūīsseam, <i>I would</i> mön-ūīssēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> mön-ūīssēt, <i>he would</i> mön-ūīssēmūs, <i>we would</i> mön-ūīssētīs, <i>ye would</i> mön-ūīssēnt, <i>they would</i>
<b>Future Imperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> mön-ēbō, <i>I shall</i> mön-ēbīs, <i>thou shalt</i> mön-ēbīt, <i>he shall</i> <i>Pl.</i> mön-ēbīmūs, <i>we shall</i> mön-ēbītīs, <i>ye shall</i> mön-ēbūnt, <i>they shall</i>	mön-ītūrūs sim, <i>I may</i> mön-ītūrūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> mön-ītūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i> mön-ītūrī sīmūs, <i>we may</i> mön-ītūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> mön-ītūrī sint, <i>they may</i>
<b>Future Perfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> mön-ūērō, <i>I shall</i> mön-ūēris, <i>thou shalt</i> mön-ūērīt, <i>he shall</i> <i>Pl.</i> mön-ūērimūs, <i>we shall</i> mön-ūērītīs, <i>ye shall</i> mön-ūērīnt, <i>they shall</i>	
<i>Gerunds</i> { mön-ēndī, <i>of advising</i> mön-ēndō, <i>for or by advising</i> mön-ēndum, <i>the advising.</i>		



## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<p>mŏn-ĕ, mŏn-ĕtŏ, <i>advise thou</i>  mŏn-ĕtŏ, <i>let him advise</i></p> <p>mŏn-ĕtĕ, mŏn-ĕtŏtĕ, <i>advise ye</i>  mŏn-ĕntŏ, <i>let them advise.</i></p>	<p>mŏn-ĕrĕ, <i>to advise,</i>  <i>or be advising.</i></p>	<p>mŏn-ĕns, <i>advising</i></p>
	<p>mŏn-ŭĭssĕ, <i>to have</i>  <i>advised.</i></p>	
	<p>mŏn-ŭtŭrum ĕssĕ,  <i>to be about to ad-</i>  <i>vise.</i></p>	<p>mŏn-ŭtŭrŭs, <i>about</i>  <i>to advise.</i></p>
<p><i>Supines.</i> { mŏn-ŭtum, <i>to advise</i>  mŏn-ŭtŭ, <i>to be advised.</i></p>		

	<i>Indicative Mood.</i>	<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>
Present Tense.	<i>S.</i> Mön-ěör, <i>I am</i> mön-ěrīs, <i>thou art</i> mön-ětūr, <i>he is</i> <i>Pl.</i> mön-ēmūr, <i>we are</i> mön-ēmīnī, <i>ye are</i> mön-ěntūr, <i>they are</i>	mön-ěär, <i>I may</i> mön-ěärīs, <i>thou mayest</i> mön-ěätūr, <i>he may</i> mön-ěāmūr, <i>we may</i> mön-ěāmīnī, <i>ye may</i> mön-ěāntūr, <i>they may</i>
Preterimperfect.	<i>S.</i> mön-ebär, <i>I was</i> mön-ebärīs, <i>thou wast</i> mön-ebätūr, <i>he was</i> <i>Pl.</i> mön-ebāmūr, <i>we were</i> mön-ebāmīnī, <i>ye were</i> mön-ebāntūr, <i>they were</i>	mön-ērēr, <i>I might</i> mön-ērērīs, <i>thou mightst</i> mön-ērētūr, <i>he might</i> mön-ērēmūr, <i>we might</i> mön-ērēmīnī, <i>ye might</i> mön-ērēntūr, <i>they might</i>
Preterperfect.	<i>S.</i> mön-ītūs sum, <i>I was</i> mön-ītūs ēs, <i>thou wast</i> mön-ītūs ěst, <i>he was</i> <i>Pl.</i> mön-ītī sūmūs, <i>we were</i> mön-ītī ěstīs, <i>ye were</i> mön-ītī sūnt, <i>they were</i>	mön-ītūs sim, <i>I may</i> mön-ītūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> mön-ītūs sīt, <i>he may</i> mön-ītī sīmus, <i>we may</i> mön-ītī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> mön-ītī sint, <i>they may</i>
Preterpluperfect.	<i>S.</i> mön-ītūs eram, <i>I had</i> mön-ītūs erās, <i>thou hadst</i> mön-ītūs ērāt, <i>he had</i> <i>Pl.</i> mön-ītī ērāmūs, <i>we had</i> mön-ītī ērātīs, <i>ye had</i> mön-ītī ērānt, <i>they had</i>	mön-ītūs ēssem, <i>I would</i> mön-ītūs ēsēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> mön-ītūs ēsset, <i>he would</i> mön-ītī ēssemūs, <i>we would</i> mön-ītī ēssetīs, <i>ye would</i> mön-ītī ēsset, <i>they would</i>
Future Imperfect.	<i>S.</i> mön-ebör, <i>I shall</i> mön-ebērīs, <i>thou shalt</i> mön-ebitūr, <i>he shall</i> <i>Pl.</i> mön-ebīmūr, <i>we shall</i> mön-ebīmīnī, <i>ye shall</i> mön-ebūntūr, <i>they shall</i>	
Future Perfect.	<i>S.</i> mön-ītūs ērō, <i>I shall</i> mön-ītūs ērīs, <i>thou shalt</i> mön-ītūs ērīt, <i>he shall</i> <i>Pl.</i> mön-ītī ērīmūs, <i>we shall</i> mön-ītī ērītīs, <i>ye shall</i> mön-ītī ērīnt, <i>they shall</i>	

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
mŏn-ērě, mŏn-ētŏr, <i>be thou</i> mŏn-ētŏr, <i>let him be</i> mŏn-ēmīnī, mŏn-ēmīnŏr, <i>[be ye</i> mŏn-ētŏr, <i>let them be</i>	mŏn-ērī, <i>to be advised.</i>	
	mŏn-ītum ěssě, <i>to have been advised.</i>	mŏn-ītŭs, <i>advised.</i>
	mŏn-ītum īrī, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>	
		mŏn-ēndŭs, <i>met to be advised.</i>

	<i>Indicative Mood.</i>	<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>
<b>Present Tense.</b>	<i>S.</i> Rēg-ō, <i>I rule,</i> rēg-īs, <i>thou rulest</i> rēg-īt, <i>he rules</i> <i>Pl.</i> rēg-īmūs, <i>we rule</i> rēg-ītīs, <i>ye rule</i> rēg-ūnt, <i>they rule</i>	rēg-am, <i>I may</i> rēg-ās, <i>thou mayst</i> rēg-āt, <i>he may</i> rēg-āmūs, <i>we may</i> rēg-ātīs, <i>ye may</i> rēg-ānt, <i>they may</i>
<b>Preterimperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> rēg-ēbam, <i>I was</i> rēg-ēbās, <i>thou wast</i> rēg-ēbāt, <i>he was</i> <i>Pl.</i> rēg-ēbāmūs, <i>we were</i> rēg-ēbātīs, <i>ye were</i> rēg-ēbānt, <i>they were</i>	rēg-ērem, <i>I might</i> rēg-ērēs, <i>thou mightst</i> rēg-ērēt, <i>he might</i> rēg-ērēmūs, <i>we might</i> rēg-ērētīs, <i>ye might</i> rēg-ērēnt, <i>they might</i>
<b>Preterperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> rēx-ī, <i>I ruled</i> rēx-īstī, <i>thou ruledst</i> rēx-īt, <i>he ruled</i> <i>Pl.</i> rēx-īmūs, <i>we ruled</i> rēx-īstīs, <i>ye ruled</i> rēx-ērūnt, <i>they ruled.</i>	rēx-ērim, <i>I may</i> rēx-ēris, <i>thou mayst</i> rēx-ērīt, <i>he may</i> rēx-ērimūs, <i>we may</i> rēx-ērītīs, <i>ye may</i> rēx-ērīnt, <i>they may</i>
<b>Preterpluperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> rēx-ēram, <i>I had</i> rēx-ērās, <i>thou hadst</i> rēx-ērāt, <i>he had</i> <i>Pl.</i> rēx-ērāmūs, <i>we had</i> rēx-ērātīs, <i>ye had</i> rēx-ērānt, <i>they had</i>	rēx-īssem, <i>I would</i> rēx-īssēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> rēx-īssēt, <i>he would</i> rēx-īssēmūs, <i>we would</i> rēx-īssētīs, <i>ye would</i> rēx-īssēnt, <i>they would</i>
<b>Future Imperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> rēg-am, <i>I shall</i> rēg-ēs, <i>thou shalt</i> rēg-ēt, <i>he shall</i> <i>Pl.</i> rēg-ēmūs, <i>we shall</i> rēg-ētīs, <i>ye shall</i> rēg-ēnt, <i>they shall</i>	rēct-ūrūs sim, <i>I may</i> rēct-ūrūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> rēct-ūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i> rēct-ūrī sīmūs, <i>we may</i> rēct-ūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> rēct-ūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i>
<b>Future Perfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> rēx-ērō, <i>I shall</i> rēx-ēris, <i>thou shalt</i> rēx-ērīt, <i>he shall</i> <i>Pl.</i> rēx-ērimūs, <i>we shall</i> rēx-ērītīs, <i>ye shall</i> rēx-ērīnt, <i>they shall</i>	
	<i>Gerunds.</i> { rēg-ēndī, <i>of ruling</i> rēg-ēndō, <i>for or by ruling</i> rēg-ēndum, <i>the ruling</i>	

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<p>řĕg-ě, řĕg-ītō, <i>rule thou</i>  řĕg-ītō, <i>let him rule</i></p> <p>řĕg-ītě, řĕg-ītōtě, <i>rule ye</i>  řĕg-ūtō, <i>let them rule</i></p>	<p>řĕg-ěřě, <i>to rule, or</i>  <i>be ruling.</i></p>	<p>řĕg-ěns, <i>ruling.</i></p>
	<p>rĕx-ĭssě, <i>to have</i>  <i>ruled.</i></p>	
	<p>rĕct-ūrūm ĕssě, <i>to</i>  <i>be about to rule.</i></p>	<p>rĕct-ūrŭs, <i>about to</i>  <i>rule.</i></p>
<p><i>Supines.</i> { rĕct-um, <i>to rule.</i>  rĕct-ŭ, <i>to be ruled.</i></p>		

	<i>Indicative Mood.</i>	<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>
<b>Present Tense.</b>	<p>S. Rēg-ōr, <i>I am</i>  rēg-ērīs, <i>thou art</i>  rēg-ītūr, <i>he is</i></p> <p>Pl. rēg-īmūr, <i>we are</i>  rēg-īmīnī, <i>ye are</i>  rēg-ūntūr, <i>they are</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>ruled.</i></p>	<p>rēg-ār, <i>I may</i>  rēg-ārīs, <i>thou mayst</i>  rēg-ātūr, <i>he may</i>  rēg-āmūr, <i>we may</i>  rēg-āmīnī, <i>ye may</i>  rēg-āntūr, <i>they may</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>be ruled.</i></p>
<b>Preterimperfect.</b>	<p>S. rēg-ēbār, <i>I was</i>  rēg-ēbārīs, <i>thou wast</i>  rēg-ēbātūr, <i>he was</i></p> <p>Pl. rēg-ēbāmūr, <i>we were</i>  rēg-ēbāmīnī, <i>ye were</i>  rēg-ēbāntūr, <i>they were</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>being ruled.</i></p>	<p>rēg-ērēr, <i>I might</i>  rēg-ērērīs, <i>thou mightst</i>  rēg-ērētūr, <i>he might</i>  rēg-ērēmūr, <i>we might</i>  rēg-ērēmīnī, <i>ye might</i>  rēg-ērēntūr, <i>they might</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>be ruled.</i></p>
<b>Preterperfect.</b>	<p>S. rēct-ūs sum, <i>I was</i>  rēct-ūs ēs, <i>thou wast</i>  rēct-ūs ēst, <i>he was</i></p> <p>Pl. rēct-ī sūmūs, <i>we were</i>  rēct-ī ēstīs, <i>ye were</i>  rēct-ī sūnt, <i>they were</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>ruled.</i></p>	<p>rēct-ūs sim, <i>I may</i>  rēct-ūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i>  rēct-ūs sīt, <i>he may</i>  rēct-ī sīmūs, <i>we may</i>  rēct-ī sītīs, <i>ye may</i>  rēct-ī sīnt, <i>they may</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have been ruled.</i></p>
<b>Preterpluperfect.</b>	<p>S. rēct-ūs ēram, <i>I had</i>  rēct-ūs ērās, <i>thou hadst</i>  rēct-ūs ērāt, <i>he had</i></p> <p>Pl. rēct-ī ērāmūs, <i>we had</i>  rēct-ī ērātīs, <i>ye had</i>  rēct-ī ērānt, <i>they had</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>been ruled.</i></p>	<p>rēct-ūs ēssem, <i>I would</i>  rēct-ūs ēssēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>  rēct-ūs ēssēt, <i>he would</i>  rēct-ī ēssēmūs, <i>we would</i>  rēct-ī ēssētīs, <i>ye would</i>  rēct-ī ēssēnt, <i>they would</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have been ruled.</i></p>
<b>Future Imperfect.</b>	<p>S. rēg-ār, <i>I shall</i>  rēg-ērīs, <i>thou shalt</i>  rēg-ētūr, <i>he shall</i></p> <p>Pl. rēg-ēmūr, <i>we shall</i>  rēg-ēmīnī, <i>ye shall</i>  rēg-ēntūr, <i>they shall</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>be ruled.</i></p>	
<b>Future Perfect.</b>	<p>S. rēct-ūs ērō, <i>I shall</i>  rēct-ūs ērīs, <i>thou shalt</i>  rēct-ūs ērīt, <i>he shall</i></p> <p>Pl. rēct-ī ērīmūs, <i>we shall</i>  rēct-ī ērītīs, <i>ye shall</i>  rēct-ī ērūnt, <i>they shall</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have been ruled.</i></p>	

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>rĕg-ĕrĕ, rĕg-ĭtĕr, be thou</i> <i>rĕg-ĭtĕr, let him be</i> <i>rĕg-ĭmĭnĭ, rĕg-ĭmĭnĕr, [ye be</i> <i>rĕg-ĭntĕr, let them be</i>	<i>rĕg-ĭ, to be ruled.</i>	
	<i>rĕct-um ĕssĕ, to</i> <i>have been ruled.</i>	<i>rĕct-ĭs, ruled.</i>
	<i>rĕc-tum ĭrĭ, to be</i> <i>about to be ruled.</i>	
		<i>rĕg-ĕndĭs, meet</i> <i>to be ruled.</i>

	<i>Indicative Mood.</i>	<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>
<b>Present Tense.</b>	<i>S.</i> Aūd-īō, <i>I hear</i> aūd-īs, <i>thou hearest</i> aūd-īt, <i>he hears</i> <i>Pl.</i> aūd-īmūs, <i>we hear</i> aūd-ītīs, <i>ye hear</i> aūd-īunt, <i>they hear.</i>	aūd-īam, <i>I may</i> aūd-īās, <i>thou mayst</i> aūd-īāt, <i>he may</i> aūd-īāmūs, <i>we may</i> aūd-īātīs, <i>ye may</i> aūd-īānt, <i>they may</i>
<b>Preterimperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> aūd-īēbam, <i>I was</i> aūd-īēbās, <i>thou wast</i> aūd-īēbāt, <i>he was</i> <i>Pl.</i> aūd-īēbāmūs, <i>we were</i> aūd-īēbātīs, <i>ye were</i> aūd-īēbānt, <i>they were</i>	aūd-īrem, <i>I might</i> aūd-īrēs, <i>thou mightst</i> aūd-īrēt, <i>he might</i> aūd-īrēmūs, <i>we might</i> aūd-īrētīs, <i>ye might</i> aūd-īrēnt, <i>they might</i>
<b>Preterperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> aūd-īvī, <i>I heard</i> aūd-īvistī, <i>thou heardst</i> aūd-īvīt, <i>he heard</i> <i>Pl.</i> aūd-īvīmūs, <i>we heard</i> aūd-īvistīs, <i>ye heard</i> aūd-īvērunt, <i>they heard.</i>	aūd-īvērim, <i>I may</i> aūd-īvēris, <i>thou mayst</i> aūd-īvērīt, <i>he may</i> aūd-īvērimūs, <i>we may</i> aūd-īvēritīs, <i>ye may</i> aūd-īvērint, <i>they may</i>
<b>Preterpluperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> aūd-īvēram, <i>I had</i> aūd-īvērās, <i>thou hadst</i> aūd-īvērāt, <i>he had</i> <i>Pl.</i> aūd-īvērāmūs, <i>we had</i> aūd-īvērātīs, <i>ye had</i> aūd-īvērānt, <i>they had</i>	aūd-īvīsem, <i>I would</i> aūd-īvīssēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> aūd-īvīssēt, <i>he would</i> aūd-īvīssēmūs, <i>we would</i> aūd-īvīssētīs, <i>ye would</i> aūd-īvīssēnt, <i>they would</i>
<b>Future Imperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> aūd-īam, <i>I shall</i> aūd-īēs, <i>thou shalt</i> aūd-īēt, <i>he shall</i> <i>Pl.</i> aūd-īēmūs, <i>we shall</i> aūd-īētīs, <i>ye shall</i> aūd-īēnt, <i>they shall</i>	aūd-ītūrūs sim, <i>I may</i> aūd-ītūrūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> aūd-ītūrūs sīt, <i>he may</i> aūd-ītūrī sīmūs, <i>we may</i> aūd-ītūrī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> aūd-ītūrī sīnt, <i>they may</i>
<b>Future Perfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> aūd-īvērō, <i>I shall</i> aūd-īvēris, <i>thou shalt</i> aūd-īvērīt, <i>he shall</i> <i>Pl.</i> aūd-īvērimūs, <i>we shall</i> aūd-īvēritīs, <i>ye shall</i> aūd-īvērint, <i>they shall</i>	
<i>Gerunds.</i> { aūd-īēndī, <i>of hearing</i> aūd-īēndō, <i>for or by hearing</i> aūd-īēndum, <i>the hearing.</i>		



## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<p>āūd-ī, āūd-ītō, <i>hear thou</i>  āūd-ītō, <i>let him hear</i></p> <p>āūd-ītě, āūd-ītōtě, <i>hear ye</i>  āūd-iūntō, <i>let them hear.</i></p>	<p>āūd-īrě, <i>to hear, or</i>  <i>be hearing.</i></p>	<p>āūd-īēns, <i>hearing.</i></p>
	<p>āūd-īvīssě, <i>to have</i>  <i>heard.</i></p>	
	<p>āūd-ītūrūm ēssě, <i>to</i>  <i>be about to hear.</i></p>	<p>āūd-ītūrūs, <i>about</i>  <i>to hear.</i></p>
<p><i>Supines.</i> { āūd-ītum, <i>to hear</i>  āūd-ītū, <i>to be heard.</i></p>		

	<i>Indicative Mood.</i>	<i>Conjunctive Mood.</i>
<b>Present Tense.</b>	<i>S.</i> Aūd-īōr, <i>I am</i> aūd-īrīs, <i>thou art</i> aūd-ītūr, <i>he is</i> <i>Pl.</i> aūd-īmūr, <i>we are</i> aūd-imīnī, <i>ye are</i> aūd-īuntūr, <i>they are</i>	aūd-īār, <i>I may</i> aūd-īārīs, <i>thou mayst</i> aūd-īātūr, <i>he may</i> aūd-īāmūr, <i>we may</i> aūd-īāmīnī, <i>ye may</i> aūd-īāntūr, <i>they may</i>
<b>Preterimperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> aūd-īēbār, <i>I was</i> aūd-īēbārīs, <i>thou wast</i> aūd-īēbātūr, <i>he was</i> <i>Pl.</i> aūd-īēbāmūr, <i>we were</i> aūd-īēbāmīnī, <i>ye were</i> aūd-īēbāntūr, <i>they were</i>	aūd-īrēr, <i>I might</i> aūd-īrērīs, <i>thou mightst</i> aūd-īrētūr, <i>he might</i> aūd-īrēmūr, <i>we might</i> aūd-īrēmīnī, <i>ye might</i> aūd-īrēntūr, <i>they might</i>
<b>Preterperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> aūd-ītūs sum, <i>I was</i> aūd-ītūs ēs, <i>thou wast</i> aūd-ītūs ēst, <i>he was</i> <i>Pl.</i> aūd-ītī sūmūs, <i>we were</i> aūd-ītī ēstīs, <i>ye were</i> aūd-ītī sūnt, <i>they were</i>	aūd-ītūs sim, <i>I may</i> aūd-ītūs sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> aūd-ītūs sīt, <i>he may</i> aūd-ītī sīmūs, <i>we may</i> aūd-ītī sītīs, <i>ye may</i> aūd-ītī sint, <i>they may</i>
<b>Preterpluperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> aūd-ītūs ēram, <i>I had</i> aūd-ītūs ērās, <i>thou hadst</i> aūd-ītūs ērāt, <i>he had</i> <i>Pl.</i> aūd-ītī ērāmūs, <i>we had</i> aūd-ītī ērātīs, <i>ye had</i> aūd-ītī ērānt, <i>they had</i>	aūd-ītūs ēssem, <i>I would</i> aūd-ītūs ēssēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> aūd-ītūs ēssēt, <i>he would</i> aūd-ītī ēssēmūs, <i>we would</i> aūd-ītī ēssētīs, <i>ye would</i> aūd-ītī ēssēnt, <i>they would</i>
<b>Future Imperfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> aūd-īār, <i>I shall</i> aūd-īērīs, <i>thou shalt</i> aūd-īētūr, <i>he shall</i> <i>Pl.</i> aūd-īēmūr, <i>we shall</i> aūd-īēmīnī, <i>ye shall</i> aūd-īēntūr, <i>they shall</i>	
<b>Future Perfect.</b>	<i>S.</i> aūd-ītūs ērō, <i>I shall</i> aūd-ītūs ērīs, <i>thou shalt</i> aūd-ītūs ērīt, <i>he shall</i> <i>Pl.</i> aūd-ītī ērīmūs, <i>we shall</i> aūd-ītī ērītīs, <i>ye shall</i> aūd-ītī ērunt, <i>they shall</i>	

## CONJUGATION.

## VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
aūd-īrē, aūd-ītōr, <i>be thou</i> aūd-ītōr, <i>let him be</i> [ye aūd-īmīnī, aūd-īmīnōr, <i>be</i> aūd-īuntōr, <i>let them be</i>	aūd-īrī, <i>to be heard.</i>	
	aūd-ītum ēssē, <i>to have been heard.</i>	aūd-ītūs, <i>heard.</i>
	aūd-ītum īrī, <i>to be about to be heard.</i>	
		aūd-īēndūs, <i>meet to be heard.</i>

## ON THE SIGNS OF THE TENSES.

§ 54. Most of the Tenses have more than one Sign, or may be put into English in more than one way, though in the foregoing tables only one is given.

## SIGNS OF TENSES IN THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Amō, <i>I — love, or am loving.</i>
Preterimp.	Amābam, <i>I — loved, or was loving, or used to love.</i>
Preterperf.	Amāvī, <i>I — loved, or have loved.</i>
Preterplup.	Amāvēram, <i>I had loved.</i>
Fut. Imp.	Amābō, <i>I — shall or will — love, or be loving.</i>
Fut. Perf.	Amāvērō, <i>I — shall or will — have loved.</i>

SIGNS OF TENSES IN THE CONJUNCTIVE MOOD,  
WHEN POTENTIAL.

Pres.	Amem, <i>I — may, or can, or would, or should, or could — love, or be loving.</i>
Preterimp.	Amārem, <i>I — might, or would, or should, or could — love, or be loving, or have been loving.</i>
Preterperf.	Amāvērim, <i>I — may, or can, or might, or would, or should, or could — have loved, or love.</i>
Preterplup.	Amāviſsem, <i>I — might, or would, or should, or could — have loved.</i>

## § 55.

Note 1. When the Conjunctive Mood is truly *Subjunctive* (that is to say, subjoined to governing Conjunctions or Relative Pronouns,) it often has the same signs as the Indicative: as,

Laūdābērīs	mōdō	pārēās.	
<i>Thou wilt be praised if thou obeyest.</i>			
Laūdābār	quum	pārērem.	
<i>I was praised when I obeyed.</i>			
Laūdātūr	quōd	pārūrēt.	
<i>He is praised because he obeyed</i>			
Laūdāvī	ēum	quī	pārūrēssēt.
<i>I praised him who had obeyed.</i>			

Note 2. The Present Conjunctive is also used for the Imperative Mood:  
as,

Act.	Amem, <i>may I love, or let me love.</i>
	Amēs, <i>mayst thou love, or love thou.</i>
	Amēt, <i>may he love, or let him love.</i>
	Amēmūs, <i>may we love, or let us love.</i>
	Amētis, <i>may ye love, or love ye.</i>
	Amēnt, <i>may they love, or let them love</i>

**Pass.** Aměr, *may I be loved, or let me be loved.*  
 Aměrīs, *mayst thou be loved, or be thou loved.*  
 Amētūr, *may he be loved, or let him be loved.*  
 Amēmūr, *may we be loved, or let us be loved.*  
 Amēmīnī, *may ye be loved, or be ye loved.*  
 Amēntūr, *may they be loved, or let them be loved.*

**Note 3.** The Infinitive in *re* stands for the Preterimperfect as well as for the Present Tense : and the Infinitive in *isse* stands for the Preterpluperfect as well as for the Preterperfect Tense : as

- (1) Dīcīt mē āmārě.  
*He says (that) I am loving.*  
 Dīxīt mē āmārě.  
*He said (that) I was loving.*
- (2) Dīcīt mē āmāvīssě.  
*He says (that) I loved, or have loved.*  
 Dīxīt mē āmāvīssě.  
*He said (that) I had loved.*

## VERBS IN *IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 56. Verbs in *io* of the Third Conjugation, in the Tenses derived from the Present-stem, throw away *i* before another *i* ; but keep it before *a*, *o*, *u*, and *e*, except before *er* or *e* final : as, rāpī-ō, rāp-ě, rāpī-ūnt, rāp-ērě, rāpī-ēbam, rāpī-am, rāp-ērem, rāp-ī, rāpī-ēns, &c. These Verbs are the following with their compounds :

Cāpīō, cūpīō, făcīō, jăcīō,  
 Fūgiō, fōdīō, păriō, lăcīō,  
 Răpīō, săpīō, spēcīō, quătīō,  
 Grădīōr, mōrīōr, pōtīōr, pătīōr.

## § 57. VARIETIES OF FORM.

(a) The following changes are made in the several Conjugations, chiefly by the poets :

I. *Avis* into *as* ; as, āmāstī for āmāvīstī ; āmāssě for āmāvīssě.

*Aver* into *ar* ; as, āmārūnt for āmāvērūnt ; āmāram for āmāvēram.

II. *Evis* into *es* ; as, *implēssem* for *implēvīssēm* , *implēssē* for *implēvīssē*.

*Ever* into *er* ; as, *implērūnt* for *implēvērūnt* ; *implērō* for *implēvērō*.

IV. *Iv* into *ī* ; as, *aūdīīt* for *aūdīvīt* ; *aūdīērūnt* for *aūdīvērūnt*.

*Ivis* into *iis*, or *is* ; as, *aūdīīssē* and *aūdīssē* for *aūdīvīssē*.

*Note.* *Nōvī*, in the Third Conjugation, changes *ovis* into *os* ; as, *nōstī* for *nōvistī* ; and *over* into *or* ; as, *nōram* for *nōvēram*. *Pētīvī* from *pētō*, and *dēsīvī* from *dēsīnō*, take the same changes as Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

(b) The Third Person Plural of the Preterperfect Active often ends in *ērē* instead of *ērūnt* ; as,

*Amāvērūnt* or *āmāvērē*.

*Mōnūērūnt* or *mōnūērē*.

*Rēxērūnt* or *rēxērē*.

*Aūdīvērūnt* or *aūdīvērē*.

*Note.* We must not change *āvērē* into *ārē*, or *ēvērē* into *ērē* ; thus, *āmāvērē* must not become *āmārē*, nor *implēvērē* *implērē*, because these are the forms of the Infinitive.

(c) In the Second Persons Singular of several Passive Tenses, *re* is often put for *ris* ; as,

I. *Amābāris* or *āmābārē* ; *āmābērīs* or *āmābērē*.

*Amērīs* or *āmērē* ; *āmārērīs* or *āmārērē*.

II. *Mōnēbāris* or *mōnēbārē* ; *mōnēbērīs* or *mōnēbērē*.

*Mōnēārīs* or *mōnēārē* ; *mōnērērīs* or *mōnērērē*.

III. *Rēgēbāris* or *rēgēbārē* ; *rēgērīs* or *rēgērē*.

*Rēgārīs* or *rēgārē* ; *rēgērērīs* or *rēgērērē*.

IV. *Aūdīēbāris* or *aūdīēbārē* ; *aūdīērīs* or *aūdīērē*.

*Aūdīārīs* or *aūdīārē* ; *aūdīrērīs* or *aūdīrērē*.

*Note.* It is not usual to write *re* for *ris* in the Second Person Present Passive, on account of the confusion with Inf. Act. and Imperat. Pass. But in Deponent Verbs the change is less objectionable ; as, *hōrtārē* for *hōrtāris*.

(d) In the Passive Tenses formed with the Auxiliary Verb *sum*, *fūi* may be used for *sum* ; *fūēram* for *ēram* ; *fūērō* for *ērō* ; *fūērim* for *sim* ; and *fūīssēm* for *ēssem* ; with a stronger past force : as,

Amātūs	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum or fūī, I was, or have been} \\ \text{eram or fūeram, I had been} \\ \text{ērō or fūērō, I shall have been} \\ \text{sim, or fūerim, I may have been} \\ \text{essem, or fūissem, I should have been} \end{array} \right\}$	loved.
Mōnitūs		advised.
Rēctūs		ruled.
Aūdītūs		heard.

(e) Dicō, dūcō, faciō make in the Second Person Imperative dic, duc, fac.

(f) The old Infinitive Passive in *ier* for *i*, is sometimes used by the epic poets ; as, āmāriēr for āmārī.

(g) The Participle in *dus* of 3d and 4th Conj. is sometimes formed in *undus* as well as *endus*, especially that of Verbs in *io* ; as faciēndūs or faciūndūs.

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 58. The Participles in *rus* and *dus* may be conjugated with all the Tenses of the Verb *sum* : and this is called the Periphrastic Conjugation ; as,

#### ACTIVE VOICE.

	(I) am	was	have been	shall be	shall have been	
Amātūrūs	sum	eram	fūī	ērō	fūērō	} about to love.
—	ēs	erās	fūistī	erīs	fūerīs	
—	ēst	erāt	fūit	erit	fūerit	
Amātūrī	sūmūs	erāmūs	fūimūs	erimūs	fūerimūs	
—	ēstīs	erātīs	fūistīs	erītīs	fūerītīs	
—	sūnt	erānt	fūerūnt	erūnt	fūerīnt	

And the other Moods in like manner.

#### PASSIVE VOICE.

	(I) am	was	have been	shall be	shall have been	
Amāndūs	sum	eram	fūī	ērō	fūērō	} meet to be loved
—	ēs	erās	fūistī	erīs	fūerīs	
—	ēst	erāt	fūit	erit	fūerit	
Amāndī	sūmūs	erāmūs	fūimūs	erimūs	fūerimūs	
—	ēstīs	erātīs	fūistīs	erītīs	fūerītīs	
—	sūnt	erānt	fūerūnt	erūnt	fūerīnt	

And the other Moods in like manner.

*Note.* The Participle in *dus* is often called the Gerundive.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 59. Deponent Verbs follow the Passive Conjugation, but take also Gerunds, Supines, and Participles Active. Intransitive Deponents want the Supine in *u*, and Participle in *du*.

## (a) CONJUGATION OF TRANSITIVE DEPONENTS.

1	2	3	4
<i>I exhort,</i>	<i>fear,</i>	<i>speak,</i>	<i>divide.</i>
Hōrt-ōr	vēr-ēōr	lōqu-ōr	pārt-iōr
Hōrt-ārīs	vēr-ērīs	lōqu-ērīs	pārt-irīs
Hōrt-ātūs sum	vēr-ītūs sum	lōcū-tūs sum	pārt-ītūs sum
Hōrt-ārī	vēr-ērī	lōqu-ī	pārt-irī
Hōrt-āndī	vēr-ēndī	lōqu-ēndī	pārt-iēndī
Hōrt-āndō	vēr-ēndō	lōqu-ēndō	pārt iēndō
Hōrt-āndum	vēr-ēndum	lōqu-ēndum	pārt-iēndum
Hōrt-ātum	vēr-ītum	lōcū-tum	pārt-ītum
Hōrt-ātū	vēr-ītū	lōcū-tū	pārt-ītū
Hōrt-āns	vēr-ēns	lōqu-ēns	pārt-iēns
Hōrt-ātūs	vēr-ītūs	lōcū-tūs	pārt-ītūs
Hōrt-ātūrūs	vēr-ītūrūs	lōcū-tūrūs	pārt-ītūrūs
Hōrt-āndūs.	vēr-ēndūs.	lōqu-ēndūs.	pārt-iēndūs.

## (b) CONJUGATION OF INTRANSITIVE DEPONENTS

1	2	3	4
<i>I wander,</i>		<i>fall,</i>	<i>fawn.</i>
Vāg-ōr		lāb-ōr	blānd-iōr
Vāg-ārīs		lāb-ērīs	blānd-irīs
Vāg-ātūs sum		lāp-sūs sum	blānd-ītūs sum
Vāg-ārī		lāb-ī	blānd-irī
Vāg-āndī		lāb-ēndī	blānd-iēndī
Vāg-āndō	None	lāb-ēndō	blānd-iēndō
Vāg-āndum		lāb-ēndum	blānd-iēndum
Vāg-ātum		lāp-sum	blānd-ītum
Vāg-āns		lāb-ēns	blānd-iēns
Vāg-ātūs		lāp-sūs	blānd-ītūs
Vāg-ātūrūs.		lāp-sūrūs.	blānd-ītūrūs.



## VERBA DERIVATA, DERIVED VERBS.

§ 60. I. Frëquëntätivă, Frequentative Verbs, express the repetition of an action, are of the 1st Conjugation, and end in -ito, -to, -tor : as, rög-îtö, *I ask often*, from rög-ö ; mîn-îtör, *I threaten often*, from mîn-ör ; cân-tö, *I sing often*, from cân-ö.

II. Incëptivă or Inchöätivă, Inceptive Verbs, express the beginning of an action, are of the 3rd Conjugation, and end in -äscö, -ëscö, -iscö.

Some are derived from Verbs : as,

Lăb-äscö, *I begin to totter* ; from lăb-ö, (lăb-äs).  
 Păll-ëscö, *I turn pale* ; „ păll-ëö, (păll-ës).  
 Trëm-iscö, *I begin to tremble* ; „ trëm-ö, (trëm-is).  
 Sc-iscö, *I begin to know* ; „ scî-ö, (scîs).

Some from Nouns : as,

Pűer-äscö, *I become a boy* ; from pűer.  
 Mît-ëscö, *I become mild* ; „ mîtis.

III. Dësidërätivă, Desiderative Verbs, express the desire of an action, are of the 4th Conjugation, ending in -űrîö, and derived from Supines in -um : as,  
 Es-űrîö, *I am hungry* ; from ëdö, ës-um.



## VERBA ANOMALA, IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 61. Irregular Verbs are such as do not form their Tenses according to the common rules : as,

- (1) Pössum, pötës, pötűi, pössë, pötűissë, pötëns, *to be able*.
- (2) Völö, vis, völűi, vëllë, völűissë, völëndi, völëndö, völëndum, völëns, *to be willing*.
- (3) Nölö, nönvis, nölűi, nöllë, nölűissë, nölëndi, nölëndö, nölëndum, nölëns, *to be unwilling*.
- (4) Mălö, mavis, mălűi, mällë, mălűissë, mälëndi, mälëndö, mälëndum, mälëns, *to be more willing*.
- (5) Eö, is, ivi, irë, ivissë, itűrum ëssë, ëündi, ëündö, ëündum, itum, itű, ëűns or iëns, itűrűs, *to go*.
- (6) Fërö, fërs. tűli, fërrë, tűlissë, lătűrum ëssë, fërëndi, fërëndö, fërëndum, lătum, lătű, fërëns, lătűrűs, *to bear*.
- (7) Fïö, fïis, fäctűs sum, fïëri, fäctum ëssë, fäctum iri, fäctűs, fäciëndűs, *to become or be made*.
- (8) Fërör, fërris, lătűs sum, fërri, lătum ëssë, lătum iri, lătűs, fërëndűs, *to be borne*.

<i>Indicative Mood.</i>			<i>Conjunctive Mood</i>		
<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Pōssum	pōtes	pōtēst	Pōs-sim	-sīt	-sīmūs
Vōlō	vīs	vūlt	Vēl-im		-sītīs
Nōlō	nōnvīs	nōnvūlt	Nōl-im		-īītīs
Mālō	māvis	māvūlt	Māl-im		-āmūs
Eō	īs	īt	E-am		-ātīs
Fērō	fērs	fert	Fēr-am		-āmūr
Fīō	fīs	fīt	Fī-am		-āmīnī
Fērōr	fērīs	fertūr	Fēr-ār		-āntūr.
Pōt-eram	-ērās	-ērāt	Pōs-sem	-sēt	-sēmūs
Vōl-ēbam			Vēl-lem		-lēēmūs
Nōl-ēbam	-ēbās	-ēbāt	Nōl-lem		-lēētīs
Māl-ēbam			Māl-lem		-rētīs
I-bam	-bās	-bāt	I-rem		-rēmūr
Fēr-ēbam			Fēr-rem		-rēmīnī
Fī-ēbam	-ēbās	-ēbāt	Fī-rem		-rēmūt.
Fēr-ēbār	-ēbārīs	-ēbātūr	Fēr-rēr		-rēmūt.
Pōt-ūi	-ūstī	-ūst	Pōt-ūerim		-ūerītīs
Vōl-ūi			Vōl-ūerim		-ūerītīs
Nōl-ūi			Nōl-ūerim		-ērītīs
Māl-ūi			Māl-ūerim		-ērītīs
Iv-i	-istī	-īt	Iv-ērīm		-ērītīs
Tūl-i			Tūl-ērīm		-ērītīs
Fāctūs	sum	ēs	Fāctūs		-ērītīs
Lātūs	est	sūt	Lātūs		-ērītīs



§ 63. (°) *Edō, I eat, ēdīs or ēs, ēdī, ēdērē or ēssē, edissē, ēsūrum ēssē, ēdēndī, ēdēndō, ēdēndum, ēsum, ēsū, ēdēns, ēsūrūs, to eat.*

*Pres. Indic. Act.*

*Sing.* *Edō, ēdīs or ēs, ēdīt or ēst :*

*Plur.* *ēdimūs, ēditīs or ēstīs, ēdūnt.*

*Conjunct. Preterimp. Act.*

*Sing.* *Edērem or ēssem, ēdērēs or ēssēs, ēdērēt or ēssēt.*

*Plur.* *ēdērēmūs or ēssēmūs, ēdērētīs or ēssētīs, ēdērēnt or ēssēnt.*

*Imperative Mood.*

*Sing. 2d Pers.* *Edě or ēs ; ēdītō or ēstō ;*

*3d Pers.* *ēdītō or ēstō ;*

*Plur. 2d Pers.* *ēditě or ēstě, ēdītōtě or ēstōtě ;*

*3d Pers.* *ēdūntō.*

*Obs.* The other Tenses are regular : also the Passive Voice ; except that *ēstūr* may be used for *ēdītūr*, and *ēssētūr* for *ēdērētūr*.



VERBA DEFECTIVA, DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 64. Defective Verbs are such as want many of the usual parts of a Verb.

(1) *Aīō, I say ; and inquam, say I.*

	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conj.</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conj.</i>
Present	Aīō	—	Inquam	—
	āīs	aīās	īnquīs	īnquīās.
	āīt	aīāt	īnquīt	īnquīāt.
	—	—	īnquīmūs	—
	—	—	īnquītīs	īnquīātīs.
	aīūnt.	aīānt	īnquīūnt	īnquīānt.
Preterperfect.	aīēbam	—	īnquīēbam	—
	aīēbās	—	īnquīēbās	—
	aīēbāt	—	īnquīēbāt	—
	aīēbāmūs	—	īnquīēbāmūs	—
	aīēbātīs	—	īnquīēbātīs	—
	aīēbānt	—	īnquīēbānt.	—

*Præterperf.* —, inquit, inquit, —, inquit, —.

*Fut. Imperf.* —, inquit, inquit.

*Imper.* inquit, inquit; inquit.

*Part.* of aīō, aīēns.

§ 65.

(2) Quæso, *I entreat*; 1st Pers. Pl. quæsumus.

(3) Fārī, *to speak*; used by the Poets in this and a few other forms, as fātūr, *he speaks*; fābōr, *I shall speak*; fārē, *speak thou*; *Part.* (fāns), fāntis, &c.; fātūs; fāndūs; *Ger.* fāndī, fāndō; *Sup.* fātū.

(4) The Imperatives;

Apāgē, *begone*.

Avē, āvētē, *hail*; *Infin.* āvērē.

Cēdō, cēditē, or cēttē, *give me*.

Sālvē, sālvētē, *hail*; *Infin.* sālvērē; *Fut.* sālvēbīs.

Vālē, vālētē, *farewell*; *Infin.* vālērē.

(5) Aūsim, aūsis, aūsīt —, —, aūsint: for aūdēam, *I may dare*.

Fāxim, fāxis, fāxit, fāximūs, fāxītis, fāxint: for fāciām, *I may do*, or fēcērim, *I may have done*.

Also fāxō, for fāciām, *I shall do*, or fēcērō, *I shall have done*.

§ 66.

(6) Prætēritivā; or Verbs conjugated only in the Præterperfect and its derived Tenses; cēpī, *I begin*; ōdī, *I hate*; mēmīnī, *I remember*.

	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conj.</i>	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
<i>Præterperf.</i>	Cēpī	cēpērim	cēpīssē.	—
	Ōdī	ōdērim	ōdīssē.	—
	Mēmīnī	mēmīnērim	mēmīnīssē.	—
<i>Præterplu.</i>	Cēpēram	cēpīssēm.	—	—
	Ōdēram	ōdīssēm.	—	—
	Mēmīnēram	mēmīnīssēm.	—	—
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	Cēpērō	—	cēptūrum ēssē	cēptūrūs.
	Ōdērō	—	ōsūrum ēssē	ōsūrūs.
	Mēmīnērō.	—	—	—

*Imper. Sing.* Mēmētō, *Plur.* mēmētōtē.

*Obs.* 1. For cēpī and its Tenses may be used the Passive cēptūs sum and its Tenses before an Infinitive Passive.

*Obs.* 2. Nōvī, *I know*, *Præterp.* of nōscō, is also used as a *Præteritive*.

## § 67.

(7) Impersonal Verbs are conjugated only in the Third Persons Singular of the Proper Moods, and in the Infinitive Mood.

A. Impersonal Verbs Active have no Passive Voice. The principal of these are of the 2nd Conjugation.

Opōrtēt, tādēt, mīserēt,  
Pīgēt, pūdēt, pānītēt,  
Lībēt, līcēt, līquēt, *et*  
Dēcēt atquē dēdēcēt.

	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conjunc.</i>	<i>Infin.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	Opōrtēt	ōpōrtēāt	ōpōrtērē.
<i>Preterimp.</i>	Opōrtēbāt	ōpōrtērēt	—
<i>Preterperf.</i>	Opōrtūit	ōpōrtūērīt	ōpōrtūīssē.
<i>Preterplu.</i>	Opōrtūērāt	ōpōrtūīssēt	—
<i>Fut. Imp.</i>	Opōrtēbīt.		
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	Opōrtūērīt.		

The Persons are expressed by the Cases following the Verb :  
as,

	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>			
<i>Sing.</i>	Opōrtēt mē, <i>it behoves me,</i>	or	<i>I am behoven.</i>	
	Opōrtēt tē, —	<i>thee,</i>	or <i>thou art</i>	—
	Opōrtēt ēum, —	<i>him,</i>	or <i>he is</i>	—
<i>Plur.</i>	Opōrtēt nōs, —	<i>us,</i>	or <i>we are</i>	—
	Opōrtēt vōs, —	<i>you,</i>	or <i>ye are</i>	—
	Opōrtēt ēōs, —	<i>them,</i>	or <i>they are</i>	—

And so in the other Tenses.

§ 68. B. Intransitive Verbs may be used impersonally in the Passive Voice : as, lūdītūr, from lūdō, *I play*.

	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conjunc.</i>	<i>Infin.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	Lūdītūr	lūdātūr	lūdī.
<i>Preterimp.</i>	Lūdēbātūr	lūdērētūr.	—
<i>Preterperf.</i>	Lūsum ēst	lūsum sīt	lūsum ēssē.
<i>Preterplu.</i>	Lūsum ērāt	lūsum ēssēt	lūsum fūīssē.
<i>Fut. Imp.</i>	Lūdētūr	—	lūsum irī.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	Lūsum ērīt.	—	—

The Persons are expressed by an Ablative Case with the Preposition *a* or *ab* following the Verb : as,

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>			
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Lūdītūr ā mē,</i>	<i>it is played by me,</i>	<i>or I play.</i>
	<i>Lūdītūr ā tē,</i>	—	<i>thee, or thou playest.</i>
	<i>Lūdītūr āb ēō,</i>	—	<i>him, or he plays.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Lūdītūr ā nōbīs</i>	—	<i>us, or we play.</i>
	<i>Lūdītūr ā vōbīs,</i>	—	<i>you or ye play.</i>
	<i>Lūdītūr āb ēīs,</i>	—	<i>them or they play.</i>

And so in the other Tenses.

§ 69. C. The Neuter of the Gerundive Participle in *dus*, is used impersonally, in the same manner, with a Dative or Ablative after it to mark the Persons : as,

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>			
<i>S.</i>	<i>Lūdēndum ēst mīhi,</i>	<i>it must be played by me,</i>	<i>or I</i>
	<i>Lūdēndum ēst tībi,</i>	—	<i>thee, or thou</i>
	<i>Lūdēndum ēst ēī,</i>	—	<i>him, or he</i>
<i>P.</i>	<i>Lūdēndum ēst nōbīs,</i>	<i>it must be played by us,</i>	<i>or we</i>
	<i>Lūdēndum ēst vōbīs,</i>	—	<i>you, or ye</i>
	<i>Lūdēndum ēst ēīs,</i>	—	<i>them, or they</i>

*must play.*

And so in the other Tenses.

(The Particles are treated of in other parts of this Grammar )

# I. OF THE GENDER OF NOUNS

§ 70.

## A. GENERAL RULES.

(1.)

*Virī, Pōpūlī, ēt Divī,  
Vēntī, Mēnsēs, Mōntēs, Rīvī*  
Gēnērīs sūnt Māscūlīnī.

(2.)

*Plāntā, Divā, Fēmīnā,  
Tērrā, Urbēs, Insūlā*  
Gēnērīs sūnt Fēmīnīnī.

(3.)

*Vōx* indēclīnābīlīs  
Neūtrīūs ēst Gēnērīs.

(4.)

Sūnt Cōmmūnīs Gēnērīs  
*Civīs, hōstīs, jūvēnīs,  
Tēstīs, jūdēx, ārtīfēx,  
Aūctōr, ēxsūl, ōpīfēx,  
Cōmēs, hērēs, hōspēs, dūx,  
Obsēs, intērprēs, cōnjūx,  
Incōlā, sēcērdōs, vīndēx,  
Adōlēscēns, infāns, īndēx,  
Pārēns, prācsūl, pār, cūstōs,  
Mūnīcēps, sātēllēs, bōs,  
Milēs, vātēs, aūgūr, grūs,  
Cānīs, tigrīs, sērpēns, sūs:  
Dāmā, tālpā jūngīmūs.*

## B. OF GENDER IN THE DECLENSIONS.

§ 71.

### I. FIRST DECLENSION:

#### PRINCIPAL RULE.

*A* ēt *ē* sūnt Fēmīnīnā ; | *As* ēt *ēs* sūnt Māscūlīnā.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

Māscūlīnā sūnt In *a*  
Māscūlōrum nōmīnā,

Ut *naūtā, vērnā* ēt *pōētā*.  
*Scūrrā, scribā* ēt *prōphētā*.



## § 72.

## II. SECOND DECLENSION.

## PRINCIPAL RULE.

Māscūlinis ūs ēt ēr,

Neūtris um tribūitūr.

## EXCEPTIONS.

- (1) Fēmīnīnā sūnt īn ūs  
*Albūs, ārcētūs, cārbusūs,*  
*Cōlūs, hūmūs, mēthōdūs;*

- (2) Neūtrā vīrūs, pēlāgūs.  
*Vūlgūs* fērē Neūtrum sīt,  
 Māscūlum sūbīndē fīt.

## § 73.

## III. THIRD DECLENSION.

## (a) FIRST PRINCIPAL RULE.

Māscūlis īnsēritur

Quōd claudīt o, or, os, vėl er,

Et Nōmēn dēsīnēns īn es

Sī flēctīt cāsūs īmpārēs.

## EXCEPTIONS.

- (1) Illā Fēmīnīnā sūnt  
 In do ēt go quā dēsīnūnt:  
 Sēd Māscūlinā mānēnt cārēdō,  
*Līgō, ōrdō* ātquē mārēdō.

*Æquōr, ādōr, mārēdōr, cōr*  
 Fēmīnīnum ēst ārbōr.

- (2) Sūnt īn io Fēmīnīnā:  
 Tāntum illā Māscūlinā,  
 Quā vėl ōcūlis spēctābīs,  
 Vėl tū mānībūs trāctābīs.

- (5) Fēmīnīnā cōs ēt dōs,  
 Neūtrā sūnt ūtrūmquē os.

- (6) Neūtrā mūltā sūnt īn er,  
*Vērbēr, sīlēr, ācēr, vēr,*  
*Tūbēr, ūbēr, ēt cādāvēr,*  
*Pīpēr, ītēr, ēt pāpāvēr.*

- (3) Cārō (cārnis) māvūlt sē  
 Fēmīnīnis āddērē.

- (7) *Æs* ēst Neūtrum; sēx īn es  
 Quā flēctūnt cāsūs īmpārēs  
 Fēmīnīnā, cōmpēs, tēgēs,  
*Mērcēs, mērgēs, quīēs, sēgēs.*

- (4) Neūtrā paucā sūnt īn or;

## § 74.

## (b) SECOND PRINCIPAL RULE.

Fēmīnīnis īnsērās

Quā claudūnt īs, x, aus ēt as,

S cum cōnsōnāntē nēxā,

Es āequālītēr īnflēxā.

## EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Múltă sũnt quã claudĩt *is*  
 Mãscũlinĩ Gẽnẽrĩs,  
*Amnis, aũis, cãllis, cõllis,*  
*Caũlis, cũcũmis ẽt fõllis,*  
*Fãscis, fũnis, fũstis, finis,*  
*Ignis, orbis atquẽ crinis,*  
*Pãnis, piscis, põstis, ẽnsis,*  
*Sẽntis, carbis, tũrquis, mẽnsis,*  
*Tõrris, unguis ẽt cãnũlis,*  
*Vẽctis, vẽrmis ẽt sũdũlis,*  
*Cãssis, cinis, glis ẽt anguis,*  
*Lãpis, pũlvis atquẽ sanguis.*

(2) Plẽrãquẽ quã claudĩt *ex*  
 Mãscũlinã sũnt, ũt *grẽx* :  
 Sẽd Fẽminĩnã mãnẽnt *nẽx,*  
*Sũpẽllẽx, ilẽx, cãrẽx, lẽx.*

(3) Mãscũlinã sũnt ĩn *ĩx*  
*Fõrnĩx, phãnĩx ẽt cãlĩx*

(4) Mãscũlinã sũnt ĩn *ãs*  
*Vãs (vãdis), gĩgãs, ẽlẽphũs,*  
*As (ãssis), mãs ẽt ădãmãs,*  
 Neũtrã, *vãs (vãsis), nẽfãs, fũs*

(5) Mãscũlinis ăddẽ *mõns,*  
*Fõns ẽt tũrrẽns, grỹps ẽt põns,*  
*Rũdẽns, hydrõps, dẽns ẽt bũlẽns*  
*Oriẽns, õccĩdẽns ẽt trĩdẽns.*

(6) Mãscũlinã sũnt ĩn *es*  
*Vẽrrẽs ẽt ăcĩnăcẽs.*

## § 75.

## (c) THIRD PRINCIPAL RULE.

Neũtrã claudũnt *a* ẽt *e*, | *Ar, ur, us, e, l, n* ẽt *t*

## EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Mãscũlinã sũnt ĩn *ur*  
*Fũrfũr, tũrtũr, vũltũr, fũr.*

(2) Mãscũlinã sũnt ĩn *us*  
*Lẽpus (lẽpõris) ẽt mũs.*

(3) Fẽminĩnã sũnt ĩn *ũs*  
*Virtus atquẽ sẽrvitũs,*  
*Jũvẽntũs, incũs atquẽ pãlũs,*  
*Sẽnẽctũs, tẽllũs atquẽ sãlũs,*  
 Quĩbũs lõngã mãnẽt *u*  
 Ƴn Gẽnĩtivĩ trãnsĩtũ.

(4) Est ẽt *pẽcũs (pẽcũdis)*  
 Fẽminĩnĩ Gẽnẽrĩs.

(5) Mãscũlã ĩn *l* sũnt *mũgĩl,*  
*Cõnsũl, sãl, sũl atquẽ pũgĩl*

(6) Mãscũlinã sũnt *rẽn, splẽn,*  
*Pẽctẽn, dẽlphĩn, ăttãgẽn.*

(7) Fẽminĩnã sũnt ĩn *on*  
*Gõrgõn, sũndõn, hãlcjõn.*

## § 76

## IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.

## PRINCIPAL RULE.

Mãscũlis ĩn Quãrtã *ũs*, | Neũtris *ũ* trĩbũĩmũs.

## EXCEPTIONS.

Fẽminĩnã sũnt ĩn *ũs*  
 Quãrtã *dõmũs, põrticũs,*

*Acũs, Idũs atquẽ mãnũs,*  
*Trĩbũs, nũrũs, socrũs, ănus,*

§ 77.

## V. FIFTH DECLENSION.

## PRINCIPAL RULE.

Fēmininis insērēs

Quintā nōminā in *ēs*.

## EXCEPTION.

*Dies* ēst in Sīngulō

Mās vėl Fēmininum :

In Plūrālī Nūmērō

Sēmpēr Māscūlinum.

## II. IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 78.

## I. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

(a) Sīngulārīs Nūmērūs

Mūltīs deēst Nōminībūs :

Ut *Mānēs*, *lōcūlī*, *Pēnātēs* ;*Cūnā*, *thērmā*, *nūgā*, *grātēs* ;*Armā*, *vīscērā*, *māgālīā*,Cum dēum *fēstīs*, ūt *Flōrālīā*

(b) Lēctītāntībūs āppārēnt

Mūltā quā Plūrālī cārēnt.

## II. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN CASE.

Nōnnūllī cāsūs ābsūnt hīs,

*Fūs*, *frūgīs*, *dāpīs*, *ōpīs*, *vīs* :

Et mūltā prætēr hāc āppārēnt

Quā cāsībūs nōnnūllīs cārēnt.

## III. NOUNS REDUNDANT IN NUMBER.

In *a* vėl : quā ēffērūnt

Nūmērūm Plūrālem, sūnt

*Frēnum*, *cārbāsūs* ēt *lōcūs*,*Rāstrum*, *sībilūs* ēt *jōcūs*.*Tārtārūs* fīt in Plūrālī*Tārtārā*, ēt *cālum cālī*.

## IV. NOUNS REDUNDANT IN CASE.

Abūndānt quādam Cāsībūs,

Ut *dōmūs*, *laūrūs*, *Œdipūs*.

## III. OF THE PRETERPERFECTS AND SUPINES OF LATIN VERBS.

## § 79. I. FIRST CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

Vērbōrum Prīmā Cōnjūgātīō,

Cui *ō ās ārē* tērminātīō,*Avi* in Pērfēctō fīt,Sūpīnō *ātum* sūbjicīt.

(Am-ō, ām-ās, ām-ārē, ām-āvī, ām-ātum.)

## EXCEPTIONS.

- (1) Hīnc ēxcēpiēndā sūnt  
Quæ ūi itum ēfferūnt:  
Crēpō, cūbō atquē sōnō,  
Dōmō, vētō atquē tōnō.
- (2) Sēcō sēcūi atquē sēctum;  
Fricō fricūi atquē frictum.
- (3) Jūvō jūvi jūtum stāt;

- Lāvō lāvi lōtum oāt,*  
*Et lāvātum vindicāt.*
- (4) Dō fit dēdī atquē ddtum,  
Stō fit stēi atquē statum.
- (5) Micō dāt Pērfectum mīcūl,  
Plīcō dāt Pērfectum plīcūl;  
Nullum fērt Sūpīnum mīcō,  
-ātum dāt vėl -ītum plīcō.

## § 80. II. SECOND CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS

Vērbōrum Altērā Cōnjūgātiō,  
Cui ēō ēs ērē tērminātiō,  
Uī in Pērfectō fit,  
Sūpīnō itum sūbjicit.

(Mōn-ēō, mōnēs, mōn-ērē, mōn-ūi, mōn-ītum.)

## EXCEPTIONS.

- (1) Hīnc ēxcēpiēndā sūnt  
Quæ ēvi ētum ēfferūnt:  
Ut nēō nēvi atquē nētum;  
Dēlēō dēl-ēvi -ētum.  
Addē flēō, plēō, hīs,  
Et olēō, cum cōmpōsītis.
- (2) Hīs in dī Pērfectum stāt,  
Sum Sūpīnum tērmināt.  
Prāndī prānsum prāndēō;  
Sēdī sēssum sēdēō;  
Vidī vīsum vidēō.  
Sēd spōndēō spōpōndī spōnsum;  
Tōndēō tōtōndī tōnsum;  
Mōmōrdī mōrsum mōrdēō;  
Pēpēndī pēnsum pēndēō.
- (3) Hīs in sī Pērfectum fit,  
Sum Sūpīnum ēxīgīt.  
Jūssī jūssum jūbēō;  
Mūlsī mūlsum mūlcēō  
Dāt, Itīdēmquē mūlgēō;  
Tērsī tērsum tērgēō;  
Arsī arsum ardēō;  
Risī rīsum ridēō;  
Suāsī suāsum suādēō;  
Mānsī mānsum mănēō;  
Hāsī hāsum hārēō.  
Sic ēt ālgēō ālsī dāt,  
Fūlgēō fūlsī vindicāt;
- Urgēō item ūrsī fit;*  
*Sēd hīs Sūpīnum dēfīcīt.*
- (4) Dānt sī ēt tum indūl-gēō,  
Et tōr-ēi tōr-tum tor-quēō.
- (5) Aūgēō aūxī aūctum fit;  
Frigēō frīxī sūscīpīt:  
Lūgēō, lūcēō, lūxī dānt,  
Sēd nōn Sūpīnum gēnērānt.
- (6) Hāc Pērfectō vōlūnt vī,  
Tum Sūpīnō sūffīcī:  
Cāvēō cāvī atquē caūtum;  
Fāvēō fāvī atquē faūtum;  
Fōvēō fōvī atquē fōtum;  
Mōvēō mōvī atquē mōtum;  
Vōvēō vōvī atquē vōtum.
- (7) Hīs ūi in Pērfectō stāt,  
Tum Sūpīnum tērmināt.  
Dāt dōcēō dōctum; dāt mīstum mīscēō; sōrptum  
Sōrbēō; fit tēnēō tēntum; fit tōrrēō tōstum.
- (8) Hīs Prāterītum Pāssīvē,  
Prāsēns scrībītūr Actīvē;  
Aūdēō dāt aūsūs sum;  
Gaudēō gāvīsūs sum;  
Sōlēōquē sōlītūs sum

## § 81 III. THIRD CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

Verbōrum Tertiā Cōnjūgatiō,  
Cui *ō* is *ērē* tērminātiō,  
Pērfectum vāriāe fōrmāe dāt,  
*Tum* vėl *sum* Sūpinō stāt.

(Rēg-ō, rēg-īs, rēx-I, rēg-ērē, rēct-um.)

*Special Rules with their Exceptions.*

- § 82. (a) *Bō* ēt *pō*.  
*Bō*, *pō* hābēnt additum  
Pērfectō *psi*, Sūpinō *ptum* :  
Ut *nūbō* *nūpsi* atquē *nūptum*.

EXCEPTIONS.

*Rumpō* tāmēn *rūpi* *rūptum* ;  
*Bibō* *bibi* *bibitum* ;  
*Strēpō* *strēpui* *strēpitum*.

(b) *Cō*, *gō*, *hō*, *quō*.  
*Cō*, *gō*, *hō*, *quō*, sic dēclinō,  
*Xī* Pērfectō, *ctum* Sūpinō :  
Ut *dūcō* *dūxi* atquē *dūctum* ;  
*Sūgō* *sūxi* atquē *sūctum* ;  
*Rēgō* *rēxi* atquē *rēctum* ;  
*Vēhō* *vēxi* atquē *vēctum*.

EXCEPTIONS.

- (1) *Scō* Pērfectō jūbēt *vī*,  
*Tum* Sūpinō sūbjīci ;  
Ut *crēscō* *crēvi* *crētum* ; *suēscō*  
*Suēvi* *suētum* ; sic *quēlescō*.  
*Nōscō* *nōvi* *nōtum* dāt ;  
*Pāscō* *pāvi* *pāstum* stāt.  
*Cōmpēscō* fit *cōmpēscūi* ;  
*Pōpōsci* *pōscō* ; *dīscō* *dīdicī*.  
(2) *Icō* *ici* atquē *ictum* ;  
*Vīncō* *vīci* atquē *vīctum* ;  
*Līnquō* *līqui* atquē *līctum*.  
(3) *Pārcō* dāt *pēpērcī* *pārsum*.  
(4) *Spārgō* *spārsi* atquē *spārsum* ;  
*Mērgō* *mērsi* atquē *mērsum* ;  
*Tērgō* *tērsi* atquē *tērsūm*.

- (5) *Agō* *ēgi* atquē *āctum* ;  
*Frāngō* *frēgi* atquē *frāctum* ;  
*Tāngō* *tēgī* ēt *tāctum* ;  
*Pāngō* *pēgī* ēt *pāctum* ;  
Sēd cōmpōstā-pēgī -pāctum ;  
*Pūngō* *pūpūgī* ēt *pūctum* ;  
*Jūngō* *jūnxi* atquē *jūctum*.  
*Lēgō* *lēgi* vīndicāt,  
Cōmpōstum sāpē *lēxi* dāt.

- (6) *Fīgō* *fīxi* *fīxum* ; *fīngō*  
*Fīnxi* atquē *fīctum* ; *pīngō*  
*Pīnxi* faciūt atquē *pīctum* ;  
*Stringō* *strīnxi* atquē *strīctum*.

(c) *Dō*.

*Dō* Pērfectō jūbēt *sī*,  
*Sum* Sūpinō sūffīci.  
*Lāsī* *lāsum* faciūt *lādō* ;  
(Vērūm *cēssi* *cēssum* *cēdō* : )  
Sic *il-lidō* -*līsi* -*līsum* ;  
*Dīvidō* *dī-vīsi* -*vīsum*.

EXCEPTIONS.

- (1) Quāe ēxēunt īn *āndō*, *ēndō*,  
Flētē *dō* īn *dī* vērteūdō.  
*Pēndō* fit *pēpēndī* *pēnsūm*  
*Tēndō* dāt *tētēndī* *tēnsūm*.  
(2) *Fīndō* tāmēn *fīdī* *fīssūm* ;  
*Scīndō* *scīdī* atquē *scīssūm* ;  
*Fūndō* *fūdī* atquē *fūssūm* ;  
*Tūndō* *tūtūdī* ēt *tūssūm*.  
*Cūdō* *cūdī* atquē *cūssūm* ;  
*Cādō* *cēcīdī* ēt *cāssūm* ;  
*Cādō* fit *cēcīdī* *cāssūm* ;  
Fāciūt *ēdō* *ēdī* *ēssūm*.

- (3) *Abdō, addō, cōndō, crēdō, Obdō, pērdō, rēddō, ēdō, Prōdō, trādō, vēndō, dēdō, Quā ā dō cōmpōstā sūnt, -didī, dītum, ēffērunt : Ut ēdō ēdidī ēt ēdītum, Dēdō dēdidī ēt dēdītum.*

(d) To.

*Flēctō flēxī atquē flēxum ;  
Nēctō nēxī atquē nēxum ;  
Pēctō pēxī atquē pēxum ;  
Pētīvī ēt pētītum pētō ;  
Mēssūī ēt mēssum mētō ;  
Mittō mīsī mīssum dāt ;  
Vērtō vērtī vērsūm stāt.  
Vērbūm quōd ā sīstō fīt  
Pērfēctō -stītī sūffīcīt.*

§ 83. (e) So.

*Sō sīvī sītum fīt ; ārcēssō  
Sic fōrmātūr, ēt lācēssō.  
Visō vīsī vīndīcāt ;  
Pīnsō pīnsūī pīstum dāt.*

§ 84. (f) Xo.

*Unūm īn xō tēxō stāt,  
Quōd tēxūī tēxtūm vīndīcāt.*

§ 85. (g) Lo.

*Lō lūī tum : sic cōnsūlō  
Flēctītūr ; ēt occūlō.  
Sēd cōlūī ēt cūltūm cōlō,  
Mōlūī mōlītūm fīt mōlō  
A cēllō vērbā cēllūī ;  
Sēd pērcēllō pērcūlī  
Cōnjūgābīs ēt pērcūlsūm,  
Pēllō pēpūlī ēt pūlsūm ;  
Vēllō vēllī (vūlsī) vūlsūm.  
Fāllo fīt fēfēllī fālsum ;  
Psāllo psālī ; sāllo sālsum ;  
Tōllō sūstūlī fōrmātūm  
In Sūpīnō fīt sūblātūm.*

(h) Mo.

*Mō mūī mītūm fīt ; ūt frēmō  
Frēmūī frēmītūm ; sic gēmō,  
Et Sūpīnō cārēns trēmō*

EXCEPTIONS.

*Sī tum : cōmō cōmsī cōmtum,  
Prōmō prōmsī atquē prōmtum ;  
Sic flēctūtūr sūmō, dēmō ;  
Sēd ēmī atquē ēmtum ēmō ;  
Prēssī atquē prēssum prēmō.*

(Intēr m ēt s vėl t  
Lātinī sāpē pōnūt p.  
Sic fiūt sūmpsī, dēmpsī, dēmp-  
tum,  
Cōmptum, prōmptum, sūmptum,  
ēmptum.)

(i) No.

*Cānō cāntūm cēcīnī,  
Cōmpōstā -cēntum -cīnūī ;  
Gīgnō gēnūī gēnītūm ;  
Pōnō pōsūī pōsītūm ;  
Tēmnō tēmsī tēmtūm dāt ;  
Stērnō strāvī strātūm stāt.  
Spērnō sprēvī atquē sprētūm,  
Cērno crēvī atquē crētūm ;  
Līnō lēvī atquē lītūm ;  
Sīnō sīvī atquē sītūm.*

(j) Rō.

*Vērrō vērrī atquē vērsūm ;  
Cūrrō dāt cūcūrrī cūrsum ;  
Quārō fīt quā-sīvī -sītūm ;  
Tērrō trīvī atquē trītūm ;  
Urō ūssī ūstum stāt ;  
Gērō gēssī gēstum dāt ;  
Fērō tūlī atquē lātūm ;  
Sērō sēvī atquē sātūm ;  
Sērō sērūī sērtūm dāt,  
Sī cum vī nēctēndī stāt.*

§ 86. (k) Io.

*Fāciō fēcī atquē fāctūm ;  
Jāciō jēcī atquē jāctūm ;  
Dānt ā lāciō lēxī lēctūm ;  
Et ā spēcīō spēxī spēctūm ;  
Fōdīō fōdī fōssūmqūē ;  
Fūgīō fūgī fūgītūmqūē ;  
Cāpiō cēpī atquē cāptūm ;  
Rāpiō rāpūī ēt rāptūm ;*

*Cup-ivī -itum cūpiō ;*  
*Pēpērī pārtum pāriō ;*  
*Quātiō quāssum vindicāt,*  
*Sed in cōmpōstis cūssum dāt.*

*Vō inflectit vī ēt ūtum :*  
*Ut sōlvō sōlvī ēt sōlūtum ;*  
*Vōlvō vōlvī ēt vōlūtum.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

*Flūō tāmen flūxum flūxī ;*  
*Strūō strūctum atque strūxī ,*  
*Vivō vīxī victum dāt ;*  
*Stīnguō stīnxī stīnctum stāt.*

87. (1) *Uō ēt vō.*

*Uō fōrmāt ūī ūtum :*  
*Ut tribūō tribūī tribūtum.*

## § 88. IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS

*Verbōrum Quārtā Cōnjgātiō,*  
*Cuī iō is irē tērminātiō,*  
*Ivī in Pērfectō fīt,*  
*Sūpinō itum sūfficit.*

(*Aūd-iō, aūd-is, aūd-irē, aūd-ivī, aūd-itum.*)

## EXCEPTIONS.

*Sānciō sānxī sānctum fīt ;*  
*Nēc -civī -citum rēspūit.*  
*Vīnxī vīnctum vīnciō ;*  
*Fūlsī fūltum fūlcīō ;*  
*Sārciō fīt sārsī sārtum ;*  
*Fārciōquē fārsī fārtum ;*  
*Amīciō amīcūī dāt ;*  
*Sālīō sālūī (sālī) stāt ;*  
*At sīngūltiō sīngūltum ;*  
*Et sēpēliō sēpūltum ;*

*Vēniō vēnī vēntum fīt ;*  
*(Vēnēō vēnī sūscīpīt) ;*  
*Sēpiō sēpsi sēptum dāt ;*  
*A pēriō -pērūī -pērtum stāt ;*  
*Sed cōmpēriō cōmpērī ;*  
*Et rēpēriō rēppērī.*  
*Haūsi haūstum haūrīō ;*  
*Sēnsi sēnsūm sēntiō.*

## § 89. V. DEPONENT VERBS

*Dēpōnēntiā flēxēris*  
*Ex Activōrum rēgūlis ;*  
*Nam Prātērītum Pāssīvum*  
*Sūpinī ēst Dērīvātivum.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

(1) SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Rēōr rātūs ēfficit ;*  
*Misērēōr misērtūs fīt ;*  
*Fātēōr fāssūs ; flēctē sis*  
*Fēssūs in cōmpōsitis.*

(2) THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Lābōr lāpsūs sūscīpīt ;*  
*Utōr ūsūs ēfficit ;*  
*Lōquōr ēfficit lōcūtūs ;*  
*Sēquōr ēfficit sēcūtūs ;*

*Nūŭr nīsūs nīxūs stāt ;  
 Irātūs sum irāscōr dāt ;  
 Quērōr quēstūs ; grādīōr grēs-  
 sūs ;  
 Pātīōr pāssūs sum, ēt -pēssūs  
 In cōmpōstīs ; fīt ūlciscōr  
 Ultūs ; āptūs sum āpiscōr ;  
 Sēd ādēptūs ādīpiscōr ;  
 Prōficiscōr fīt prōfēctūs ;  
 Expērgiscōr expērrēctūs ;  
 Fīt oblītūs oblīviscōr ;  
 Et cōmmēntūs cōmmīniscōr ;*

*Sēd nānciscōr făcīt nāctūs .  
 Et pāciscōr făcīt pāctūs .  
 Mōrtūs sum făcīt mōriōr ;  
 Nāscōr nātūs ; ōrtūs ōriōr  
 Quēis Fūtūrā mōritūrūs,  
 Nāscitūrūs, ōritūrūs.*

## (3) FOURTH CONJUGATION

*Quārtā mēnsūs mētiōr ,  
 Fōrmāt ōrsūs ōrdīōr ;  
 At expēriōr expērtūs,  
 Et ōppēriōr ōppērtūs.*

## § 90.

## VI. INCEPTIVE VERBS.

(1) A Vērbīs dūctā Incēptīvā  
 Flēxēris ūt Primītivā :  
 Sic ēxārsī ēxārdēscō,  
 Obsōlēvī obsōlēscō ;  
 Trēmūī vīndicāt trēmīscō ;  
 Et rēscivī fīt rēsciscō.

(2) Fāctōrum ēx Nōmīnībūs  
 Pērfēctīs ūt tērmīnūs :  
 Evānēscō sic ēvānūī ;  
 Cōnsānēscō fīt cōnsānūī.  
 Plūrīmā Sūpīnis cārēnt,  
 Pērfēctā mūltīs nōn āppārēnt

## VII. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

*Impērsōnālīā flēxēris  
 Ex Pērsōnālīum rēgūlis ;  
 Sic pūdēt făcīt pūdūt ;  
 Pēnītēt pēnītūt ;  
 Opōrtēt sic ōpōrtūt.*

*Sēd mīsērēt mīsērtum ēst ;  
 Lībēt lībūt lībītum ēst ;  
 Tādēt dāt pērtāsum ēst  
 Vēl tādūt ; sic pīgēt fīt  
 Pīgītum ēst ēt pīgūt.*

## VIII VERBS WANTING PRETERPERFECTS AND SUPINES.

*In ōpēribūs Lātīnīs,  
 Mūltā Vērbā quā Sūpīnis,*

*Mūltā quā Pērfēctō cārēnt,  
 Lēctītāntībūs āppārēnt.*

## § 91. IV. OF THE CHANGES OF VERBS IN COMPOSITION.

(1) A In e cōvērtēris  
 Hōrum In Cōmpōsītīs :  
 Arcēō, cārpō, dāmnō, lāctō,  
 Fātiscōr, fālō, fārciō, jāctō,

*Grādīōr, pātīōr, pārtīōr, trāctō  
 Pārīō, patrō, ātquē cāndō,  
 Sacrō, spārgō. ātquē scāndō.*



- (2) *A* în *i* cōnvērtēris  
Hōrum în Cōmpōsītīs :  
*Agō, cādō, cānō, frāngō,*  
*Hābēō, lātō, fātēō, pāngō,*  
*Sālō, stātō, atquē tāngō,*  
*Cāpō, rāpō, sāpō, fācō,*  
*Jācō, lācō, plācō, tūcō.*  
Excēptā : *pērāgō, pērplācō ;*  
Et cum Advērbīs mīstum fācō.

- (3) *A* în *u* cōnvērtitō  
Ex *cālō, sālō, quītō.*

- (4) *E* în *i* cōnvērtēris  
Hōrum în Cōmpōsītīs :  
*Egō, tēnō, atquē emō,*  
*Spēcō, sēcō, atquē prēmō,*  
Addē *dēdī* atquē *lēgō,*  
Addē *stētī* atquē *rēgō.*  
Sunt excēptā : *rēlēgō,*  
*Pērlēgō, et prālēgō.*

*Nota.*

Sī, mūtātō Sīmplīcī,  
Cōmpōstī Prāsēns sūmsit *i,*

În Pērfēctō sūmēt *ē.*  
Sī lōngām vālēt tīngērē :  
Sic *dēfīcō* fīt *dēfēcī ;*  
Sic *prōjēcō* *prōjēcī .*  
Sic *cōnsplēcō* *cōnsperī ;*  
Sic *ā dirēgō* *dirēcī.*  
*Pērgō (pēr-rēgō) pērrēcī ;*  
*Sūrgō (sūs-rēgō) sūrrēcī ;*  
*Pōrrīgō (prō-rēgō) pōrrēcī.*

- (5) *Æ* în *i, ā* *quērō, cādo*  
Cōmpōstā mūtānt, et *ā lādū.*

- (6) *Au* în *ō* cōnvērtit *plaudō ;*  
*Au* în *ū* cōmmūtāt *claudō ;*  
*Au* în *ē* sōlūmmōdō  
Ex *aūdō* dāt *ōbēdō.*

- (7) Rēduplicātīō Sīmplīcīs  
Exībīt ē Cōmpōsītīs :  
Sic *ā pēllō, pēpūtī,*  
Fīt *impēllō, impūtī.*  
Sēd *ā discō, pōscō, dō*  
Cōmpōstā sērvānt, et *ā stō.*

## § 92. OF PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION

- (1) *Con-* fīt Prāpōsītīō *cum,*  
Quāndō stāt cōmpōsītum.
- (2) Tāntum în Cōmpōsītīs  
Stānt *ambī, rē, sē, sus,* et *dis.*
- (3) Prāpōsītīō tērmināntem  
Sāpē mūtāt cōnsōnāntem  
Sic, ūt fīāt sīmīlīs  
Cōnsōnāntī Sīmplīcīs :  
Ut *ad-fērō* fīt *affērō,*  
Ut *in-līnō* fīt *illīnō.*  
Ut *ob-pētō* fīt *oppētō.*

- (4) *N* în *m* cōnvērtītē  
Antē *b* vėl antē *p.*  
Ut *cōn-bībō* fīt *cōm-bībō,*  
Ut *in-plīcō* fīt *im-plīcō.*
- (5) Alīā alīā trānsfērunt,  
Quā rēlātū lōngā sūnt ;  
Unum hōc nōtāndum *dō,*  
*Ab-fērō* fīt *aūfērō,*  
*Ab-fūgō* fīt *aūfūgō.*

# SYNTAXIS MINOR,

IN TIRUNCULORUM GRATIAM CONCINNATA.

§ 93. A. I. ADJECTIVA, Participia, et Pronomina cum Substantivis suis genere, numero, et casu concordant: ut.

*Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes.*

1. Substantivum per ellipsin intelligitur: ut,  
*Laborem plerique fugiunt.* (supple *homines.*)
2. Neutra Adjectiva Substantivorum vice funguntur: ut,  
*Om-nium rerum mors est extremum.*

II. Verbum finitum concordat cum Nominativo numero et personâ: ut,

*Omnia vitia contra naturam pugnant.*

- 1 Aliquando Infinitivus, vel Locutio aliqua, pro Nominativo ponitur ut,  
*Non est mentiri meum.*  
*Incertum est quàm longa vita futura sit.*
2. Nominativus Pronominum rarò exprimitur: ut,  
*Nitimur in vetitum semper cupimusque negata.*  
Nisi distinctioni vel emphasi inserviat: ut,  
*Ego reges ejeci: vos tyrannos introducitis.*
3. Impersonalia Nominativum non habent expressum: ut,  
*Tædet ipsum vehementerque pœnitet.*
4. Personæ Verbi sæpè intelliguntur: ut,  
*Nihil bonum nisi quod honestum.* (supple *est.*)

5. Infinitivus interdum Nominativo postponitur : ut,

*Tum pius Æneas humeris abscindere vestem.*

6. Plerumque autem Infinitivus Accusativo postponitur, præcedente Verbo finito . ut,

*Tradunt Homerum cæcum fuisse.*

- III. Relativum cum Antecedente concordat genere, numero, et personâ ; casu autem construitur cum suâ sententiâ : ut,

*Ea est jucundissima amicitia, quam similitudo morum conjugavit.*

- B. 1. Substantivum, formâ sed non sensu singulare, sæpè habet Verbum, Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale : ut,

*Pars epulis onerant mensas.*

*Subeunt Tegeæa juventus Auxilio tardi.*

2. Duo vel plura Nomina singularia habent plerumque Verbum, Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale : ut,

*Veneno absumpti sunt Hannibal et Philopæmen.*

- a. Verbum plurale cum Nominativo dignioris personæ, Adjectivum verò vel Relativum cum Substantivo dignioris generis, ferè concordat.

- b. Prima persona dignior est quàm secunda, secunda quàm tertia : ut,

*Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valeamus.*

- c. In rebus animatis dignius est masculinum genus quàm femininum : ut,

*Pater mihi et nater mortui sunt.*

- d. In rebus inanimis Adjectivum vel Relativum sæpissimè erit in neutro genere : ut,

*Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt.*

8. Verba Copulativa, *sum, fio, videor, vocor*, cum similibus, sive finiti modi, sive infiniti, eundem habent utrinque casum : ut,

*Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur Iambus.*

*Regius agnoscitur per rata signa puer*

*Vobis licet esse beatis*

4. Verbum, inter duos Nominativos positum, interdum cum posteriore solo concordat: ut,

*Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.*

5. Relativum, inter duo Substantiva ejusdem rei collocatum, cum posteriore solo sæpè concordat: ut,

*Thebæ, quod Bæotiæ caput est.*

6. Substantivo, Pronomini, et interdum Sententiæ, apponi potest Substantivum ejusdem rei in eodem casu: ut,

*Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.*

*Nos consules desumus.*

*Cogitet oratorem institui, rem arduam.*

7. Cum duo Substantiva diversarum rerum concurrunt, alterum in Genitivo ponitur: ut,

*Recubans sub tegmine fagi.*

- § 94 C. I. Verba Transitive regunt Accusativum prioris Objecti: ut,

*Sperne voluptates.*

*Imprimis venerare Deum.*

1. Verba quædam Neutra et Passiva Accusativum admittunt suæ operationis: ut,

*Duram servit servitutem.*

*Claudius aleam lusit.*

2. Verba quædam, *rogandi* præsertim et *docendi*, duplicem habent Accusativum: ut,

*Pacem te poscimus omnes.*

*Quid nunc te, asine, litteras doceam?*

- a. Plurima ex his in Passivâ Voce retinent Accusativum rei: ut,

*Motus doceri gaudet Ionics.*

3. Accusativus Respectûs Græco more subjicitur tum Verbis Neutris et Passivis, tum Adjectivis: ut,

*Micat auribus et tremit artus.*

*Inficitur teneras tota rubore genas*

*Nudæ sunt brachia.*

## 4. Accusativum regunt hæ Præpositiones :

*Ante, apud, ad, adversus,  
Circum, circa, citra, cis,  
Contra, inter, erga, extra,  
Infra, intra, juxta, ob,  
Penes, pone, post, et præter,*

*Prope, propter, per, secundum,  
Supra, versus, ultra, trans ;  
His super, subter, addito,  
Et in, sub, si fit motio.*

## II. Vocativus, Appellati casus, regitur ab Interjectione vel expressâ, vel intellectâ : ut,

*Fili vel o fili.*

1. Interjectiones *en* et *ecce* regunt Accusativum atque Nominativum : *o*, *ah*, *heu*, *hem*, *proh*, Accusativum, Nominativum, et Vocativum : ut,

*En miserum hominem !  
Ecce nova turba atque rixa !  
Heu miserande puer !  
Heu vanitas humana !  
Proh Deum atque hominum fidem  
Proh sancte Juppiter !*

2. Dativum regunt *hei* et *væ* : ut,

*Hei misero mihi !  
Væ tibi, cauidice !*

## III. Omnia ferè Adjectiva et Verba, item Adverbia et Substantiva, regunt Dativum remotioris Objecti, cujus causâ est aut fit aliquid : ut,

*Non solum nobis divites esse volumus.  
Mihi istic nec seritur nec metitur.  
Numa virgines Vestæ legit.  
Urbi pater est urbique maritus.*

a. Ita *sum* possessivè significans Dativum possidentis habet : ut,

*Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.*

## i. Dativum regunt plurima Adjectiva, Adverbia, et Verba, interdum etiam Substantiva, a quibus indicatur

*Commodum, communicatio,  
Comparatio, consecratio,  
Congruentia, consuetudo,  
Auxilium et aptitudo,  
Benignitas, vicinitas,  
Jucunditas, affinitas,*

*Traditio, venia, demonstratio,  
Promissio, fides, et narratio,  
Obsequium, imperium,  
Et quicquid his contrarium ;  
Cum nubo, vaco : cetera  
Sub pirâ stabunt regulâ.*

ut, *Patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris.  
 Est finitimus oratori poeta.  
 Turba gravis paci placidæque inimica quieti.  
 Congruenter naturæ vivendum est.  
 Cuituræ patientem commodat aurem.  
 Quod alii donat sibi detrahit.  
 Hoc mihi confirmavit et persuasit.  
 Nobis spondet fortuna salutem.  
 Philosophia medetur animis.  
 Tibi favemus.  
 Irascor tibi.  
 Victrix causa deis placuit, sed victa Caton.  
 Parce pio generi.  
 Anguis Sullæ apparuit immolanti.  
 O formose puer, nimium ne crede colora.  
 Imperat aut servit collectu pecunia cuique.  
 Placitone etiam pugnabis amori?  
 Venus nupsit Vulcano.  
 Philosophiæ semper vaco.  
 Nulla fides regni sociis.*

- a. *Communis, similiis, proprius, par, atque alienus,*  
*Pluraque, nunc voluere Dativum, nunc Genitivum : ut,*

*Media simillima veris sunt.  
 Deos esse similes tui putas?  
 Propria est nobis mentis agitatio.  
 Proprium est oratoris ornatè dicere.*

- b. *Delecto atque juvo, jubeo, rego, lædo, guberno, Accusativo contra*  
*regulam junguntur : ut,*

*Multos castra juvant.  
 Tu regere imperio populos, Romane, memento.*

- c. *Tempero et moderor nunc Dativum nunc Accusativum habent : ut*  
*Hic moderatur equos qui non moderabitur iræ.*

2. Dativum fermè regunt Verba composita cum Adverbiis *bene, satis,*  
*male ; et cum Præpositionibus, præsertim his : —*

<i>Ad, ante, ab,</i>		<i>Sub, super, ob,</i>
<i>In, inter, de,</i>		<i>Con, post, et præ.</i>

ut, *Ceteris satisfacio semper ; mihi nunquam.  
 Sicilia quondam Italiæ adhæsit.  
 Gigantes bellum diis intulerunt.  
 Anatum ova gallinis sæpè supponimus.*

- a. *Multa ex his variant constructionem : ut,*  
*Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt.  
 In amore hæc insunt vitia.*

3. Dativus Agentis sequitur Verbalia in *bilis*, et Gerundivum in *du*; interdum Participia perfecta; rarò Verba Passiva: ut,

*Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit.*  
*Restat Chremes qui mihi exorandus est.*  
*Magnus civis obit et formidatus Othoni.*  
*Barbarus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli.*

4. Verba et Participia Passiva plerumque habent Ablativum Agentis cum Præpositione *a* vel *ab*: ut,

*Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.*  
*Mors Crassi est a multis defleta.*

4. Dativus Propositi additur Verbo *sum* et multis aliis, vel pro Nominativo vel pro Accusativo: ut,

*Exemplo est magni formica laboris.*  
*Nucleum amisi; reliquit pignori putamina*

5. Sæpè duplex admittitur Dativus: ut.

*Exitio est avidum mare nautis.*

- IV. Genitivus Possessoris sequitur omnia ferè Substantiva, necnon Verba *sum*, *facio*, *fi*, per ellipsin Substantivi: ut,

*Singulorum opes sunt divitiæ civitatis.*  
*Omnia, quæ mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt.*  
*Scipio Hispaniam Romanæ ditionis fecit.*

1. *Est* Impersonale præponitur Genitivo, si intelligitur

*Indoles, indicium, | Munus aut officium.*

ut, *Cujusvis hominis est errare.*  
*Improbi hominis est mendacio fallere.*  
*Est adolescentis majores natu vereri.*

2. Fit etiam ellipsis aliorum Nominum ante Genitivum: ut,

*Hectoris Andromache.* (supple *uxor.*)  
*Deiphobe Glauci.* (supple *filia.*)  
*Ventum erat ad Vestæ.* (supple *templum.*)  
*Hujus video Byrrhiam.* (supple *servum.*)

3. Genitivus Personalis in Possessivo Pronomine latens recipit alterum Genitivum sibi concordantem: ut,

*Respublica meâ unius operâ salva erat.*  
*Nostros vidisti flentis ocellos.*

4. Genitivus Qualitatis sequitur Substantiva: ut,

*Ingenui vultûs puer ingenuique pudoris.*

Qualitas etiam in Ablativo ponitur: ut,

*Senex promissâ barbâ, horrenti capillâ.*

5. **Vocabula Partitiva, Numeralia, Comparativa, et Superlativa regunt Genitivum, quocum genere concordant: ut,**

*Multæ harum arborum meâ ipsius manu sunt satæ.  
 Utroque vestrûm delector  
 Sequimur te, sancte deorum.  
 Sulla centum viginti suorum amisit.  
 Major Neronum.  
 Gallorum fortissimi.  
 Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.  
 Minimè omnium.*

6. **Hi Genitivi, gentium, terrarum, alique, sequuntur Adverbia huc, ad, què, ubi, similia: ut,**

*Migrandum aliquò terrarum arbitror.*

7. **Quantitatem significantia Adverbia et Substantiva, item Neutra Adjectiva ac Pronomina, Genitivum regunt: ut,**

*Satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum.  
 Justitia nihil expetit præmii.  
 Aliquid pristini roboris conservat.  
 Quantum nummorum, tantum fidei.*

8. **Genitivum regunt Verbalia in *ax*, Participia quædam adjectivè posita, et Adjectiva significantia**

*Notitiam, curam, et cupiditatem,  
 Memoriam, metum, crimen, po-  
 testatem,*

*Et quæ contrario sensu stant  
 Poetæ multa alia dant:*

*ut, Tempus edax rerum.  
 Animus alieni appetens, sui profusus.  
 Nescia mens hominum est fati.  
 Omnes immemorem beneficii oderunt.  
 Fraternal sanguinis insons.  
 Ira est impotens sui.  
 O seri studiorum.*

9. **Verba quædam accusandi, absolvendi, damnandi, monendi, regunt Genitivum rei: ut,**

*Condemnamus haruspices stultitiæ.  
 Res adversæ admonent nos religionum.*

10. **Meminî, recordor, reminiscor, obliviscor, nunc Genitivum regunt, nunc Accusativum: ut,**

*Jubet mortis te meminisse Deus.  
 Dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos.*

11. **Miseror, miseresco, Genitivo junguntur: ut,**

*Nil nostri miserere*



- V. Adjectiva, Verba, et aliquando Substantiva, admittunt Ablativum significantem causam, vel instrumentum, vel modum, vel materiam, vel respectum, vel limitationem qualemcunque: ut,

*Cæptis immanibus effera Dido.  
 Oderunt peccare mali formidine pænæ.  
 Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis.  
 Injuria fit duobus modis, vi aut fraude.  
 Animo constamus et corpore.  
 Ennius ingenio maximus, arte rudis.  
 Mardonius natione Medus.  
 Non grandis natu est, sed tamen jam ætate proventus.*

1. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor*, Ablativum regunt; *potior*, Ablativum vel Genitivum: ut,

*Fungar vice cotis.  
 Cùm victoriâ posset uti, frui maluit.  
 Numidæ ferinâ carne vescebantur.  
 Auro vi potitur.  
 Romani signorum potiti sunt.*

2. Adjectiva et Verba, quæ ad copiam egestatemve pertinent, Ablativum regunt; multa etiam Genitivum: ut,

*Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus.  
 Numquam animus motu vacuus est.  
 Turpe est diffluere luxuriâ.  
 Vacare culpâ maximum est solatium.  
 Dives opum, dives pictai vestis et auri.  
 Mancipiis locuples eget æris Cappadocum rex.  
 Hæ res vitæ me saturant.*

3. *Opus et usus* Ablativum regunt: ut,

*Ubi res adsunt, quid opus est verbis?  
 Usus est filio viginti minis.*

4. Adjectiva, *dignus, indignus, præditus, fretus, contentus*, item Verbum *dignor*, Ablativum regunt: ut,

*Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori.  
 Lentulus est singulari modestiâ præditus.  
 Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.*

5. Ablativus Pretii sequitur Verba et Adjectiva significantia *emptionem, venditionem, vel æstimationem*: ut,

*Ego spem pretio non emo.  
 Plurimus viro vñit honos.  
 Multorum sanguine victoria stetit.  
 Quod non opus est, aere carum est.*

- a. Per Ellipsin usurpantur, omissâ voce *pretio*, Ablativi, *ut*, *parvo minimo, nimio, magno, plurimo, duplo, et dimidio*; *ut*,  
*Parvo fames constat, magno fastidium.*

- b. Æstimatio rei plerumque Genitivum habet, præsertim ellipticos illos, *magni, parvi, minimi, pluris, atque plurimi*: *ut*,  
*Sapiens dolorem nihili facit.*  
*Voluptatem virtus minimi facit.*  
*Pluris est oculatus testis unus quàm auriti decem.*

- c. Tam Pretium quàm Æstimationem significant, *pluris, minoris, tanti, quanti, maximi*: *ut*,  
*Emit hortos tanti quanti Pythius voluit.*

6. Ablativus Differentiæ jungitur Adjectivis, Adverbiis, et Verbis comparativæ et superlativæ significationis: *ut*,  
*Sol multis partibus major est quàm luna.*  
*A Cynicis tunicâ distantia dogmata.*

- a. In primis Ablativi elliptici:

*Altero, hoc, eo, quo,*  
*Nihilo et nimio,*

*Dimidio, duplo, quanto, tanto,*  
*Paullo, multo, aliquanto:*

*ut, Eo gravior est dolor, quo culpa major.*  
*Tanto pessimus omnium poeta,*  
*Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus.*

7. Ablativus Comparationis regitur a Comparativis, sive Adjectivis, sive Adverbiis: *ut*,  
*Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.*  
*Puto mortem dedecore leviozem.*

- a. Quàm eleganter omittitur post *plus, amplius, minus*: *ut*.  
*Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi.*

8. Ablativum regunt hæ Præpositiones:

*A, ab, absque, coram, de,*  
*Palam, clam, cum, ex, et e,*  
*Sine, tenus, pro, et præ:*

*His subter, super, addito.*  
*Et in, sub, si fit statio.*

- a. Præpositio in Compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit, quem et extra Compositionem regebat: *ut*

*Detrudunt naves scopulo.*  
*Te nunc alloquor, Africane.*

- b. Verba *discedendi, separandi, arcendi, removendi, et similia*, omissâ quoque Præpositione, regunt Ablativum: *ut*,

*Cedes coemptis saltibus et doma.*  
*Populus Atheniensis Phocionem patriâ pepulit.*

- c. Huc refer Ablativum post Verba et Participia Originis, qualia sunt, *natus, prognatus, satus, creatus, ortus* : ut,  
*Atreus Tantalo prognatus, Pelope natus.*  
*Sate sanguine divûm.*
- d. *Tenus* vel Genitivum pluralem vel Ablativum regit, et post suum Casum ponitur : ut,  
*Crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent.*  
*Antiochus Tauro tenus regnare jussus est.*
- e. Cum ita subjungitur casibus Pronominum Personalium, et plerumque Relativi, ut ex duobus vocibus una fiat : ut, *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum vel quocum, quibuscum.*
9. Substantivum et Participium conjunctim ponuntur in Ablativo quem Absolutum vocant : ut,  
*Regibus exactis consules creati sunt.*  
*Cæsare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem.*  
*Pereunte obsequio imperium etiam intercidit*
- a. Absolutè etiam ponitur Substantivum cum Substantivo vel Adjectivo, ubi intelligitur Participium *existendi* : ut,  
*Nil desperandum est, Teucro duce et auspice Teucro.*  
*Jamque cinis, vivis fratribus, Hector erat.*

- § 95. D I. 1. Definitio Temporis in Ablativo ponitur, si rogatur *quando* vel *intra quantum tempus* : ut,  
*Hieme omnia bella conquiescunt.*  
*Quicquid est, biduo sciemus.*
2. In definiendo Tempore multus est Præpositionum usus : ut,  
*Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit.*  
*De die.* (id est, ante finem diei.)  
*De nocte.* (id est, ante finem noctis.)  
*De multâ nocte.* (id est, multo ante finem noctis.)  
*Sub vesperum.* (id est, appropinquante vespero.)  
*Diem ex die expecto.*
3. *Quanto tempore abhinc, antè vel pòst*, interdum per Ablativum, interdum per Accusativum dicitur : ut,  
*Comitia jam abhinc triginta diebus erant habita.*  
*Hoc factum est fermè abhinc biennium.*
4. Duratio temporis, ubi rogatur *quamdiu*, frequentius in Accusativo ponitur, rarius in Ablativo : ut,  
*Pericles quadraginta annos præfuit Atheniv.*  
*Imperium Assyrii mille trecentis annis tenueræ.*

- II. 1. Locus, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, vel sine Præpositione, vel longè frequentius cum Præpositione *in*: ut,  
*Ibam fortè Viâ Sacrà.*  
*In Lemno uxorem ducit.*

2. Oppidi nomen, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, modò sit vel tertiæ Declinationis, vel pluralis Numeri: ut,  
*Alexander Babylone mortuus est.*  
*Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis.*  
*Thebis nutritus an Argis.*

- 3 Sed in Genitivo ponitur, si et Declinationis est primæ vel secundæ et singularis Numeri: ut,  
*Quid Romæ faciam? mentiri nescio.*  
*Is habitat Mileti.*

4. Loci nomen a Præpositione ferè regitur post Verbum motûs: ut,  
*Profectus est in Galliam.*  
*Ab Europâ petis Asiam.*

5. Oppidi nomen, ad quod itur, in Accusativo sine Præpositione ferè ponitur: ut,  
*Regulus Carthaginem rediit.*

6. Oppidi nomen, ex quo itur, in Ablativo sine Præpositione ferè ponitur: ut,  
*Demaratus fugit Corintho.*

- 7 Sed et Oppida sæpè capiunt, et alia Nomina omittunt Præpositionem post Verbum motûs: ut,  
*A Brundisio nulla fama venerat.*  
*Pars Scythiam et rapidum Cretæ veniemus Oaxen.*

- 8 *Humus, domus, et rus* oppidorum constructionem imitantur: ut,  
*Cadmus spargit humi, mortalia semina, dentes.*  
*Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.*  
*Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite capellæ.*  
*Video rure redeuntem senem.*

- III. 1. Spatium Distantiæ frequentius in Accusativo, interdum in Ablativo ponitur: ut,

*Aheram ab Amano iter unius diei.*  
*Æsculapii templum quinque millibus passuum ab Epidauræ distat.*

2. Spatium Progressionis in Accusativo ponitur: ut,  
*Millia tum pransi tria repimus.*

3. *Spatium Dimensionis frequentissimè in Accusativo, interdum Ablativo, interdum in Genitivo ponitur: ut,*

*Erant muri Babylonis ducentos pedes alti.  
Longum sesquipede, latum pede.  
Areas latus pedum denum facito.*

---

- § 96. E. I. 1. *Libet, licet, liquet, et pleraque Impersonalia, regunt Dativum: ut,*

*Ne libeat tibi quod non licet.  
Sævis inter se convenit ursis.*

2. *Piget, pudet, pœnitet, tædet atque miseret, regunt Accusativum Personæ cum Genitivo Rei, vel cum Infinitivo: ut,*

*Miseret te aliorum: tui te nec miseret, nec pudet.  
Me civitatis morum piget tædetque.  
Eos partim scelerum, partim ineptiarum pœnitet.  
Quem pœnitet peccasse, pœnè est innocens.*

3. *Delectat, juvat, decet, dedecet, oportet, Accusativum capiunt: ut,*

*Me juvat in primâ coluisse Heliconâ juventâ.  
Oratorem irasci minimè decet.  
Legem brevem esse oportet.*

4. *Pertinet, attinet, Præpositionem ad cum Accusativo sumunt: ut,*

*Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari.  
Profundat, perdat, pereat, nihil ad me attinet.*

5. *Interest et rēfert Genitivum admittunt: ut,*

*Interest omnium rectè facere.  
Rēfert compositionis, quæ quibus anteponas.*

6. *Cum his Verbis junguntur, loco Pronominum Personalium, Ablativi feminini, meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, subaudita voce re: ut,*

*Et tuâ et meâ interest te valere.  
Quid rēfert meâ, cui serviam?*

7. *Adduntur his Verbis Genitivi Æstimationis, tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris: ut,*

*Utriusque nostrum magni interest, ut te videam.  
Hoc non pluris rēfert quàm si imbrem in cribrum geras.*

8. *Verba Neutra in Passivâ Voce impersonaliter usurpantur pro quibuslibet personis: ut,*

*Ab omnibus reclamatum est. (scil. omnes reclamârunt.)  
Quid agitur? statuitur (scil. struitur a nobis, sive stamus.*

---

II. 1. Activa sententia ferè omnis ita in Passivam converti potest, ut Nominativus Activæ sententiæ fiat in Passivâ Ablativus Agentis.

(A.) Si Activæ sententiæ Verbum Accusativum habet propioris Objecti, Verbum in Passivâ personale erit, Accusativo Activæ in Nominativum Passivæ transeunte : ut

ACT. *Egregiè consul rem gessit.*

PASS. *Egregiè ab consule res gesta est.*

(B.) Sin minus, Verbum Passivæ impersonale erit, et vei sine casu stabit, vel eundem casum reget, quem in Activâ regebat : ut,

ACT. *Hostes constanter pugnabant.*

PASS. *Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.*

ACT. *Medicinæ nos indigemus.*

PASS. *Medicinæ a nobis indiget.*

2. Ubi nihil ambigui esse potest, supprimitur Ablativus Agentis post Impersonalia Passiva : ut,

*Itur in antiquam silvam.*

3. Hinc apparet, eosdem casus a Passivis Verbis regi, atque ab Activis præterquàm unum Accusativum propioris Objecti.

4. *Vapulo, veneo, exulo, liceo, fio*, cum aliis quibusdam, vi Passivâ construuntur : ut,

*Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit.*

*Malo a cive spoliari, quàm ab hoste vñire.*

*Torqueor, infesto ne vir ab hoste cadat.*

§ 97 F. I. Infinitivus cum Gerundiis et Supinis Substantivum Verbi efficit.

1. Infinitivus multis Verbis ac Participiis adjungitur et poeticè Adjectivis : ut,

*Invidere non cadit in sapientem.*

*Videor pios errare per lucos.*

*Solent diu cogitare qui magna volunt gerere.*

*Et cantare pares et respondere parati.*

2. Pro Accusativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *dem* post Præpositiones : ut,

*Breve tempus satis est longum ad bene vivendum.*

*Mores puerorum se inter videndum detegunt.*

3. Pro Genitivo ponitur Gerundium in *di* post Adjectiva et Substantiva: ut

*Cupidus sum satisfaciendi reipublicæ.  
Thucydides omnes dicendi artificio vincit.*

4. Pro Dativo ponitur Gerundium in *do* post Adjectiva et Verba nonnulla: ut,

*Crassus disserendo par esse non potuit.*

5. Pro Ablativo ponitur Gerundium in *do* Causam, Instrumentum, aut Modum significans, vel cum Præpositionibus *ab, de, ex, in, cum*: ut,

*Nihil agendo homines male facere discut.  
Jovem a juvando nominamus.*

6. Gerundia Activè significant: si verò Transitive sunt, eorum constructio Passivè repræsentari potest, imò frequentius repræsentatur, per Participium in *du*, quod inde Gerundivi nomen accipit.

7. Gerundiva constructio ejusmodi est, ut Substantivum in Gerundii casum trahatur, cum quo concordet Gerundivum: ut,

*E terrâ ignem elicimus ad colendos agros.  
Occasio videbatur rerum novandarum.*

8. Ad Necessitatem Passivè significandam Gerundivum in Neutro Genere impersonaliter adhibetur: ut,

*Civium bonis est a vobis consulendum.  
Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.*

- II. 1. Supinum in *um* postponitur, ut Accusativus, Verbis motum significantibus: ut,

*Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.  
Scitatum oracula Phæbi mittimus.*

2. Supinum in *u* postponitur, ut Ablativus Respectûs, tum multis Adjectivis, tum Substantivis *fas, nefas, opus*: ut,

*Nil dictu fœdum visuque hæc limina tangat,  
Intra quæ puer est.  
Ecce (nefas visu) serpens altaribus exit.*

- III. Participia, Gerundia, et Supinum in *um*, regunt casus suorum Verborum: ut,

*Ausi omnes immane nefas, ausoque potiti.*

- § 98. G. 1. Neutra Adjectiva utriusque Numeri ponuntur interdum Adverbialiter, præsertim apud poetas: ut,

*Serviet æternum qui parvo nesciet uti.  
Asper, acerba tuens, retro redit.*

2. Conjunctiones Sociativæ et Dissociativæ similes Casus, Modos, et Tempora connectunt : ut,

*Miratur portas strepitumque et strata viarum.  
Virtus nec eripi nec surripi potest.*

Nisi alia constructionis ratio intercedat.

- H. 1 *Nē*, prohibitiva Conjectio, Imperativo vel Subjunctivo Modo jungitur : ut,

*Ne qua meis esto dictis mora.  
Ne conferas culpam in me.*

2. Subjunctivum exigunt hæ Conjunctiones :

<i>Ut</i> (that)	<i>Dum</i>	} (provided that)
<i>Nē</i> (lest, that — not)	<i>Modo</i>	
<i>Quo</i> (in order that)	<i>Dummodo</i>	
<i>Quominus</i> (but that)	<i>Tanquam</i>	} (as if)
<i>Quin</i> (but that)	<i>Velut</i>	
<i>Quum</i> (since)	<i>Ceu</i>	
<i>Licet</i>	<i>Quasi</i>	} (I wish that)
<i>Quamvis</i> } (although)	<i>Utinam</i>	
<i>Ut</i>	<i>O si</i>	

3. Subjunctivum vel Indicativum pro re natâ capiunt hæ Conjunctiones :

<i>Quum</i> } (when)	<i>Ante — quam</i> } (before that)
<i>Ubi</i> }	<i>Prius — quam</i> }
<i>Ut</i> }	<i>Post — quam</i> (after that)
<i>Dum</i> }	<i>Si</i> (if)
<i>Donec</i> } (until)	<i>Nisi</i> (unless)
<i>Quoad</i> }	<i>Etsi</i>
<i>Quoties</i> (as often as)	<i>Etiam si</i> } (although)
<i>Simul ac</i> (as soon as)	<i>Tametsi</i> }

4. Indicativum plerumque capiunt hæ Conjunctiones, nisi ratio loci Subjunctivum postulet :

<i>Quod</i> (that, because)	<i>Ut</i> (from the time when)
<i>Quia</i> (because)	<i>Dum</i> }
<i>Quoniam</i> (since)	<i>Donec</i> } (whilst, as long as)
<i>Quando</i> (when, since)	<i>Quoad</i> }
<i>Siquidem</i> (inasmuch as)	<i>Quanquam</i> (although)

5. *Quamvis* cum Indicativo reperitur apud historicos et poetas : ut,  
*Quamvis ingenio non valet, arte valet.*

6. Relativum, *qui, quæ, quod*, Subjunctivum regit, ubi significat *quum*, *quamvis*, *ut*, vel *talis ut* : ut,

*Miseret tui me, qui hunc facias inimicum tibi.  
Literas misi quibus et placarem eum et monerem.  
Est qui vinci possit.  
Quis est qui non oderit protervam pueritiam ?*



- 7 Pronominibus et Particulis interrogandi, subordinatè positis, Subjunctivus additur . ut,

*Ipse quis sit, utrum sit, an non sit, id quoque nescit.*

Talia sunt :

*Quis, quantus, qualis, qui, quot, quotus, unde, ubi, quando,  
Quàm, quamobrem, quare, cur, quomodo, nunc, nē, ut, an, utrum.*

3. Relativum vel Conjunctio, quum subordinatur Infinitivo vel Subjunctivo, Subjunctivum regit : ut,

*Cæsar ad me scripsit, gratissimum sibi esse quod quieverim.  
Molior ut Cæsar mihi concedat ut absim, quum aliquid in senatu  
contra Cnæum agatur.*

9. Conjunctio intelligitur aliquando : ut,

*Philosophiæ servias oportet. (supple ut.)  
Quæram justum sit necne poema. (supple utrum )  
Partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes. (supple si.)  
Naturam expellas furcâ, tamen usque recurret. (supple etsi.)*

# FIRST

## RULES OF CONSTRUING AND PARSING:

### FOR THE USE OF BEGINNERS.

---

§ 99. A. As every independent Sentence *must* have

I. A Verb in a Proper Mood, expressed or understood ;

II. A Subject in the Nominative Case, expressed or understood ; with which the Verb agrees (see § 101.):

So observe more particularly :

(a) A Substantive *may* have any of these Adjuncts :

- (1) Adjectives agreeing with it ;
- (2) Substantives in apposition to it ;
- (3) A Genitive governed by it ;
- (4) A Preposition and Case depending on it.

(b) An Adjective *may* have any of these Adjuncts :

- (1) An Adverb qualifying it ;
- (2) Cases governed by it ;
- (3) A Preposition and Case depending on it.

(c) A Verb *may* have any of these Adjuncts :

- (1) An Adverb qualifying it ;
- (2) Cases governed by it ;
- (3) Prepositions (with their Cases) depending on it ;
- (4) An Infinitive depending on it.

B. Therefore, in order to construe a simple Sentence :

I. Find its Verb, which must be in a Proper Mood.

*Obs.* If no such Verb appear, *est* or *sunt* is probably understood.

II. Find its Subject, which will be a Nominative Case of the same Number and Person as the Verb, answering the question *who* or *what* ?

*Obs.* 1. If no such Nominative appear, the Pronoun agreeing with the Verb must generally be understood as the Subject.

*Obs.* 2. If an Adjective appear in the Nominative, but no Substantive, a Substantive with which it agrees is generally supplied in English: usually *man* or *men*, if the Adjective is Masculine; *thing* or *things*, if it is Neuter.

III. Find the Adjuncts of the Subject, if any.

IV. Find the Adjuncts of the Verb, seeing first if it has an Adverb.

*Obs.* In order to find its other Adjuncts, see whether the Verb is Copulative or not. If Copulative, the chief Adjunct will be a Predicate Substantive or Adjective. If not Copulative, the Adjuncts, if any, will be some of those above-mentioned (*c*). See § 101.

V. Having done this, construe into English first the Subject with its agreeing Adjective, and their Adjuncts; then the Verb with its Adverb; then its other Adjuncts.

*Note.* Generally a Simple Sentence contains only one Verb of a Proper Mood: a Compound Sentence contains two or more such Verbs. But, when a Verb is followed by an Accusative and Infinitive, the Sentence is compound.

*Obs.* A Vocative Case, with its Adjuncts, may be construed at the beginning of the Sentence, or in some other convenient place.

§ 100. Observe the following Rules for Parsing the words of a Sentence, whether in writing or by mouth. State what Part of Speech any word is, and mention, if

(1) A Substantive, { Its Case—Number—Nom. Sing.—Genitive Termination—Declension—Gender  
—Word it agrees with or is governed by.

Give the Rule for its Gender, if desired, from the *Accidence*: and the Rule for its agreement or government, from the *Syntax*.

Decline it, if desired, through both Numbers.

*Obs.* It is useful, with a Substantive, to decline the Adjective Pronoun *meus*, in order to show the Gender. Thus, when required to decline *ager*, a *field*, say —

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Ager meus, <i>my field</i>	Agri mei, <i>my fields</i>
Gen.	Agri mei, <i>of my field</i>	Agrorum meorum, <i>of my fields</i>
Dat.	Agro meo, <i>to my field</i>	Agris meis, <i>to my fields</i>
Acc.	Agrum meum, <i>my field</i>	Agros meos, <i>my fields</i>
Voc.	Ager mi, <i>O my field</i>	Agri mei, <i>O my fields</i>
Abl.	Agro meo, <i>by my field</i>	Agris meis, <i>by my fields</i>

And in like manner—

Mensa mea, *my table.* Opus meum, *my work, &c. &c.*

- (2) An Adjective, { Its Case—Gender—Number—Nom.  
Sing.—What declined like?—What it  
agrees with?

Decline it, if required.

- (3) *a.* A Verb in a { Its Person—Tense—Mood—Voice—  
Verb it comes from—Kind of Verb—  
Proper Mood { Conjugation—What Nom. it agrees  
with?

Conjugate it, if required, according to § 44.

Give the Rule, if required, for its Perfect and Supine; and the Syntax Rule for its construction.

- b.* An Infinitive { Tense—Voice—Verb it comes from—  
Kind of Verb—Conjugation—What go-  
verned by?

- c.* Gerund or { Verb it comes from, &c., &c.  
Supine, }

Conjugate and give Rules for *b.* and *c.* as for *a.*

- d.* Participle, { Case—Gender—Number—Nom. Sing.  
—Tense—Voice—Verb it comes from  
—Kind of Verb—Conjugation—What  
it agrees with?

Decline. Conjugate, and give Rules, as above, (2) (3) *a.*

- (4) Pronoun Re- { What Antecedent?—How it agrees  
lative, { with its Antecedent?—What Case?—  
Why?

*Obs.* Personal Pronouns follow the rules of Substantives Possessive those of Adjectives: Demonstrative Pronouns may be used either as Substantives or Adjectives.

- (5) Adverb, What word it qualifies?

## (6) Preposition, What word it governs?

*Note.* When the learner is somewhat advanced, he must also state, in parsing, the derivation and composition of words, the government of Moods, &c. &c.

**EXAMPLE.**—It is required to construe and parse the words:  
*Ad firmandum corpus multum conducit tempestiva animi remissio, quæ negligi non potest impune.*

## 1. These words contain two connected simple sentences. or one compound sentence.

(1) Verb of first sentence is *conducit* (Third Pers. Sing.)

(2) Subject Nom. of first sentence is *remissio*.

(3) Adjuncts to the Subject are,

- |                               |                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>a.</i> Agreeing Adjective, | <i>tempestiva.</i> |
| <i>b.</i> Genitive Case,      | <i>animi.</i>      |

(4) Adjuncts to the Verb are,

- |                                  |                            |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>a.</i> Adverb,                | <i>multum.</i>             |
| <i>b.</i> Preposition with Case, | <i>ad firmandum corpus</i> |

(1) Verb of second sentence is *potest*.

(2) Subject Nomin. of second sentence is *quæ*.

(3) Adjuncts to the Subject *quæ*, *none*.

(4) Adjuncts to the verb are,

- |                       |                 |
|-----------------------|-----------------|
| <i>a.</i> Adverb,     | <i>non.</i>     |
| <i>b.</i> Infinitive, | <i>negligi.</i> |
| <i>c.</i> Adverb,     | <i>impune.</i>  |

## 2. Construe the words in this order :

<i>Tempestiva remissio</i>		<i>animi,</i>		<i>quæ</i>		<i>non potest</i>		<i>negligi</i>
<i>Seasonable relaxation</i>		<i>of-mind,</i>		<i>which</i>		<i>can-not</i>		<i>be-omitted</i>
<i>impune,</i>		<i>conducit multum</i>		<i>ad firmandum corpus.</i>				
<i>with-impunity,</i>		<i>conduces much</i>		<i>to strengthening the-body</i>				

## 3. Parse thus, taking the words in order of construing :

(1.) *Tempestiva.* Adjective. Nom. Fem. Sing. from *tempestivus* like *bonus*. Agrees with *remissio* by Rule § 93. A. I.

(2.) *Remissio.* Substantive. Nom. Sing. Third Decl. Fem. (onis). Subject of the Verb *conducit*. Rule for its Gender § 73. (a) (2).

- (3.) *Animi*. Substantive. Gen. Sing. from *animus* (i) *mind*. Second Decl. Masc. Governed by *remissio* by Rule § 93. B. 7. Rule for Gender, § 72.
- (4.) *Quæ*. Relative Pronoun. Agrees with Antecedent *remissio*, being Fem. Sing. Third Pers. Rule, § 93. III. Nominative to the Verb *potest*.
- (5.) *Non*. Adverb. Qualifies the Verb *potest*.
- (6.) *Potest*. Verb. Third Pers. Pres. Indic. Act. from the Irregular Neuter Verb *possum* (*potes*, &c.), § 61. Agrees with its Nom. *quæ* by Rule § 93. II.
- (7.) *Negligi*. Verb. Pres. Infin. Pass. from the Transitive Verb *negligo* (*is*), *I-neglect*. Third Conj. Is governed by the Verb *potest* by Rule § 97. F. I. 1. Conjugate *negligo*, *negligis*, *neglexi*, &c. Rule for Preterperfect and Supine, § 91. 4. N. § 82. (b).
- (8.) *Impune*. Adverb. Qualifies the Verb *negligi* (or *potest*).
- (9.) *Conducit*. Verb. Third Pers. Pres. Indic. Act. from the Neuter Verb *conduco* (*is*), *I-conduce*. Third Conj. Agrees with its Nominative Case *remissio* by Rule § 93. II. Conjugate *conduco*, *conducis*, *conduxi*, &c. Rule for Preterperfect and Supine, § 82. (b).
- (10.) *Multum*. Adverb. Qualifies the Verb *conducit*.
- (11.) *Ad*. Preposition. Governs the Accus. Case *corpus*.
- (12.) *Firmandum*. Participle. Acc. Neut. Sing. from *firmandus*, Part. Gerundive Pass. from the Transitive Verb *firmo* (*as*); *I-strengthen*; First Conj. Agrees with *corpus* by Rule § 97. I. 7.
- (13.) *Corpus*. Substantive. Acc. Sing. from *corpus* (*oris*). Third Decl. Neut. Governed by *ad*, by Rule § 94. V. 8. Rule for Gender, § 75. (c).

*Note.* Each rule, when required, must be repeated at full: each Substantive, when required, be declined with *meus*; and each Verb be conjugated according to § 44.

# SYNTAXIS, SIVE SENTENTIARUM CONSTRUCTIO.

## PARS I. DE SIMPLICI SENTENTIA.

### § 101. PREFATORY EXCURSION.

SYNTAX teaches the correct arrangement of words in sentences. The simplest sentence is the Proposition or Enuntiation of a single thought: as, *homo est mortalis*, man is mortal. The simplest form of Sentence has three members:

1. *Subjectum*, the Subject; that is, the person, thing, or notion concerning which something is predicated, or declared.
2. *Prædicatum*, the Predicate; that which is predicated (*prædicatur*), or declared, concerning the Subject.
3. *Copula*, or the Link, which shows the connection between the Subject and its Predicate, and so constructs the sentence.

(1) The Subject must be a Substantive, or that which possesses the force of a Substantive: as *homo*, man; *ego*, I; *Gallus*, a Gaul; *errare*, to err; *tu*, thou.

(2) The Predicate, when distinct from the Copula, must be a Substantive, Adjective, Participle, or Adjectival Pronoun; as, *animal*, an animal; *mortalis*, mortal; *victus*, conquered; *noster*, ours: or a Preposition with its case (equivalent to a noun); as *sine vitiis*, *pro consule*.

(3) The Copula, when distinct from the Predicate, is generally some finite form of the Verb of being, *sum*.

Examples of Simple Sentences in which the three members are distinct:—

SUBJECT.	COPULA.	PREDICATE.
1. <i>Homines</i> .....	<i>sunt</i> .....	<i>animalia</i> .
Men.....	are .....	animals.
2. <i>Ego</i> .....	<i>sum</i> .....	<i>mortalis</i> .
I .....	am.....	mortal.
3. <i>Galli</i> .....	<i>erant</i> .....	<i>victi</i> .
The Gauls .....	were .....	conquered.
4. <i>Errare</i> .....	<i>est</i> .....	<i>nostrum</i> .
To err .....	is .....	ours

SUBJECT.	COPULA.	PREDICATE.
5. <i>Tu</i> .....	<i>es</i> .....	<i>pro consulē.</i>
<i>Tu</i> .....	<i>art.</i> .....	<i>Proconsul.</i>

But, in general, the Predicate and Copula are blended together in one finite Predicative Verb, which is then called the Predicate: as,

SUBJECT.	PREDICATE.
<i>Ego</i> .....	<i>disc-o.</i>
<i>I</i> .....	<i>learn (am learning).</i>
<i>Homines</i> .....	<i>spira-nt.</i>
<i>Men</i> .....	<i>breathe (are breathing).</i>

Here, strictly speaking, the crude Forms of the Verbs (*disc-*, *spira-*) are the Predicates, and the Endings (*-o*, *-nt*), are the Copulas. And, when the Subject is understood from the Ending, a single Verb may be a complete sentence. Thus, the famous despatch of Cæsar, *Veni, vidi, vici* (I came, I saw, I conquered), contains three distinct sentences, each consisting of one word only.

*Obs.* 1. When an Adjective qualifies a Substantive without being joined to it by a Copula, it is said (*attribui, attributum esse*) to be an Attributive or Epithet. Thus, in the sentence, *Vir bonus laudatur* (a good man is praised), *bonus* is an Epithet; but in *Vir est bonus* (the man is good), *bonus* is the Predicate.

*Obs.* 2. The Infinitive, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, are called *Verbum Infinitum*: all the other forms of the Verb, any of which can make a complete sentence, are called *Verbum Finitum*.

*Obs.* 3. Objectum, the Object, is that person or thing upon which an action is directed: as, *Parentes amant liberos*, where *liberos* is the Object. Sometimes there are two Objects, a nearer and a remoter: as, *Pater librum filio dat*; where *librum* is the nearer Object, *filio* the remoter.

*Obs.* 4. *Copulative* Verbs are those which couple a Subject and a Nominal Predicate. Of these Verbs *sum* is the chief: but others also have a Copulative use, as *forem, fio, existo, evado, maneo, audio, nascor, videor*; and Passive Verbs of making, naming, declaring, choosing, thinking, finding, &c.: as *efficior, appellor, vocor, nuncupor, dicor, feror, declaror, creor, designor, eligor, inscribor, existimor, putor, credor, agnoscor, habeor, invenior, reperior, &c.*

## DE CONCORDANTIIS.

### CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.

#### *Adjectivi cum Substantivo.*

§ 102. *Regula Generalis.*—Adjectiva, Participia, et Pronomina, sive attributa sive prædicata, cum Substantivis suis genere, numero, et casu concordant: ut,



*Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos ;  
Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes. — OVIDIUS.*

*Obs.* 1. Substantivum per ellipsin intelligitur : ut,  
*Laborem plerique fugiunt.* (supple *homines.*)—CICERO.  
*Cornix a levâ canit, corvus a dextrâ.* (supple *manu.*)—CIC.

*Obs.* 2. Neutra Adjectiva Substantivorum vice funguntur :  
ut,  
*Omnium rerum mors est extremum.* — CIC.  
*Honestum et utile pugnare aliquando videntur.* — CIO.  
*Verecundâ laxamus seria mensâ.* — PERSIUS.



## CONCORDANTIA SECUNDA.

### *Verbi cum Nominativo Subjecti.*

§ 103. *R. G.* — Verbum finitum concordat cum Nominativo numero et personâ : ut,  
*Omnia vitia contra naturam pugnant.* — SENECA.  
*Sera nimis vita est crastina.* — MARTIALIS.

*Obs.* Aliquando Infinitivus, vel continuata Locutio, vel Adverbium cum Genitivo, pro Nominativo ponitur : ut,  
*Non est mentiri meum.* — TERENTIUS.  
*Incertum est quàm longa nostrum cujusque vita futura sit.* — CIC.  
*Parum in eo putabatur esse animi.* — CIC.

### A. DE ELLIPSI NOMINATIVI.

§ 104. *Obs.* 1. Nominativus Pronominum rarò exprimitur : ut,  
*Nitimur in vetitum semper cupimusque negata.* — OV  
(*Obs.*) Nisi distinctioni vel emphasi inserviat : ut,  
*Ego reges ejeci : vos tyrannos introducitis.* — CIC  
*Obs.* 2. *Dicendi, narrandi, et appellandi* Verba tertiae personæ pluralis Nominativum *homines* sæpè habent intellectum : ut,  
*Quod oïunt, auribus teneo lupum.* — TER.  
*Obs.* 3. Impersonalia Nominativum non habent expressum : ut,  
*Tædet ipsum vehementerque pœnilet.* — CIC.  
(*Obs.*) Multa verò, quæ Impersonalia vocantur, Nominativum aliquem habent intellectum : ut,  
*Jam advesperascit.* (supple *dies.*) — CIC.

## B. DE ELLIPSI VERBI.

§ 105. *Obs.* 1. Personæ præsentis Verbi *sum* sæpè intelliguntur : ut,  
*Nihil bonum nisi quod honestum.* (supple *est.*) — CIC.

*Obs.* 2. Infinitivus interdum Nominativo postponitur : ut,  
*Tum pius Æneas humeris abscindere vestem.* — VIRG.

(*Obs.*) Plerumque autem Infinitivus Accusativo postponitur,  
 præcedente Verbo finito : ut,  
*Tradunt Homerum cæcum fuisse.* — CIC.



## CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.

*Relativi cum Antecedente.*

§ 106. *R. G.* — Relativum cum Antecedente concordat  
 genere, numero, et personâ : casu autem construi-  
 tur cum suâ sententiâ : ut,

*Ea est jucundissima amicitia, quam similitudo  
 morum conjugavit.* — CIC.

*Obs.* 1. Si Sententia pro Antecedente ponitur, Relativum est  
 in neutro genere : ut,

*In tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est  
 primum.* — TER.

*Obs.* 2. Interdum Antecedens in possessivo Pronomine in-  
 cluditur : ut,

*Omnes laudare fortunas meas  
 Qui natum haberem tali ingenio præditum.* (sci-  
 licet, *fortunas mei qui.*) — TER.

§ 107. *Nota.* — Relativum, *Qui, quæ, quod*, plerumque considerari  
 debet tanquam positum inter duos casus unius Substan-  
 tivi, sive expressos sive suppressos : cum antecedente  
 conveniet in genere et numero : cum sequente etiam in  
 casu, sicut Adjectivum cum Substantivo.

*Obs.* 1. Ambo Casus interdum exprimuntur : ut,

*Erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exire possent.* — CÆSAR.

*Obs.* 2. Plerumque supprimitur Casus posterior : ut,

*Animum rege, qui, nisi paret,  
 Imperat.* (scilicet *qui animus.*) — HORATIUS.

*Obs.* 3. Interdum prior : ut,

*Sic tibi dent nymphæ quæ leveat uncta sitim* (scil. *undam qua  
 unda.*) — OV.

Obs. 4. Interdum uterque: ut,

*Sunt quibus in satirâ videor nimis acer.* (scil. *homines quibus hominibus.*)—HOR.



## SUPPLEMENTUM CONCORDANTIARUM.

### A. DE SYNESI.

§ 108. Synesis est ea constructionis ratio, quæ ad sensum vocabulorum, non ad formam, spectat.

R. G. I. — Substantivum, formâ sed non sensu singulare, sæpè habet Verbum, Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale: ut,

*Pars epulis onerant mensas.* — VIRGILIUS.

*Clamor inde populi, mirantium quid rei esset.* — LIVIUS.

*Cæsar equitatum præmittit, qui hostes observent* — CÆS.

R. G. II. — Substantivum, formâ sed non sensu neutrum vel femininum, interdum habet Adjectivum aut Relativum diversi generis: ut,

*Capita conjurationis securi percussi sunt.* — LIV.

*Ubi est is scelus, qui me perdidit?* — TER.

*Subeunt Tegeæa juvenus*

*Auxilio tardi.* — STATIUS.

### B. DE PLURIBUS NOMINIBUS IN SUBJECTO.

§ 109. R. G. I. — Duo vel plura Nomina singularia conjuncta habent plerumque Adjectivum, Verbum, vel Relativum plurale: ut,

*Veneno absumpti sunt Hannibal et Philopœmen.* — LIV.

§ 110. R. G. II. — Si Nomina illa singularia diversarum sunt personarum vel generum, Verbum plurale cum Nomina dignioris personæ, Adjectivum verò vel Relativum cum Substantivo dignioris generis, ferè concordat.

(a) Prima persona dignior est quàm secunda, secunda quàm tertia: ut,

*Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.* — CIC.

(b) In rebus animatis dignius est masculinum genus quàm femininum: ut,

*Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.* — TER.

(c) In rebus verò inanimis Adjectivum vel Relativum sæpissimè erit in neutro genere: ut,

*Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt.* — SALLUSTIUS.

(Obs.) Verbum haud rarò cum proximo Substantivo concordat: ut,

*Religio et fides anteponatur amicitiae.* — CIC.

*Convicta est Messalina et Silius.* — TACITUS.

### C. DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM COPULATIVORUM.

§ 111. R. G.—Verba Copulativa, sive finiti modi, sive infiniti, eundem habent utrinque casum: ut,

*Si spes est expectatio boni, mali expectationem esse necesse est metum.* — CIC.

*Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur Iambus.* — HOR.

*Regius agnoscor per rata signa puer.* — OV.

*Vobis licet esse beatis.* — HOR.

§ 112. Obs. 1. Verbum, inter duos Nominativos positum, interdum cum posteriore solo concordat: ut,

*Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.* — TER.

*Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda.* — CIC.

Obs. 2. Relativum, inter duo Substantiva ejusdem rei collocatum, cum posteriore solo sæpè concordat: ut,

*Animal plenum rationis, quem vocamus hominem.* — CIC.

*Thebæ, quod Bæotie caput est.* — LIV.

### D. DE APPOSITIONE.

§ 113. R. G.—Substantivo, Pronomini, et interdum Sententiæ, apponi potest Substantivum ejusdem rei in eodem casu: ut,

*Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.* — OV.

*Nos consules desumus.* — CIC.

*Cogitet oratorem institui, rem arduam.* — CIC.

Not. — Cum duo Substantiva diversarum rerum concurrunt, alterum in Genitivo ponitur: ut,

*Recubans sub tegmine fagi.* — VIRG.

## DE RECTIONE CASUUM.

### ACCUSATIVUS.

§ 114. Accusativus est casus propioris Objecti.

R. G. I.—Verba Transitive regunt Accusativum propioris Objecti: ut,

*Sperne voluptates.* — HOR.

*Imprimis venerare Deum.* — VIRG.

*Percontatorem fugito.* — HOR.

*Obs.* 1. Verba quædam Neutra et Passiva Accusativum admittunt suæ operationis : ut,

*Duram servit servitutum.* — PLAUTUS.

*Claudius aleam lusit.* — SÜETONIUS.

§ 115. *Obs.* 2. Verba Transitiva, quæ in Voce Passivâ Copulativa fiunt, duplicem habent Accusativum, unum Objectivum, alterum Prædicativum : ut,

*Ciceronem populus consulem declaravit.* — CIC.

*Hannibal Philippum hostem reddidit Romanis.* — NEPOS.

§ 116. *Obs.* 3. Verba quædam rogandi et docendi duplicem habent Accusativum, unum personæ, alterum verò rei : ut,

*Pacem te poscimus omnes.* — VIRG.

*Quid nunc te, asine, litteras doceam ?* — CIC.

Et interdum celo : ut,

*Ea ne me celet consuefecit filium.* — TER.

(*Obs.*) Eadem verba in Passivâ Voce retinent Accusativum rei : ut,

*Is primus rogatus est sententiam.* — LIV.

*Motus doceri gaudet Ionicos.* — HOR.

§ 117. *Obs.* 4. Accusativus Respectûs Græco more subijcitur tum Verbis Neutris et Passivis tum Adjectivis : ut,

*Micat auribus et tremit artus.* — VIRG.

*Inficitur teneras tota rubore genas.* — TIBULLUS.

*Germanorum feminae nudæ sunt brachia ac lacertos.* — TAC.

§ 118. *R. G. II.* — Accusativum regunt hæ Præpositiones :

*Ante, apud, ad, adversus,*

*Circum, circa, citra, cis,*

*Contra, inter, erga, extra,*

*Infra, intra, juxta, ob,*

*Penes, pone, post, et præter,*

*Prope, propter, per, secundum,*

*Supra, versus, ultra, trans ;*

*His, super, subter, addito,*

*Et in, sub, si fit motio.*

§ 119. *R. G.* — Vocativus, Appellati Casus, regitur ab Interjectione, sive expressâ, sive intellectâ : ut,

*O Sol pulcher, O laudande.* — HOR.

*Alme Sol.* — HOR.

*Fili vel O fili.* — TER.

*Not.* — Interjectiones *en* et *ecce* regunt Accusativum et Nominativum ; *o, ah, heu, hem, proh,* Accusativum, Nominativum, et Vocativum : ut,

*En miserum hominem !* — CIC.

*Ecce nova turba atque rixa !* — CIC.

*Heu miserande puer !* — VIRG.

*Heu vanitas humana !* — PLINIUS.

*Proh Deum atque hominum fidem !* — CIC.

Obs. Dativum regunt *hei* et *væ* : ut,

*Hei misero mihi!* — TER.

*Væ tibi, causidice!* — MART.



## DATIVUS.

§ 120. Dativus est Casus remotioris Objecti. Interdum Agentem, interdum Propositum significat.

### A. DATIVUS OBJECTI.

R. G. I. — Omnia ferè Adjectiva et Verba, item Adverbia et Substantiva, regunt Dativum remotioris Objecti, cujus causâ est aut fit aliquid : ut,

*Non solum nobis divites esse volumus.* — CIC.

*Mihi istic nec seritur nec metitur.* — PLAUT.

*Numa virgines Vestæ legit.* — LIV.

*Urbi pater est urbique maritus.* — LUCANUS.

*Tibi luditur.* — PERS.

Obs. 1. Ita *sum* possessivè significans Dativum possidentis habet: ut,

*Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.* — VIRG.

Obs. 2. Dativus Pronominis abundat eleganter : ut,

*Quid mihi Celsus agit?* — HOR.

*Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo.* — TER.

§ 121. R. G. II. — Dativum regunt plurima Adjectiva, Adverbia, et Verba, interdum etiam Substantiva, a quibus indicatur

*Commodum, communicatio,  
Comparatio, consecratio,  
Congruentia, consuetudo,  
Auxilium et aptitudo,  
Benignitas, vicinitas,  
Jucunditas, affinitas,*

*Traditio, venia, demonstratio,  
Promissio, fides, et narratio  
Obsequium, imperium,  
Et quicquid his contrarium;  
Cum nubo, vaco: cetera  
Sub primâ stabunt regulâ.*

(1) Adjectiva : ut,

*Patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris.* — JUVENALIS.

*Nil fuit unquam sic impar sibi.* — HOR.

*Est finitimus oratori poeta.* — CIC.

*Turba gravis paci placidæque inimica quieti.* — LUCAN.

*Homini fidelissimi sunt equus et canis.* — PLIN.

*Omnibus supplex.* — CIC.

## (2) Adverbia : ut,

*Congruenter naturæ vivendum est.* — CIC.*Improbo et inertī nemini bene esse potest.* — CIC.

## (3) Verba :

## (a) Transitive : ut,

*Culturæ patientem commodat aurem.* — HOR.*Præsentia confer præteritis.* — LUCRETIVS.*Hunc lucum tibi dedico, Priape.* — CATULLVS.*Quod alii donat sibi detrahit.* — S. CLEMENS.*Hoc mihi confirmavit et persuasit.* — CIC.*Nobis spondet fortuna salutem.* — VIRG.

## (b) Intransitive : ut,

*Neve mihi noceat, quod vobis semper, Achivi,**Profuit ingenium.* — OV.*Philosophia medetur animis.* — CIC.*Tibi favemus.* — CIC.*Irascor tibi.* — CATULL.*Victrix causa deis placuit, sed victa Catoni.* — LUCAN.*Parce pio generi.* — VIRG.*Anguis Sullæ apparuit immolanti.* — CIC.*O formose puer, nimium ne crede colori.* — VIRG.*Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.* — HOR.*Placitone etiam pugnabis amori?* — VIRG.*Venus nupsit Vulcano.* — CIC.*Philosophiæ semper vaco.* — CIC.

## (4) Substantiva : ut,

*Nulla fides regni sociis.* — LUCAN.*Justitia est obtemperatio legibus et institutis.* — CIC.

§ 122. Obs. 1. *Æqualis, proprius, communis, par, alienus, Dissimilis, similis, dispar, consors, sociusque, Consciū, affinis, sacer, æmulus, atque superstes, Pluraque, nunc voluere Dativum, nunc Genitivum.*

ut, *Media simillima veris sunt.* — LIV.

*Deos esse similes tui putas?* — PLAUT.

*Propria est nobis mentis agitatio et solertia.* — CIC.

*Proprium est oratoris ornatè dicere.* — CIC.

(Obs.) Eadem ferè Adjectiva, item Verba et Substantiva ejusdem significationis, sequitur etiam Præpositio cum suo casu ut,

*Hi inter se æquales et pares sunt.* — CIC.

*Hæc sunt locupletibus cum plebe communia.* — CIC.

*Homo sum : humani nihil a me alienum puto.* — TER.

*Homini cum Deo similitudo est.* — CIC.

*Senones cum Carnutibus consilia communicavere.* — CÆS.

- § 123. *Obs. 2.* Ex Adjectivis quæ affectionem animi denotant, multa capiunt Præpositiones *in, erga, adversus*, cum Accusativo : ut,

*Acer in hostem.* — HOR.

*Benignus erga te fui.* — PLAUT.

- Obs. 3.* *Natus, aptus, utilis*, cum aliis Adjectivis *commodi et congruentiæ*, Accusativo sæpè junguntur cum Præpositione *ad* : ut,

*Ad laudem et ad decus nati sumus.* — CIC.

*Thracibus promptus est ad mortem animus.* — TAC.

- § 124. *Obs. 4.* *Delecto* atque *juvo, jubeo, rego, lædo, guberno*, et alia quædam Verba, Accusativo contra regulam junguntur : ut,

*Multos castra juvant.* — HOR.

*Tu regere imperio populos, Romane, memento.* — VIRG.

- Obs. 5.* *Tempero et moderor* nunc Dativum nunc Accusativum habent : ut,

*Privignis mulier temperat innocens.* — HOR.

*Temperat ora frænis.* — HOR.

*Hic moderatur equos qui non moderabitur iræ.* — HOR.

- § 125. *R. G. III.* — Dativum fermè regunt Verba composita cum Adverbiis *bene, satis, male* ; et cum Præpositionibus, præsertim his : —

*Ad, ante, ab,*

*In, inter, de,*

*Sub, super, ob,*

*Con, post, et præ.*

- (1) Verba Transitiva : ut,

*Gigantes bellum diis intulerunt.* — CIC.

*Anatum ova gallinis sæpè supponimus.* — CIC.

*Deus animum præfecit corpori.* — CIC.

- (2) Verba Intransitiva : ut,

*Ceteris satisfacio semper ; mihi nunquam.* — CIC.

*Sicilia quondam Italiæ adhæsit.* — JUSTINUS.

*Vir mihi semper abest.* — OV.

*Impendent hominibus varia genera mortis.* — CIC.

*Squamis intermicat aurum.* — CLAUDIANUS.

*Lucumo superfuit patri.* — LIV.

*Vitia nobis sub virtutum nomine obrepunt.* — SEN



*Obs.* Multa ex his variant constructionem : ut,  
*Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt.* — CÆS.  
*In amore hæc insunt vitia.* — TER.

## B. DATIVUS AGENTIS.

§ 126. *R. G.* — Dativus Agentis sequitur Verbalia in *bilis*,  
 et Gerundivum in *dus*; interdum Participia per-  
 fecta; rarò Verba Passiva : ut,  
*Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit.* — HOR.  
*Restat Chremes qui mihi exorandus est.* — TER.  
*Magnus civis obît et formidatus Othoni.* — JUV.  
*Barbarus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli*  
 — OV.

*Obs.* Verba et Participia Passiva plerumque habent Ablat-  
 ivum Agentis cum Præpositione *a* vel *ab* : ut,  
*Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.* — HOR.  
*Mors Crassi est a multis defleta.* — CIC.

## C. DATIVUS PROPOSITI.

§ 127. *R. G.* — Dativus Propositi additur Verbo *sum* et  
 multis aliis, vel pro Nominativo vel pro Accusa-  
 tivo : ut,  
*Exemplo est magni formica laboris.* — HOR.  
*Nucleum amisi; reliquit pignori putamina.*  
 — PLAUT.

*Obs.* Sæpè etiam duplex admittitur Dativus, alter Objecti, alter  
 autem Propositi : ut,  
*Exitio est avidum mare nantis.* — HOR.  
*Quod aliis vitio vertis, tîci laudi ne duxeris.* — SEN



## GENITIVUS.

§ 128. Genitivus vel Subjectivus est, vel Objectivus.

A. Subjectivus : ut,

*Crassi defensio.* (scil. oratio quâ Crassus defendit.)

B. Objectivus : ut,

*Defensio Gabinii.* (scil. oratio quâ defensio est Ga-  
 binii.)

Interdum uterque Genitivus ab eodem Substantivo pendet : ut,

*Repentina erat Crassi defensio Gabinii.* (scil. *oratio quâ Crassus Gabinium defendit.*) — CIC.

*Sic metus hostium, amor Dei, et similia, duplici sensu dici possunt.*

§ 129. A. GENITIVUS SUBJECTIVUS est in primis Auctoris et Possessoris ; item Qualitatis, et Distributionis.

R. G. I. — Genitivus Auctoris et Possessoris sequitur omnia ferè Substantiva, necnon Verba *sum, facio, fio*, per ellipsin Substantivi : ut,

*Polycleti signa planè perfecta sunt.* — CIC.

*Singulorum opes sunt divitiæ civitatis.* — CIC.

*Omnia, quæ mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt.* — CIC.

*Scipio Hispaniam Romanæ ditionis fecit.* — LIV.

§ 130. Obs. 1. Est Impersonale præponitur Genitivo, si intelligitur  
Indoles, indicium, | Munus aut officium.

ut, *Cujusvis hominis est errare.* — CIC.

*Improbi hominis est mendacio fallere.* — CIC.

*Honoris amplissimi est miseros defendere.* — CIC.

*Est adolescentis majores natu vereri.* — CIC.

Obs. 2. Fit etiam ellipsis aliorum Nominum ante Genitivum : ut,

*Hectoris Andromachæ.* (supple *uxor.*) — VIRG.

*Deiphobe Glauci.* (supple *filia.*) — VIRG.

*Ventum erat ad Vestæ.* (supple *templum.*) — HOR.

*Hujus video Byrrhiam.* (supple *servum.*) — TER.

§ 131. Obs. 3. Genitivi *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, objectivè tantum usurpantur : subjectivè ponuntur Possessiva *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester* : ut,

*Si tibi cura mei, sit tibi cura tui.* — OV.

*Quonam nostri tibi cura recessit ?* — STAT.

*Venatum puer ire parat, mea maxima cura.* — VIRG.

*Nicias vehementer tuâ sui memoriâ delectatur* — CIC.

(Obs. 1.) Genitivus Personalis in Possessivo inclusus recipit alterum Genitivum sibi concordantem vel appositum : ut,

*Respublica meâ unius operâ salva erat.* — CIC.

*Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest.* — CIC.

*Aces factus adultos suæ ipsorum fiduciæ permittunt.* — QUINT.

*Nostros vidisti flentis ocellos.* — OV.

*Studium tuum adolescentis perspexi.* — CIC.

(Obs. 2.) *Nostri, vestri*, objectivè, *nostrum, vestrum*, partitivè ponuntur.

§ 132 *R. G. II.* — Genitivus Qualitatis sequitur Substantiva et Verba Copulativa : ut,

*Ingenui vultûs puer ingenuique pudoris.* — JUV.  
*Claudius erat somni brevissimi.* — SÆTTONIUS.

*Obs.* Qualitas etiam in Ablativo ponitur : ut,

*Senex promissâ barbâ, horrenti capillo.* — PLIN.

§ 133. *R. G. III.* — Vocabula Partitiva, Numeralia, Comparativa et Superlativa, regunt Genitivum rei distributæ.

*Not.* — Adjectivum vel Pronomen plerumque erit in eodem genere cum Genitivo : Genitivus erit in Plurali Numero, nisi sit nomen collectivum.

1. Adjectiva et Pronomina Partitiva :

<i>Alius, alter, uter, ullus,</i>	<i>Hic, is, ille, qui, et quis,</i> <i>Tot, quot; cum Compositis ;</i> <i>Et si quod aliud Adjectivum</i> <i>Acquirat sensum partitivum :</i>
<i>Plerique, pauci, multi, nullus,</i>	
<i>Solus, atque singuli,</i>	
<i>Ceteri, et reliqui ;</i>	

ut, *Virtutum in aliâ alius excellit.* — CIC.

*Multæ harum arborum meâ manu sunt satæ.* — CIC.

*Elephanto belluarum nulla est prudentior.* — CIC.

*Stultorum quisnam beatus ?* — CIC.

*Utroque vestrum delector.* — CIC.

*Lecti juvenum.* — STAT.

*Sequimur te, sancte deorum.* — VIRG.

2. Numeralia, sive Cardinalia, sive Ordinalia, item *princeps medius* : ut,

*Homini uni animantium luctus est datus.* — PLIN.

*Sulla centum viginti suorum amisit.* — EUTROPIUS.

*Sicilia prima omnium nationum provincia est appellata.* — CIC.

*Nunc juvenum princeps, deinde future senum.* — OV.

*Roma regionum Italiæ media est.* — LIV.

3. Comparativa et Superlativa : ut,

*Major Neronum.* — HOR.

*Gallorum fortissimi sunt Belgæ.* — CÆS.

4. Adverbia Superlativa : ut,

*Hoc ad te minimè omnium pertinet.* — CIC.

5. Substantiva Partitiva et partitivè posita : ut,

*Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.* — PLIN

*Piscium femina majores quàm mares.* — PLIN.

§ 134. *Obs.* 1.—Distributionem etiam efficiunt Præpositiones *ex, in, inter, ante, de* : ut,

*Nihil ex his, quæ videmus, manet.*—SEN.

*Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit.*—CIC.

*Inter Scythiæ amnes amænissimus Borysthenes.*—MELA.

*Ante omnes Turnus pulcherrimus.*—VIRG.

*Una de multis fuit in parentem*

*Splendidè mendax.*—HOR.

§ 135. *Obs.* 2.—Hi Genitivi, *gentium, terrarum*, alique, sequuntur Adverbia localia, *huc, ed, quod, ubi*, similia : ut,

*Migrandum aliquò terrarum arbitror.*—CIC.

*Vir bonus, ubicumque erit gentium, a nobis diligitur.*—CIC.

*Perseus perfugium sibi nusquam gentium esse ait.*—LIV.

*Huccine rerum venimus?*—PERS.

§ 136. *R. G. IV.*—Substantiva, Adverbia, item Neutra Adjectiva et Pronomina, Quantitatem significantia, regunt Genitivum rei demensæ : ut,

*Justitia nihil expetit præmii.*—CIC.

*Satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum.*—SALL.

*Aliquid pristini roboris conservat.*—CIC.

*Dimidium facti qui bene cæpit habet.*—HOR.

*Quantum nummorum, tantum fidei.*—JUV.

§ 137. *B. R. G. I.*—GENITIVUM OBJECTIVUM regunt multa Substantiva, in quibus transitiva quædam vis est : ut

*Insitus est menti cognitionis amor.*—CIC.

*Obs.* Hic Genitivus aliquando Præpositionis cum casu vicem occupat : ut,

*Bellum Helvetiorum.* (scil. *cum Helvetiis.*)—CÆS.

§ 138. *R. G. II.* Genitivum Objectivum regunt Verbalia in *ax*, Participia quædam adjectivè posita, et Adjectiva significantia

*Notitiam, curam, et cupiditatem,  
Memoriam, metum, crimen, po-  
testatem,*

Et quæ contrario sensu  
stant;  
Poetæ multa alia dant :

ut, *Tempus edax rerum.*—OV.

*Animus alieni appetens, sui profusus.*—SALL.

*Nescia mens hominum est fati.*—VIRG.

*Omnes immemorem beneficii oderunt.*—CIC.

*Ira est impotens sui.*—SEN

*Fraterni sanguinis insons.* — OV.

*O scri studiorum.* — HOR.

§ 139. *R. G. III.* — Verba quædam *accusandi, convincendi, absolvendi, damnandi*, regunt, cum Accusativo personæ, Genitivum rei : ut,

*Cicero Verrem avaritiæ arguit.* — CIC.

*Condemnamus haruspices stultitiæ.* — CIC.

*Ne quem innocentem capitis arcessas.* — CIC.

*Obs. 1.* Pro hoc Genitivo ponitur Præpositio, præsertim *de*, cum suo casu : ut,

*Accusatur inter sicarios et de veneficiis.* — CIC.

*Obs. 2.* Sine Præpositione usurpantur hi Ablativi, *crimine, lege, scelere, capite*, et alii nonnulli : ut,

*Themistocles crimine prodicionis absens damnatus est.* — NEP.

*Legibus ambitus interrogatus pœnas dedit.* — CIC.

*Fulvium capite anquirendum subclamant.* — LIV.

*Obs. 3.* Similiter Verba *monendi*, cum Accusativo personæ, regunt Genitivum rei : ut,

*Res adversæ admonent nos religionum.* — LIV.

(*Obs.*) Vel Ablativum cum Præpositione *de* : ut,

*Terentiam de testamento moneatis.* — CIC.

§ 140. *R. G. IV.* — *Memini, recordor, reminiscor, obliviscor*, nunc Genitivum regunt, nunc Accusativum : ut,

*Jubet mortis te meminisse Deus.* — MART.

*Dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos.* — VIRG.

§ 141. *R. G. V.* — *Misereor, miseresco*, Genitivo junguntur; *miseror, commiseror*, Accusativo : ut,

*Nil nostri miserere.* — VIRG.

*Arcadii, quæso, miserescite regis.* — VIRG.

*Agesilaus commiseratus est fortunam Græciæ.*

— NEP.

§ 142. *Not. 1.* — Genitivus interdum ponitur post Verba *desinendi, potiendi, regnandi* : ut,

*Desine mollium tandem querelarum.* — HOR.

*Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt.* — SALL.

*Daunus agrestium regnavit populorum.* — HOR.

*Not. 2.* — Rariores sunt Genitivi Causæ, Respectûs, Propinationis : ut,

*Laudabat leti juvenem.* — SIL.

*Animi pendeo.* — CIC.

*Da noctis mediæ (supple poculum).* — HOR.

## ABLATIVUS.

§ 143. Ablativus est Casus qui circumstantia actionis definit.  
*R. G. I.* — Adjectiva, Verba, et aliquando Substantiva, admittunt Ablativum significantem rei aut actionis causam, vel instrumentum, vel modum, vel materiam, vel limitationem qualemcunque.

§ 144. A. ABLATIVUS CAUSÆ sequitur Adjectiva, Verba, et præsertim Participia : ut,  
*Cæptis immanibus effera Dido.* — VIRG.  
*Oderunt peccare mali formidine pænæ.* — HOR.  
*Animus pravis cupidinibus captus.* — SALL.

§ 145. B. ABLATIVUS INSTRUMENTI sequitur Verba : ut,  
*Dente lupus, cornu taurus petit.* — HOR.  
*Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis.* — VIRG.

§ 146. C. ABLATIVUS MODI plerumque sequitur Verba : ut,  
*Injuria fit duobus modis, vi aut fraude.* — CIC.  
*Obs.* Persæpè capit Præpositionem *cum* : ut,  
*Magnâ cum curâ atque diligentîâ scripsit.* — CIC  
*Cum veniâ facito, quisquis es, ista legas.* — OV.

§ 147. D. (a) ABLATIVUS MATERIÆ sequitur Verba *construendi, consistendi*, et similia : ut,  
*Animo constamus et corpore.* — CIC.

*Obs.* Vel cum Præpositione *ex* : ut,  
*Beata vita constat ex rectis actionibus.* — SEN.

(b) *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior*, Ablativum regunt : ut,  
*Fungar vice cotis.* — HOR.  
*Cùm victoriâ posset uti, frui maluit.* — FLORUS.  
*Numidæ ferinâ carne vescebantur.* — SALL.  
*Auro vi potitur.* — VIRG.

*Obs.* Hæc Verba antiquitùs Accusativum habebant : ut,  
*Functus est officium boni viri.* — TER.

§ 148. (c.) Adjectiva et Verba, quæ ad *copiam egestatem* vel pertinent, Ablativum regunt; multa etiam Genitivum : ut,

*Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus.*—PLAUT.

*Numquam animus motu vacuus est.*—CIC.

*Turpe est diffluere luxuriâ.*—CIC.

*Vacare culpâ maximum est solatium.*—CIC.

*Dives opum, dives pictai vestis et auri.*—VIRG.

*Mancipiis locuples eget æris Cappadocum rex.*

—HOR.

*Vis consilii expers mole ruit suâ.*—HOR.

*Hæ res vitæ me saturant.*—PLAUT.

(d) *Opus et usus Ablativum regunt: ut,*

*Ubi res adsunt, quid opus est verbis?*—SALL.

*Usus est filio viginti minis.*—PLAUT.

(e) *Dignus, indignus, præditus, fretus, item Verbum dignor, Ablativum regunt: ut,*

*Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori.*—HOR.

*Lentulus est singulari modestiâ præditus.*—CIC.

*Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.*—VIRG.

§ 149. E. ABLATIVUS LIMITATIONIS latè patet.

(a) Ablativus Respectûs jungitur præsertim Adjectivis, item Verbis et Substantivis: ut,

*Ennius ingenio maximus, arte rudis.*—OV.

*Oculis capti fodere cubilia talpæ.*—VIRG.

*Agasilaus fuit claudus altero pede.*—NEP.

*Et corde et genibus tremit.*—HOR.

*Quid hoc homine facies?*—CIC.

§ 150. Obs. Huc referuntur Ablativi illi, *domo, natione, numero*, similes; item *ætate et natu*: ut,

*Domo Carthaginienses sunt.*—PLAUT.

*Mardonius natione Medus.*—NEP.

*Non grandis natu est, sed tamen jam ætate proventus.*—CIC.

*Ennius fuit major natu quam Plautus et Nævius.*—CIC.

§ 151. (b) Ablativus Pretii sequitur Verba et Adjectiva significantia *emptionem, venditionem, vel æstimationem*: ut,

*Ego spem pretio non emo.*—TER.

*Plurimus auro vënit honos.*—PROPERTIUS.

*Multorum sanguine victoria stetit.*—LIV.

*Quod non opus est, asse carum est.*—SEN.

*Obs. 1* Per Ellipsin usurpantur, omissâ voce *pretio*, hi Ablativi, *vili, parvo, minimo, nimio, magno, plurimo, duplo, et dimidio* : ut,

*Parvo fames constat, magno fastidium.* — SEN.

*Obs. 2.* Æstimatio rei plerumque Genitivum habet, præsertim ellipticos illos, *magni, parvi, minimi, pluris*, atque *plurimi* : ut,

*Sapiens dolorem nihili facit.* — CIC.

*Voluptatem virtus minimi facit.* — CIC.

*Pluris est oculatus testis unus, quàm auriti decem.* — PLAUT.

(*Obs.*) Tam Pretium quàm Æstimationem significant, *pluris, minoris, tanti, quanti, maximi* : ut,

*Emit hortos tanti, quanti Pythius voluit.* — CIC.

§ 152. (c) Ablativus Differentiæ jungitur Adjectivis, Adverbiis, et Verbis comparativæ et superlativæ significationis : ut,

*Sol multis partibus major est quàm luna.* — CIC.

*A Cynicis tunicâ distantia dogmata.* — HOR.

*Obs.* In primis Ablativi elliptici :

*Altero, hoc, eo, quo,*

*Nihilo et nimio,*

*Dimidio, duplo, quanto, tanto,*

*Paullo, multo, aliquanto :*

ut, *Eo gravior est dolor, quo culpa major.* — CIC.

*Tanto pessimus omnium poeta,*

*Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus.* — CATUL.

*Nihilo aliter sum atque fui.* — TER.

§ 153. (d) Ablativus Comparisonis regitur a Comparativis, sive Adjectivis, sive Adverbiis.

*Notu.* — Hic Ablativus ponitur pro Conjunctione *quàm* cum Nominativo vel Accusativo.

(1) Pro *quàm* cum Nominativo . ut,

*Nihil est amabilius virtute.* — CIC.

*Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.* — HOR.

(2) Pro *quàm* cum Accusativo : ut,

*Puto mortem dedecore leviozem.* — CIC.

*Neminem Lycurgo utiliozem Lacedæmon genuit.* —

VALERIUS MAXIMUS.

*Obs. 1.* *Quàm* duobus Comparativis eleganter interponitur : ut,

*Triumphus Camilli clarior erat quàm gratior.* — LIV

*Obs. 2.* *Quàm* eleganter omittitur post *plus, amplius, minus* : ut,

*Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi.* — TER.

*Obs. 3.* Comparationi inserviunt etiam Præpositiones *ante, præter, supra, præ* : ut,



*Pygmalion, scelere ante alios immanior omnes.* — VIRG.  
*Cruz præter ceteras altior.* — SÆT.

§ 154. R. G. II. — Ablativum regunt hæ Præpositiones.

<i>A, ab, absque, coram, de,</i> <i>Palam, clam, cum, ex, et e,</i> <i>Sine, tenus, pro, et præ:</i>	<span style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle;"> </span> <i>His subter, super, addito,</i> <i>Et in, sub, si fit statio.</i>
--	---

Obs. 1. Præpositio in Compositione eundem nonnunquam Casum regit, quem et extra Compositionem regebat: ut,

*Detrudunt naves scopulo.* — VIRG.  
*Te nunc alloquor, Africane.* — CIC.

Obs. 2. Eleganter iteratur eadem Præpositio: ut,

*E corpore excedit animus.* — CIC.

(Obs.) Vel importatur nova: ut,

*Alto defluxit ab æthere tabes.* — LUCAN.

Obs. 3. Verba *discedendi, separandi, arcendi, removendi*, et similia, omissâ quoque Præpositione, regunt Ablativum: ut,

*Cedes coemptis saltibus et domo.* — HOR.  
*Populus Atheniensis Phocionem patriâ pepulit.* — NEP.

(Obs.) Huc refer Ablativum post Verba et Participia Originis: ut,

*Atreus Tantalò prognatus, Pelope natus.* — CIC.  
*Sate sanguine divum.* — VIRG.

Obs. 4. *Tenus* vel Genitivum pluralem vel Ablativum regit, et post suum Casum ponitur: ut,

*Crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent.* — VIRG.  
*Antiochus Tauro tenus regnare jussus est.* — CIC.

Obs. 5. *Cum* ita subjungitur casibus Pronominum Personalium, et plerumque Relativi, ut ex duobus vocibus una fiat: ut, *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum* pro *quocum, quibuscum*.

A. DE ABLATIVO ABSOLUTO.

§ 155. R. G. — Substantivum et Participium conjunctim ponuntur in Ablativo, quem Absolutum vocant: ut,

*Regibus exactis consules creati sunt.* — LIV.  
*Cæsare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem.* — MART.  
*Pereunte obsequio imperium etiam intercudit.* — TAC.

Obs. 1. Absolutè etiam ponitur Substantivum cum Substantivo vel Adjectivo, ubi intelligitur Participium *existendi*: ut,

*Nil desperandum est, Teucro duce et auspice Teucro.* — HOR.  
*Jamque cinis, vivis fratribus, Hector erat.* — OV.

**Obs. 2.** Aliquando cum Ablativo Participii absolutè ponitur continuata Locutio pro Ablativo Substantivi: ut,

*Excepto quòd non simul esses, cetera lætus.* — HOR.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONE TEMPORIS.

§ 156. **R. G. I.** — Definitio Temporis in Ablativo ponitur, si rogatur *quando* vel *intra quantum tempus*: ut,

*Hieme omnia bella conquiescunt.* — CIC.

*Quicquid est, biduo sciemus.* — CIC.

**Obs. 1.** In definiendo Tempore multus est Præpositionum usus: ut,

*Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit.* — CIC.

*De die.* (id est, *ante finem diei.*) — HOR.

*De nocte.* (id est, *ante finem noctis.*) — HOR.

*De multa nocte.* (id est, *multo ante finem noctis.*) — CIC.

*Sub vesperum.* (id est, *appropinquante vespero.*) — CÆS.

*Diem ex die expecto.* — CIC.

**Obs. 2.** Quanto tempore *abhinc, antè, vel pòst*, interdum per Ablativum, interdum per Accusativum dicitur: ut,

*Comitia jam abhinc triginta diebus erant habita.* — CIC.

*Hoc factum est fermè abhinc biennium.* — PLAUT.

**R. G. II.** — Duratio temporis, ubi rogatur *quamdiu*, frequentius in Accusativo ponitur, rarius in Ablativo: ut,

*Pericles quadraginta annos præfuit Athenis.* — CIC.

*Imperium Assyrii mille trecentis annis tenuere.* — JUST.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS LOCI ET SPATII.

157. **A. R. G. I.** — Locus, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, vel sine Præpositione, vel longè frequentius cum Præpositione *in*: ut,

*Ibam forte Viâ Sacrá.* — HOR.

*In Lemno uxorem ducit.* — TER.

**Obs. 1.** Oppidi nomen, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, modò sit vel tertiæ Declinationis, vel pluralis Numeri: ut,

*Alexander Babylone mortuus est.* — CIC.

*Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis.* — CIC.

**Obs. 2.** Sed in Genitivo ponitur, si et Declinationis est primæ vel secundæ, et singularis Numeri: ut,

*Quid Romæ faciam? mentiri nescio.* — JUV.

*Is habitat Mileti.* — TER.

§ 158. R. G. II.—Locī Nomen a Præpositione ferè regitur post Verbum motûs : ut

*Profectus est in Galliam.*—CÆS.

*Ab Europâ petis Asiam.*—CURTIUS.

Obs. 1. Oppidi nomen, ad quod itur, in Accusativo sine Præpositione ferè ponitur : ut,

*Regulus Carthaginem rediit.*—CIC.

Obs. 2. Oppidi nomen, a quo itur, in Ablativo sine Præpositione ferè ponitur : ut,

*Demaratus fugit Corintho.*—CIC.

Obs. 3. Sed et Oppida sæpè capiunt, et alia Nomina omittunt, Præpositionem post Verba motûs : ut,

*A Brundisio nulla fama venerat.*—CIC.

*Pars Scythiam et rapidum Cretæ veniemus Oaxen.*—VIRG.

§ 159. Obs. 4. *Humus, domus, et rus* oppidorum constructionem imitantur : ut,

*Cadmus spargit humi, mortalia semina, dentes.*—OV.

*Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.*—CIC.

*Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite capellæ.*—VIRG.

*Video rure redeuntem senem.*—TER.

§ 160. B. R. G. I.—Spatium Distantiæ frequentius in Accusativo, interdum in Ablativo ponitur : ut,

*Aberam ab Amano iter unius diei.*—CIC.

*Æsculapii templum quinque millibus passuum ab Epidaurō distat.*—LIV.

R. G. II.—Spatium Progressionis in Accusativo ponitur : ut,

*Millia tum pransi tria repimus.*—HOR.

R. G. III.—Spatium Dimensionis frequentissimè in Accusativo, interdum in Ablativo, interdum in Genitivo ponitur : ut,

*Erant muri Babylonis ducenos pedes alti.*—PLIN.

*Longum sesquipede, latum pede.*—PLIN.

*Areas latas pedum denûm facito.*—COLUMELLA.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM IMPERSONALIUM.

§ 161 R. G. I.—*Libet, licet, liquet*, et pleraque Impersonalia, regunt Dativum : ut,

*Ne libeat tibi quod non licet.*—CIC.

*Sævis inter se convenit ursis.*—JUV.

R. G. II. — *Piget, pudet, pœnitet, tædet* atque *miseret*, regunt Accusativum Personæ, cum Genitivo Rei, vel cum Infinitivo: ut,

*Miseret te aliorum: tui te nec miseret, nec pudet.* — PLAUT  
*Me civitatis morum piget tædetque.* — SALL.

*Eos partim scelerum, partim ineptiarum pœnitet.* — CIC.

*Quem pœnitet peccasse, pœnè est innocens.* — SEN.

R. G. III. — *Delectat, juvat, decet, dedecet*, impersonaliter posita, Accusativum cum Infinitivo postulant: ut,

*Oratorem irasci minimè decet.* — CIC.

*Me juvat in primâ coluisse Heliconâ juventâ.* — PROP.

R. G. IV. — *Oportet* vel Accusativum cum Infinitivo regit, vel Nominativum cum Subjunctivo, Conjunctione *ut* omissâ: ut,

*Legem brevem esse oportet.* — CIC.

*Me ipsum ames oportet, non mea.* — CIC.

R. G. V. — *Pertinet, attinet*, Præpositionem *ad* cum Accusativo sumunt: ut,

*Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari.* — CIC.

*Profundat, perdat, pereat, nihil ad me attinet.* — TER.

R. G. VI. — *Interest et rēfert* Genitivum admittunt: ut,

*Interest omnium rectè facere.* — CIC.

*Rēfert compositionis, quæ quibus anteponas.* — CIC.

Obs. 1. Cum his Verbis junguntur, loco Pronominum Personalium Ablativi feminini, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*, subauditâ voce *re*: ut,

*Et tuâ et meâ interest te valere.* — CIC.

*Quid rēfert meâ, cui serviam?* — PHÆDRUS.

Obs. 2. Adduntur his Verbis Genitivi Æstimationis, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris*: ut,

*Utriusque nostrûm magni interest, ut te videam.* — CIC.

*Hoc non pluris rēfert, quàm si imbrem in cribrum geras.* — PLAUT.

Not. 1. — Verba Neutra in Passivâ Voce impersonaliter usurpantur pro quibuslibet personis, Ablativo personæ cum Præpositione *ab* vel expresso vel intellecto: ut,

*Ab omnibus reclamatum est.* (scil. *omnes reclamârunt.*) — CIC.

*Quid agitur? statur.* (scil. *statuatur a nobis, sive stamus.*) — TER.

Not. 2. — *Cæpit, debet, desinit, potest, solet, incipit*, Infinitivis Impersonalium præposita, ipsa fiunt Impersonalia: ut,

*Pigere eum facti cæpit.* — JUST.

*Perveniri ad summa, nisi ex principiis, non potest.* — QUINT.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM PASSIVORUM.

§ 162. *R. G.* — Activa sententia ferè omnis ita in Passivam converti potest, ut Nominativus Activæ sententiæ fiat in Passivâ Ablativus Agentis.

A. Si Activæ sententiæ Verbum Accusativum habet propioris Objecti, Verbum in Passivâ personale erit, Accusativo Activæ in Nominativum Passivæ transeunte : ut,

ACT. *Egregiè consul rem gessit.*

PASS. *Egregiè ab consule res gesta est.* — LIV.

B. Sin minus, Verbum Passivæ impersonale erit, et vel sine casu stabit, vel eundem casum reget, quem in Activâ regebat : ut,

ACT. *Hostes constanter pugnabant.*

PASS. *Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.* — CÆS.

ACT. *Medicinæ nos indigemus.* — CIC.

PASS. *Medicinæ a nobis indiget.*

ACT. *Mihi isti nocere non possunt.*

PASS. *Mihi ab istis noceri non potest.* — CIC.

ACT. *Litibus et jurgiis supersedere vos æquum est.*

PASS. *Litibus et jurgiis supersederi a vobis æquum est.* — CIC.

Obs. Ubi nihil ambigui esse potest, supprimitur Ablativus Agentis post Impersonalia Passiva : ut,

*Itur in antiquam silvam.* — VIRG.

*Non potest jucundè vivi, nisi cum virtute vivatur.* — CIC.

Not. 1. — Hinc apparet, eosdem casus a Passivis Verbis regi, atque ab Activis, præterquàm unum Accusativum propioris Objecti. Exempla pete supra : B.

Not. 2. — *Vapulò, veneo, exulo, liceo, fio*, cum aliis quibusdam, vi Passivâ construuntur : ut,

*Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit.* — QUINTILIANUS.

*Malo a cive spoliari, quàm ab hoste vñire.* — QUINT.

*Torqueor, infesto ne vir ab hoste cadat.* — OV

## DE CONSTRUCTIONE PARTICIPIORUM.

§ 163. *R. G.* — Participia, quæ Verbi Adjectiva sunt, cùm Substantivis attribuuntur, tum etiam regunt casus Verborum a quibus oriuntur, Activa Activorum, Deponentia Deponentium, Passiva Passivorum.

[(*Obs.* 1.) Participii Præteriti usus in Verbis Passivis atque in Deponentibus accuratè distinguendus est: in Passivis enim Activè usurpari nunquam potest: in Deponentibus plerisque solùm Activè usurpatur: ex Deponentibus tamen Transitivity multa sunt, quorum Participia Præterita tam Passivè quàm Activè significant.

(*Obs.* 2.) *Cænatus, pransus, fesus, juratus, et ausus, Gavisus, solitus*, ceu Deponentia rectè Construimus, licet Activis orientia Verbis; His etiam *exosus, pertæsus*, et adde *perosus*.

(*Obs.* 3.) Participium in *du* Passivè semper significat.]

ut, *Cernimus ire suis parentia finibus astra.* — MANILIUS.  
*Virgo compositos ostentatura capillos.* — AUSONIUS.  
*Nubiferi montes et saxa minantia calo.* — SILIUS.  
*Nil oriturum alias, nil ortum tale fatemur.* — HOR.  
*Duces functos virtute canemus.* — HOR.  
*Ausi omnes immane nefas, ausoque potiti.* — VIRG.  
*Omnia ei quæsita, meditata, evigilata erant.* — GELLIUS  
*Male parta male dilabuntur.* — CIC.  
*Paridem solitus contendere contra.* — VIRG.  
*Oculos exosa viriles.* — OV.  
*Pueris sententias ediscendas damus.* — SEN.  
*Vita data est utenda, datur sine fænore nobis*  
*Mutua, nec certo persoluenda die.* — OV.

## DE INFINITIVO SUBSTANTIVE POSITO, ET DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS GERUNDIORUM, GERUNDIVI, ET SUPINORUM.

§ 164. Infinitivus cum Gerundiis et Supinis Substantivum Verbi efficit.

R. G. I. — Infinitivus Nominativi vel Accusativi loco sæpè ponitur: ut,

*Invidere non cadit in sapientem.* — CIC.  
*Dulce et decorum est pro patriâ mori.* — HOR.  
*Velle suum cuique est.* — PERS.  
*Mori nemo sapiens miserum dixerit.* — CIC.  
*Multum interest inter dare et accipere.* — SEN.

§ 165. R. G. II. — Gerundia pro casibus Infinitivi ponuntur, et ipsa regunt casus suorum Verborum; sed sine casu frequentius apparent.

- A.** Pro Accusativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *dum* post Præpositiones *ad*, *inter*; rariùs post *ob*, *in*, *ante*: ut,  
*Breve tempus satis est longum ad bene vivendum.* — CIC.  
*Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt.* — QUINT.
- B.** Pro Genitivo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *di* post Adjectiva Genitivum regentia, et post multa Substantiva: ut,  
*Epaminondas studiosus erat audiendi.* — NEP.  
*Cupidus sum satisfaciendi reipublicæ.* — CIC.  
*Thucydides omnes dicendi artificio vincit.* — CIC.  
*Scribendi rectè sapere est et principium et fons.* — HOR.
- C.** Pro Dativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *do* post Adjectiva Commodi et Congruentiæ, item post Verba nonnulla: ut,  
*Crassus disserendo par esse non potuit.* — CIC.  
*Epidicum operam quærendo dabo.* — PLAUT.
- D.** Pro Ablativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *do* Causam, Instrumentum, aut Modum significans, vel cum Præpositionibus *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *in*, *cum*: ut,  
*Nihil agendo homines male facere discunt.* — COLUM.  
*P. Scipio Latinè loquendo cuivis erat par.* — CIC.  
*Jovem a juvando nominamus.* — CIC.  
*Multa de bene beatèque vivendo a Platone disputata sunt.* — CIC.

§ 166. *Not.* — Gerundia Activè significant: si verò Transitive sunt, eorum constructio Passivè repræsentari potest, imò frequentius repræsentatur, per Participium in *dus*, quod inde Gerundivi nomen accipit.

**R. G. III.** — Gerundiva constructio ejusmodi est, ut Substantivum in Gerundii casum trahatur, cum quo concordet Gerundivum: ut,

*E terrâ ignem elicimus ad colendos agros.* — CIC.

*Occasio videbatur rerum novandarum.* — LIV.

*M. Antonius fuit triumvir reipublicæ constituendæ.* — NEP.

*Exercenda est memoria ediscendis veterum scriptis.* — CIC.

*Brutus in liberandâ patriâ est interfectus.* — CIC.

§ 167. **R. G. IV.** — Ad Necessitatem Passivè significandam Gerundivum in Neutro Genere impersonaliter adhibetur ita, ut, cum Dativo vel Ablativo Agentis, sive expresso sive intellecto, sui etiam Verbi constructionem habeat: ut,

*Suo cuique judicio utendum est.* — CIC.

*Civium bonis est a vobis consulendum.* — CIC.

*Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.* — JUV.

*Eudoxus opinatur, Chaldæis minimè esse credendum.* — CIC.

*Obs.* In Verbis Transiſivis rarior eſt Impersonalis conſtructio, eſt tamen ubi obviâ fit : ut,

*Æternas quoniam pœnas in morte timendum.* — LUCR.

Gerundivum enim ipſum, Adjectivè poſitum, ſuâpte vi Neceſſitatem exprimit : ut,

*Deus et diligendus eſt et timendus.* — TERTULLIANUS.

*Agnoscenda et amplectenda ſunt beneficia divina.* — S. CYPRIANUS.

§ 168. *R. G. V.* — Supinum in *um*, vi Activâ præditum, ſui Verbi caſum regit; poſtponitur autem, ut Accuſativus, Verbis motum ſignificantibus, ad Actionis finem indicandam : ut,

*Aſt ego non Graiis ſervitum matribus ibo.* — VIRG.

*Coriolanus in Volſcos exſulatum abiit.* — LIV.

*Spectatum veniunt, veniunt ſpectentur ut ipſæ.* — OV.

*Scitatum oracula Phœbi mittimus.* — VIRG.

*Obs.* Ex Supino in *um* et Impersonali Infinitivo *iri* conſicitur Futurum Infinitivi Paſſivi : ut,

*Audierat non datum iri filio ſuo uxorem.* — TER.

*R. G. VI.* — Supinum in *u*, vi Paſſivâ præditum, poſtponitur, ut Ablativus Reſpectûs, tum multis Adjectivis, tum Subſtantivis *fas*, *nefas*, *opus* : ut,

*Nil dictu fœdum viſuque hæc limina tangat*

*Intra quæ puer eſt.* — JUV.

*Ecce (nefas viſu) ſerpens altaribus exit.* — OV.

*Not.* — Supina formam habent Subſtantivorum Quartæ Declinationis

## DE ADJECTIVORUM USU.

§ 169. (a) *Primus* et *extremus*, *poſtremus* et *ultimus*, *imus*, *intimus* et *medius*, ſic *ſummus* et *inſimus*, atque *Ceterus* et *reliquus*, partitivè attribuantur :

ut, *Primâ luce ſummus mons a Labieno tenebatur.* — CÆS.

(b) Neutra Adjectiva utriusque Numeri ponuntur interdum Adverbialiter, præſertim apud poetas : ut,

*Serviet æternum, qui parvo nesciet uti.* — HOR.

*Aſper, acerba tuens, retrò redit.* — VIRG.

(c) Adjectivum sæpè ita attribuitur, ut Anglicè per Adverbium reddi neceſſe ſit :

*Tum tu iſiſte audax muris.* — LIV.

*Cæſtris ſe pavidus tenebat.* — LIV.



§ 170. Superlativum ita usurpatur, ut non modò altissimum omnium gradum, sed etiam præaltum quemcunque designet: ut,  
*Ego sum miserior quàm tu, quæ es miserrima.* — CIC.

Obs. Pronomen *quisque* Superlativo distribuendo adhibetur: ut,  
*Epicureos doctissimus quisque contemnit.* — CIC.  
*Maximæ cuique fortunæ minimè credendum est.* — LIV.

## DE NUMERALIUM USU.

§ 171. A. Cardinalia.

(a) *Unus* non, nisi cum Emphasi, ponitur: ut,  
*Matronæ annum, ut parentem, Brutum luxerunt.* — LIV.  
*Amicitia vis est in eo, ut unus quasi onimus fiat ex pluribus.* — CIC.

Obs. *Unus* sæpè vim habet Superlativam, sæpè Superlativo vim auget: ut,  
*Demosthenes unus eminet inter omnes oratores.* — CIC.  
*P. Nigidius, unus omnium doctissimus.* — CIC.

(b) *Mille* nunc Substantive, nunc Adjectivè, usurpatur  
*millia* Substantivè tantùm: ut,  
*Amplius mille hominum cecidit.* — NEP.  
*Mille greges illi.* — OV.  
*Quattuor millia hominum Capitolium occupavêre.* — LIV

B. Ordinalia in Temporum Rationibus usurpantur: ut,  
*Plato uno et octogesimo anno scribens mortuus est.* — CIC.  
*Octavus annus est ex quo Britanniam vicistis.* — TAC.

Obs. 1. Ad Ordinalia distribuenda usurpatur *quisque*: ut,  
*Quinto quoque anno Sicilia tota censetur.* — CIC.

Obs. 2. *Alter* nunc ut *secundus* nunc ut *unus* e duobus ponitur: ut,  
*Alter ab undecimo tum me jam ceperat annus.* — VIRG  
*Quidquid negat alter, et alter.* — HOR.

C. Distributiva efficiunt ut, quod fiat, cuique e pluribus, vel a quoque, vel quoque tempore factum esse appareat: ut,  
*Militibus quini viceni denarii dati sunt.* — LIV.  
*Verberibus mulcant, sexageni singulos.* — TAC.  
*Ursæ pariunt plurimum quinos.* — PLIN.

§ 172. D. (a) *As Romanus*, sive *Libra*, antiquissimis temporibus æneus erat: unde Genitivus *æris* ellipticè ponitur aliquando, *Assibus* omissis: ut,  
*Millibus æris quinquaginta census est.* — LIV

- (b) Nummus Romanus, qui antiquissimè binos Asses cum Semisse continebat, hinc *Sestertius* (semis-tertius) vocatus, Siglum habebat HS, corruptum ex IIS ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ ): ut,  
*Tiberius populo trecentos nummos viritim dedit.* — Suet.  
*Pretium constitutum est in singulos modios HS terni.* — Cic.
- (c) *Sestertium* continebat mille Sestertios, et ipsum interdum Siglo HS designatur: ut,  
*Ducena sestertia singulis dedit.* — Tac.  
*Candidati HS quingena deposuerunt.* — Cic.

Obs. Adverbia Numeralia, *decies* et quæ majora sunt, ubi numerum Sestertiorum definiunt, suppleri sibi volunt *centena millia*: ut,  
*Vicies HS (Sestertii, Sestertiûm), id est, 2,000,000 Nummûm.*  
*Ter et quadragies HS - - - 4,300,000 Nummûm.*

## DE PRONOMINUM USU.

### § 173. A. Personalia et Possessiva.

- (a) Pronomina Pluralia, *nos, noster*, pro Singularibus *ego, meus*, sæpè ponuntur: ut,  
*Nôris nos, inquit, docti sumus.* — Hor.  
*Ad nostra me studia referam literarum.* — Cic.
- (b) *Sui et suus* Reflexiva sunt, et referuntur ad Subjectum tertiæ Personæ: ut,  
*Senatui populus moderandi sui potestatem tradidit.* — Cic.  
*Themistocles domicilium Magnesiæ sibi constituit.* — Nep.  
*Sentit animus se vi suâ, non alienâ, moveri.* — Cic.  
*Homerum Colophonii civem esse dicunt suum.* — Cic.

Obs. 1. Referri possunt Reflexiva ad Objectum, si ipsa Subjecto appendent, si Subjectum primæ est aut secundæ Personæ, si denique nullus ambiguitati locus est; quod ubi fit, Objecto plerumque postponitur Reflexivum: ut,

*Scipionem impellit ostentatio sui.* — Cæs.  
*Cæsarem sua natura mitiorem facit.* — Cic.  
*Apibus fructum restituo suum.* — Phæd.  
*Suis flammis delete Fidenas.* — Liv.  
*Multa sunt civibus inter se communia.* — Cic.

- (Obs.) Sed Pronominis *quisque* casibus Reflexivum præponitur: ut,  
*Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam.* — Nep.  
*Longiùs aut propiùs mors sua quemque manet.* — Propert.

Obs. 2. Referuntur etiam Reflexiva ad Personam indefinitam: ut,  
*Subsequitur cæcus Amor sui.* — Hor.  
*Deforme est de se prædicare.* — Cic.  
*Difficile est sua vitia nôsse.* — Cic.

**Obs. 3.** Ubi Reflexivo non est locus, usurpatur Demonstrativum, præsertim *is* : ut,

*Aranti Quintio nuntiatum est eum dictatorem factum — Cic.*  
*Condiunt Ægyptii mortuos et eos domi servant. — Cic*  
*Chilius te rogat, et ego ejus rogatu. — Cic.*

**Obs. 4.** Pro Reflexivi casibus, si in his futura est ambiguitas, Pronominis *ipse* casus obliqui ponuntur : ut,

*Cæsar milites incusavit, cur de suâ virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent. — CÆS.*

§ 174. **B. (a)** Pronomina Demonstrativa ita ferè distinguenda sunt *is* est de quo mentio facta est ; *hic* mihi propior ; *iste* alteri propior : *ille* qui ab utroque remotus est.

**Obs. 1.** *Iste* cum contemptu quodam sæpè dicitur : ut,

*Quid sibi isti miseri volunt? — Cic.*

*Errare malo cum Platone, quàm cum istis vera sentire. Cic*

**Obs. 2.** *Ille* famam aut dignitatem nonnunquam innuit : ut,

*Veneramini illum Jovem, custodem hujus urbis. — Cic.*

**Obs. 3.** Cum *hic* et *ille* ad duo anteposita respiciunt, *hic* refertur ad id quod vel posterius in sententiâ, vel prius est in animo narrantis ; *ille* ad id quod vel prius in sententiâ, vel posterius est in animo narrantis : ut,

*Idem et docenti et discenti propositum esse debet, ut ille prodesse velit, hic proficere. — SEN.*

*Melior est certa pax quàm sperata victoria ; hæc in tuâ, illa in deorum manu est. — LIV.*

§ 175. **(b)** *Ipse* est omnium Personarum, et vim auget cum Substantivorum, tum Pronominum, quibus apponi solet : ut,

*Ipse Pater dextrâ molitur fulmina. — VIRG.*

*Tardè nosmet ipsos cognoscimus. — Cic.*

*Sibi ipsa improbitas cogit fieri injuriam. — SYRUS.*

*Me ipse consolor.* (Id est, *nemo alius me consolatur verùm ego* ; ubi emphasis est in Subjecto.) — Cic.

*Me ipsum consolor.* (Id est, *neminem alium ego consolor rerùm me* ; ubi emphasis est in Objecto.)

**Obs. 1.** *Ipse* pro *ultrò* vel *sponte suâ* ponitur aliquando : ut,

*Ipsæ veniunt ad mulctra capellæ. — VIRG.*

**Obs. 2.** *Ipse* præstantissimam Personam interdum significat : ut,

*Pythagorei respondere solebunt ; Ipse dixit* (scil. *Pythagoras*). — Cic.

**Obs. 3.** *Ipse* tempori exactè definiendo adhibetur : ut,

*Athenis decem ipsos dies fui. — Cic.*

*Nunc ipsum sine te esse non possum. — Cic.*

**C.** Pronomina Interrogativa sunt *quis*, *quisnam*, substantivè usurpata ; *qui*, *quinam*, adjectivè : ut,

*Quid præclarum non idem arduum ? — Cic.*

*O qui tuarum, corvæ, pennarum est nitor ? — PHÆD.*

*Quæ fuerit in republicâ tempestas quis nescit ? — Cic.*

§ 176. D. Indefinita, *quis* et *qui*, sequuntur plerumque **Particulas** quales sunt *ne*, *si*, *sive*, *nisi*, *qui*, *quò*, *quàm*, *quum*, *unde*, *ubi*, *ut*, *an*, *num*. *Aliquis* et *aliqui* ponuntur vel sine Particulis, vel cum Particulis, sensu minus indefinito quàm *quis* et *qui*; ut significetur is, quem existere credimus, sed nondum novimus: ut,

*Oppida cæperunt munire et ponere leges,  
Ne quis fur esset, neu latro, neu quis adulter. — HOR.  
Si mula condiderit in quem quis carmina, jus est. — HOR.  
Semper aliqui anquirendi sunt quos diligamus. — CIC.  
Si superest aliquis post funera sensus. — OV.*

§ 177. Obs. 1. *Aliquis* interdum pro *eximio* ponitur: ut,

*Sese aliquem credit. — PERS.*

Obs. 2. *Quidam* definitius est quàm *aliquis*; ut significetur is, quem novimus quidem, sed non nominamus: ut,

*Accurrit quidam, notus mihi nomine tantum. — HOR.*

(Obs.) Hinc cum contemptu ponitur aliquando: ut,

*Habitant hic quædam mulieres pauperculæ. — TER*

## DE CONJUNCTIONIBUS SOCIATIVIS ET DISSOCIATIVIS.

§ 178. Conjunctiones Sociativæ et Dissociativæ similes Casus, Modos, et Tempora connectunt: ut,

*Miratur portas, strepitumque, et strata viarum. — VIRG.  
Virtus nec eripi nec surripi potest. — CIC.  
Amicitia conveniens est ad res vel secundas vel adversas.  
— CIC.*

Nisi alia Constructionis ratio intercedat: ut,

*Pompeius Dyrrachii, Apolloniæ, omnibusque oppidis maritimis  
hiemare constituit. — CÆS.*

Obs. 1. Conjunctiones Sociativæ per Asyndeton omittuntur: ut,  
*Ex cupiditatibus odia, dissidia, seditiones, bella nascuntur. — CIC.*

Obs. 2. Comparationi inserviunt *ac*, *atque*, interdum *et*, *que*, *ut*, post Adjectiva vel Adverbia Similitudinis et Dissimilitudinis:

*Par, dispar, alius, similis, diversus, et idem,  
Proinde, perinde, pro eo, contra, contrarius, æquè,  
Queis aliter, pariter, juxta. secus adde, simulque:*

*ut, Dissimulatio est, quum alia dicuntur ac sentias. — CIC.  
Obitum filiae tuæ pro eo ac debui graviter tuli. — CIC.  
Omnia ferè contra ac dicta sunt evenère. — CIC.  
Pro civium salute æquè ac pro meâ laborari. — CIC.  
Simul atque natum animal est, gaudet voluptate. — CIC.*

## DE VERBI TEMPORIBUS ET MODIS.

§ 179. I. Omnis Actio in Tempore ponitur, vel Præsenti, vel Præterito, vel Futuro : ita verò, ut vel alterâ temporali relatione careat, vel habeat alteram relationem temporalem.

A. Tempora Verbalia, quæ alterâ temporali relatione carent (Aorista, Indefinita, sive Absoluta), sunt :

- a. Præsens Aoristum, *scribo*, Anglicè *I write*.  
 b. Præteritum Aoristum, *scripsi*, — *I wrote*.  
 c. Futurum Aoristum, *scribam*, — *I shall write*.

B. Tempora Verbalia, quæ habent alteram relationem temporalem (Relativa) sunt :

- a) Præsens cum Relatione { (1) Præsenti, *scribo*, Anglicè *I am writing*.  
 (2) Præteritâ, *scripsi*, — *I have written*.  
 (3) Futurâ, *scripturus sum*, — *I am about to write*.  
 (b) Præteritum cum Relatione { (1) Præsenti, *scribebam*, — *I was writing*.  
 (2) Præteritâ, *scripseram*, — *I had written*.  
 (3) Futurâ, *scripturus fui*, — *I was about to write*.  
 (c) Futurum cum Relatione { (1) Præsenti, *scribam*, — *I shall be writing*.  
 (2) Præteritâ, *scripsero*, — *I shall have written*.  
 (3) Futurâ, *scripturus ero*, — *I shall be about to write*.

Obs. 1. Temporum Passivorum similis est ratio.

Obs. 2. Tempus historicum in primis est Præteritum Aoristum. Multus autem in historiâ usus est Præteritorum Relativorum (b). Præsens etiam historicè usurpatur, ut legentium oculis quasi pingatur actio : ut,

*Dimisso senatu, decemviri prodeunt in concionem, abdicantque se magistratu, ingenti hominum lætitiâ.* — LIV.

Obs. 3. In epistolis Romani Præterito ferè utebantur, ubi nos Præsenti utimur : ut,

*Res, quum hæc scribebam, erat in summo discrimine.* — CIC.

Obs. 4. Perfectum eleganter exprimit quæ citò vel more fiunt : ut,

*Terra tremit : fugere feræ.* — VIRG.

*Qui studet optatam cursu contingere metam*

*Multa tulit fecitque puer.* — HOR.

## II. Ex Modis,

A. Indicativus enuntiat absolutè.

B. Imperativus imperat vel hortatur.

Obs. 1. Ne prohibitiva Imperativo vel Subjunctivo jungitur : ut

*Ne qua meis esto dictis mora.* — VIRG.

*Ne conferas culpam in me.* — TER.

**Obs. 2.** Pro Imperativo eleganter ponitur Futurum Simplex: ut,

*Non verbum verbo curabis reddere.* — HOR.

*Si quid acciderit novi, facies ut sciam.* — CIC.

**C.** Coniunctivi triplex usus est.

(a) Potentialis; qui speciem habet vel conditionalem, vel permissivam, vel dubitativam: ut,

*Id arbitror apprimè in vitâ esse utile, ut ne quid nimis:*

*Ita sine invidiâ laudem invenias, et amicos pares.* — TER.

*Si sine pace tuâ atque invito numine Troes*

*Italiam petière, luant peccata, neque illos*

*Juveris auxilio.* — VIRG.

*Eloquar an sileam?* — OV.

**Obs. 1.** Peculiaris usus est Perfecti Potentialis, ut affirmet, neget, aut vetet cum urbanitate et moderatione quâdam: ut,

*Bruti iudicium, pace tuâ dixerim, longè antepono tuo.* — CIC.

*Nil ego contulerim jucundo sanus amico.* — HOR.

**Obs. 2.** Eleganter usurpari solet Futurum Perfectum pro Simpliciter Futuro: ut,

*Ah, si pergis, abiero.* — TER.

*Hoc mihi gratissimum feceris.* — CIC.

(b) Optativus; vel sine Particula, vel post Particulas *ne*, *utinam*, *O si*, *si*, ut pro *utinam*: ut,

*Valeant cives mei, sint incolumes, sint beati!* — CIC.

*Ita vivam ut maximos sumptus facio!* — CIC.

*Ne sim salvus si aliter scribo ac sentio!* — CIC.

*Utinam minùs vitæ cupidi fuissenus.* — CIC.

*O mihi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos!* — VIRG.

*Ut illum dii deæque perdant!* — TER.

(c) Subiunctivus propriè dictus, quia Verbis et Particulis subiungitur.

**D.** Superiùs dictum est (§ 164.) Infinitivum quasi Substantivum Verbi esse, quod vel subjectivè vel objectivè stare posset. Jam verò Simplex Infinitivus

(a) Subjectivè jungitur Verbis Impersonalibus: ut,

*Juvat ire sub umbras.* — VIRG.

*Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.* — HOR.

*Libet semper discere.* — CIC.

(b) Objectivè sequitur multa Verba, et in primis

(1) Verba Voluntatis, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *aveo*, *cupio*, &c.

(2) Verba Potentiæ, Officii, et Consuetudinis, *possum*, *queo*, *nequeo*, *debeo*, *soleo*, *consuesco*, &c.

- (3) Verba Actionis incipiendæ, continuandæ, vel deponendæ, *cæpi, meditor, statuo, disco, doceo, conor, pergo, desino, &c.*, ut,

*Solent diu cogitare qui magna volunt gerere.* — CIC.

*Miserè cupis, inquit, abire.* — HOR.

*Socrates parens philosophiæ jure dici potest.* — CIC

*Intueri solem adversum nequimus.* — CIC.

*Suos quisque debet tueri.* — CIC.

*Gallinas saginare Deliaci cæpere.* — PLIN.

*Statui res gestas Romanorum perscribere.* — SALL.

*Scipiones Saguntum pergunt ire.* — LIV.

*Venæ et arteriæ micare non desinunt.* — CIC.

*Quid sit futurum cras, fuge quærere.* — HOR.

- (4) Prædicativè sequitur Verba Passiva multa, quibus in Activâ subjungitur Accusativus cum Infinitivo, *videor, credor, putor, existimor, dicor, feror, narror, trador memoror, &c.*: ut,

*Videor pios errare per lucos.* — HOR.

*Verus patriæ diceris esse pater.* — MART.

*Aristides unus omnium justissimus fuisse traditur.* — CIC.

- Obs. 1 Post Adjectiva vel Poeticus est Infinitivus, vel Argenteæ, quam vocant, *Ætatis*: ut,

*Et cantare pares et respondere parati.* — VIRG.

*Cereus in vitium flecti, monitoribus asper.* — HOR.

*Agricola fuit peritus obsequi.* — TAC.

- Obs. 2. Futuri Infinitivi, cum Activi, tum Passivi, circumlocutio sæpè fit per *fore ut, futurum esse ut*, cum Subjunctivo: ut,

*Spero fore ut in cælum migremus.* — CIC.

*Dixit futurum esse ut balnea incalescerent.* — TAC.

*Pompeius dixerat, fore uti exercitus Cæsaris pelleretur.* — CÆS.

- Obs. 3. Infinitivus Historicus locum habet in gravi narratione: ut,

*Tum verò ingenti sono cælum strepere, et inter horrendos fragores micare ignes.* — LIV.

- Obs 4. Pro Infinitivo Præsentis eleganter usurpatur Infinitivus Perfecti; ut,

*Commisisse cave quæ mox mutare labores.* — HOR.

*Quiesce erit melius.* — LIV.

## PARS II.

### DE COMPOSITA SENTENTIA.

---

#### § 180. PREFATORY EXCURSION.

- I. Oratio Recta** means any statement, command, or question directly put. *Oratio Obliqua* means any statement, command, or question indirectly put, depending on some verb which stands in *Oratio Recta*. Thus, *Valeo, An valet? Vale*, are *Oratio Recta*: while *Scin' me valere? Nescio an valeat, Cura ut valeas*, contain *Oratio Obliqua*; *me valere* depending on the *Oratio Recta scin'*; *an valeat* on *nescio*; *ut valeas* on *cura*.
- II. A Compound Sentence** consists of two or more **Simple Sentences** connected together; of which one is the Principal, the others either (A) **Coordinate**, or (B) **Subordinate**.
- A. A Coordinate Sentence** is one which does not depend in construction upon the Principal Sentence. Coordinate Sentences are introduced by such particles as *et, que, nec; aut, vel; sed, autem; nam, enim; igitur, itaque; deinde, denique; &c.*: as, *Gyges a nullo videbatur; ipse autem omnia videbat.*—Cic.
- B. A Subordinate Sentence** is one which depends in construction on the Principal Sentence. Subordinate Sentences are of three kinds.—
- (1) **Substantival**: (2) **Adverbial**: (3) **Adjectival**.
- 1) A Substantival Sentence** is one which stands, like a Substantive, as Subject, Object, or in Apposition. Substantival Sentences belong to *Oratio Obliqua*, and are of three kinds: (a) **Oblique Enuntiation**: (b) **Oblique Petition**: (c) **Oblique Interrogation**.
- (a) **The Oblique, or Indirect Enuntiation**, is formed generally by the Accusative with Infinitive Mood, sometimes by *ut* with Subjunctive, or *quod* with Indicative or Subjunctive Mood. Thus, *Amicitia, nisi inter bonos, esse non potest*, is a Direct Enuntiation: whilst *Verum est, amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse*, is a Compound Sentence, containing the Direct Enuntiation, *Verum est*, and the Oblique Enuntiation, *amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse*; which is Substantival, being the Subject of the Verb *est*, and having *verum* for its Predicate. So, *Invidia gloriæ comes est*, is a Direct Enuntiation; but *Est hoc commune vitium, ut invidia gloriæ comes sit*, is a Compound Sentence, containing the Oblique Enuntiation, *ut invidia gloriæ comes sit*, in Apposition to *hoc*, the Subject of *est*, of which *commune vitium* is the Predicate. Again, *Calet ignis* is a Direct Enuntiation: *Sentimus calere ignem* a Compound Sentence, having the Direct Enuntiation *sentimus*, and the Oblique, *calere ignem*, which is the Object of *sentimus*.
- (b) **The Oblique Petition** is formed by the Subjunctive Mood, with



or without the Conjunction *ut* or *ne*, or by the Infinitive; following Verbs of *desire*, *command*, *endeavour*, &c. Thus *Mane in sententiâ* is a Direct Petition, which may be expressed in a Compound Sentence by *Oro ut maneas in sententiâ*, *Oro maneas in sententiâ*, or *Oro te manere in sententiâ*.

- (e) The Oblique Interrogation is formed by dependent Interrogatives, whether Pronouns or Particles, governing a Subjunctive Mood. Thus *Quis est?* is a Direct Interrogation: but *Nescio quis sit*, *incertum est quis sit*, are Compound Sentences, containing the Oblique Interrogation, *quis sit*, which is the Object of *nescio*, and the Subject of *est*.
- (2) An Adverbial Sentence is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adverb, answering the questions, *how*, *why*, *when*, &c. Adverbial Sentences are formed by Conjunctions, and are: (a) Consecutive (*so that*); (b) Final (*in order that*); (c) Causal (*because since*); (d) Temporal (*when, while, until, &c.*); (e) Conditional (*if, unless*); (f) Concessive (*although, whereas*); (g) Comparative (*as if, as though, &c.*).
- (3) An Adjectival Sentence is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adjective or Epithet. It is formed by the Relative Pronoun *qui*, or by a Relative Particle.

The Relative Pronoun *qui quæ quod* (with its Particles) has great influence in Latin Construction. It is of all persons, and may be used compendiously as a substitute for the union of a Conjunction with a Personal Pronoun. Hence it forms Coordinate Sentences when used for *et ego, et tu, et is, &c.*; for *ego autem, tu autem, is autem, &c.*; for *ego igitur, tu igitur, is igitur, &c.*; for *ego enim, tu enim, is enim, &c.* And it forms Subordinate Sentences when used for *ut ego, ut tu, ut is, &c.*; for *quia ego, quia tu, quia is, &c.*; for *si ego, si tu, si is, &c.*; for *etsi ego, etsi tu, etsi is, &c.*

*Note.* — It is to be observed that Subordinate Sentences may have others subordinate to them, in relation to which they are therefore principal clauses. From what has been said of Substantival Sentences, it appears that such principal clauses of Oratio Obliqua are, mostly, either in the Infinitive or in the Subjunctive Mood. Its subordinate clauses generally take the Subjunctive; as may be seen in the subjoined example: —

**Oratio Recta.** — *Ars earum rerum est, quæ sciuntur; oratoris autem omnis actio opinionibus, non scientiâ continetur: nam et apud eos dicimus, qui nesciunt, et cu dicimus, quæ nescimus ipsi.* — CIC.

**Oratio Obliqua.** — (*Antonius apud Ciceronem docet:*) *Artem earum rerum esse, quæ sciantur; oratoris autem omnem actionem opinione, non scientiâ, contineri: quia et apud eos dicat, qui nesciant, et ipse dicat, quod nesciat.* — QUINT.

**Oratio Recta** may be virtually oblique, when it contains the statement of an opinion or thought. Thus, the sentence, *Themistocles noctu ambulabat, quod somnum capere non posset*, implies that Themistocles alleged inability to sleep as the reason why he walked by night

## DE SENTENTIIS SUBSTANTIVALIBUS.

## § 181 (A) Enuntiatio Obliqua.

R. G. — Infinitivus cum Accusativo sui Subjecti

(a) Subjectivè jungitur Copulæ *est* et Verbis Impersonalibus: *ut*,

*Facinus est vinciri civem Romanum.* — CIC.

*Omnibus bonis expedit salvam esse rempublicam.* — CIC.

*Constat leges ad salutem civium inventas esse.* — CIC.

(b) Objectivè jungitur multis Verbis, in quibus inest *sentendi* aut *declarandi* vis: *ut*,

*Pompeios desedissee terræ motu audivimus.* — SEN.

*Xenophanes ait lunam habitari.* — CIC.

(c) Appositionem facit aliquando: *ut*,

*Illud temerè dictum, sapientes omnes esse bonos.* — CIC.

Obs. 1. Pro hoc Infinitivo sæpè ponitur *ut* cum Subjunctivo: *ut*

*Reliquum est ut officiis certemus inter nos.* — CIC.

*Expedit ut civitates sua jura habeant.* — JUST.

*Illud meâ refert, te ut videam.* — CIC.

Sæpè *quod* cum Indicativo, ni poscatur Subjunctivus: *ut*,

*Gratum est quod patriæ civem populoque dedisti.* — JUV.

*Hoc præstamus maxime feris, quod loquimur.* — CIC.

*Mitto quod omnes meas tempestates subieris.* — CIC.

(Obs.) *Oportet* et *necesse est*, Subjunctivum regentia, *ut* omittunt *ut*,

*Philosophiæ servias oportet, ut liber sis.* — CIC.

*Virtus voluptatis aditus intercludat necesse est.* — CIC

Obs. 2. *Sperandi* et *pollicendi* Verba malunt Infinitivum Futuri: *ut*,

*Sperabam id me asscuturum.* — CIC.

*Pollicebatur pecuniam se esse redditurum.* — CIC.

Obs. 3. Post *metuendi* formulas regunt Subjunctivum *ne* et *ut* pro *ne non*: *ut*,

*Verendum est ne fames in urbe sit.* — CIC.

*O puer, ut sis vitalis metuo.* — HOR.

Obs. 4. Indignationem notat Infinitivus Interrogans: *ut*,

*Mene incepto desistere victam?* — VIRG.

Vel ejus vice *ut* cum Subjunctivo: *ut*,

*Te ut ulla res frangat?* — CIC.

## § 182. (B) Petitio Obliqua.

R. G. — *Optandi, rogandi, hortandi, imperandi, permittendi, curandi, enitendi, efficiendi*, similibusque formulis additur Subjunctivus cum Conjunctionibus *ut*, *ne*, vel omissâ aliquando Conjunctione:

(a) Subjectivè: *ut*,

*Postulatur ab amico ut sit sincerus.* — CIC.

*Cavendum est ne assentatori patefacias aures.* — CIC.

*Hæc omnia prætermittas licet.* — CIC.

(b) Objectivè: ut,

*Immortalia ne speres monet annus.* — HOR.

*Potes efficere ut malè moriar, ne moriar non potes.* — PLIN

*Sine te exorem, mi pater.* — TER.

(c) Per Appositionem: ut,

*Hoc te rogo, ne demittas animum.* — CIC.

*Vetus est lex illa, ut idem amici velint.* — CIC.

Obs. Post multa ex his Verbis æquè placet Infinitiva constructio: ut

*Pompeius rem ad arma deduci studebat.* — CÆS.

*Jubet nos Pythius Apollo noscere nosmet ipsos.* — CIC.

### § 183. (C) Interrogatio Obliqua.

R. G. — Pronominibus et Particulis interrogandi, subordinatè positis, Subjunctivus additur:

(a) Subjectivè: ut,

*In beneficio videndum est, quando et cui et quemadmodum et quare demus.* — CIC.

(b) Objectivè: ut,

*Tu quotus esse velis rescribe.* — HOR.

*Quis est, quin cernat, quanta vis sit in sensibus?* — CIC.

(c) Per Appositionem: ut,

*Ipse quis sit, utrum sit, an non sit, id quoque nescit.*

CATULL.

Not. — Talia sunt:

*Quis, quantus, qualis, qui, quot, quotus, unde, ubi, quando,*

*Quàm, quàmobrem, quare, cur, quomodò, num, nē, ut, an, utrum.*

## DE SENTENTIIS ADVERBIALIBUS.

### § 184. (A) Consecutivæ Sententiæ.

R. G. — *Ut, ut non, ut nihil, ut nullus, ut nemo*, consecutive sensu, Subjunctivum postulant.

(a) Post Demonstrativa *sic, ita, eo, tam, adeo, tot, tantus, tunc, is, hic, huc*: ut,

*Quis tam demens est ut suâ voluntate mæreat?* — CIC.

*Titus ita facilis fuit ut nulli quidquam negaret.* — EUTR.

*Tantus terror fuit ut egredi nemo sit ausus.* — NEP.

*Decori vis ea est ut ab honesto non queat separari.* — CIC.

(b) Suppresso Demonstrativo: ut,

*Arboribus consita Italia est, ut tota pomarium videatur.*  
— VARRO.

(c) Post Comparativum et *quàm*: ut,

*Isocrates majore ingenio est quàm ut cum Lysiâ comparatur.* — CIC.

*Obs. Tantum abest* duas sententias sibi subordinatas habet, primam Substantivalem, alteram Adverbialem: ut,

*Tantum abest ut nostra miremur, ut nobis non satisfaciat ipse Demosthenes.* — CIC.

§ 185. (B) Finales Sententiæ.

*R. G.* — *Ut, ne, ut ne*, finali sensu, Subjunctivum postulant: ut,  
*Ut jugulent homines, surgunt de nocte latrones.* — JUV.  
*Legum idcirco servi sumus, ut liberi esse possimus.* — CIC.  
*Ne vana urbis magnitudo sit, Romulus asylum aperit.* — LIV.  
*Scipio rus abiit, ne ad causam dicendam adesset.* — CIC.  
*Exercenda est animadversio ut ne quid temere agamus.*  
 — CIC.

§ 186. (C) Causales Sententiæ.

*R. G. I.* — *Quum*, causali sensu, Subjunctivum plerumque regit; sed interdum Indicativum: ut,  
*Quæ quum ita sint, in alia omnia abeo.* — CIC.  
*Quum in Matii familiaritatem venisti, gaudeo.* — CIC.  
*R. G. II.* — *Quòd, quando, quia, quandoquidem, quoniam, siquidemque*, causali sensu, Indicativo gaudent, nisi opus sit Subjunctivo: ut,  
*Adsunt propterea quòd officium sequuntur.* — CIC  
*Tacent, quia periculum metuunt.* — CIC.  
*Dicite, quandoquidem in molli consedimus herbâ.* — VIRG.  
*Quoniam jam nox est, discedite.* — LIV.

§ 187. (D) Temporales Sententiæ.

*R. G. I.* — *Quum, quando, quoties, simul, ut, simul atque, ubi postquam*, temporales, Indicativo gaudent: *quum* sæpe Subjunctivo, post et ante Tempus Præteritum: ut,  
*Tua res agitur, paries quum proximus ardet.* — HOR.  
*Ut veni coram, non sum permulta locutus.* — HOR.  
*Miserum est fodere, ubi sitis fauces tenet.* — PLAUT.  
*Zenonem, quum Athenis essem, audiebam frequenter.* — CIC.  
*Decessit Agesilaus, quum in portum venisset.* — NEP.  
*R. G. II.* — *Dum, donec, quoad, antequam, priusquam*, pro sententiâ loci, nunc Indicativum, nunc Subjunctivum capiunt: ut,  
*Homines, dum docent, discunt.* — SEN.  
*Expectate dum consul fiat Cæso.* — LIV.  
*Cato, quoad vixit, virtutum laude crevit.* — NEP.  
*Opprime quoad scire possis, quid tibi agendum sit.* — CIC  
*Antequam opprimit lux, erumpamus.* — LIV.  
*Providentia est, per quam animus aliquid videt, antequam factum sit.* — CIC.

## § 188. (E) Conditionales Sententiæ.

R. G. I. — *Si, nisi*, ubi conditio, ut incerta, proponitur, Coniunctivo præmittuntur; aliàs, Indicativo: ut,

*Si vales, bene est.* — CIC.

*Sincerum est nisi vas, quodcunque infundis acescit.* — HOR.

*Si quod erat grande vas, læti afferebant.* — CIC.

*Si noles sanus, curres hydropicus.* — HOR.

*Sume, catelle: negat: si non des, optet.* — HOR.

*Si foret in terris, rideret Democritus.* — HOR.

*Si id scissem, nunquam huc tulissem pedem.* — TER.

*Si Atheniensis esses, clarus nunquam fuisses.* — CIC.

R. G. II. — *Modò, dum, dummodo, modò ut*, conditionali sensu, Subiunctivum regunt: ut,

*Manent ingenia senibus, modò permaneat industria.* — CIC.

*Caligula jactabat illud: Oderint dum metuant.* — SUET.

*Scies, modò ut tacere possis.* — TER.

## § 189. (F) Concessivæ Sententiæ.

R. G. I. — *Etsi, tametsi, etiamsi*, pro re natâ nunc Indicativum nunc Coniunctivum capiunt: ut,

*Etsi culpâ tenemur, scelere liberati sumus.* — CIC.

*Obtundis, tametsi intelligo.* — TER.

*Etiamsi non is esset Cæsar qui est, tamen ornandus videretur.* — CIC.

R. G. II. — *Quamquam, utut*, Indicativo gaudent: ut,

*Quamquam festinas, non est mora longa.* — HOR.

*Utut erga me est meritis, mihi cordi est tamen.* — PLAUT.

R. G. III. — *Quamvis, quantumvis, licet, ut, quum, ne*, concessivo sensu, Subiunctivum regunt: ut,

*Quod turpe est, quamvis lateat, non fiet honestum.* — CIC.

*Licet vitium sit ambitio, causa virtutum est.* — SEN.

*Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.* — OV.

*Phocion fuit pauper, quum divitissimus esse posset.* — NEP.

*Ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certè est.* — CIC.

Obs. 1. *Quamvis* cum Indicativo reperitur apud historicos et poetas: ut,

*Quamvis ingenio non valet, arte valet.* — OV.

Obs. 2. Eleganter excidunt Coniunctiones *si, etsi*: ut,

*Partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes.* — VIRG.

*Naturam expellas furcâ, tamen usque recurret.* — HOR.

## § 190. (G) Comparativæ Sententiæ.

R. G. — Comparativæ Particulæ *quasi, tanquam, cu, velut*, cum similibus, Subiunctivum regunt: ut,

*Parvi primo ortu jacent, tanquam sine animo sint.* — CIC.

*Tum verò attoniti, ceu templo irrumperet hostis*

*Exsiluere patres.* — SIL.

## DE SENTENTIIS ADJECTIVALIBUS.

- § 191. *R. G. I.*—Relativum, *qui quæ quod*, Indicativo jungitur, nisi opus sit Subjunctivo : ut,  
*Quis fuit, horrendos primus qui protulit enses ?* — *Ov.*  
*Obs.* Itidem Correlativa *qualis, quantus, quot* ; et Universalia *quis, quis, quicumque, quocumque*, cum similibus.
- § 192. *R. G. II.*—*Qui*, causali sensu, Subjunctivo gaudet : ut,  
*Miseret tui me, qui hunc facias inimicum tibi.* — *TER.*  
*Obs.* Ita *non quo*, pro *non quod* : ut,  
*Non quo quenquam plus animum eo feci.* — *TER.*  
*Not.* — Similiter construitur *non quin* pro *non quia non*.
- § 193. *R. G. III.*—*Qui*, concessivo sensu, Subjunctivo gaudet : ut,  
*Egomet, qui leviter Græcas literas attigissem, tamen Athenis commoratus sum.* — *CIC.*
- § 194. *R. G. IV.*—*Qui*, finali sensu, Subjunctivum regit : ut,  
*Litteras misi, quibus et placarem eum et monerem.* — *CIC.*  
*Obs.* Hinc *quo* pro *ut eo* Subjunctivum regit : ut,  
*Ager novatur, quo meliores fetus edat.* — *CIC.*
- § 195. *R. G. V.*—*Qui*, consecutivo sensu, Subjunctivum regit :
- (a) Post Demonstrativa, *talis, is* pro *talis, tantus, tam, adeo*, similia : ut,  
*Non is sum qui his rebus delecter.* — *CIC.*  
*Nihil tanti est quo vendamus libertatem.* — *CIC.*
  - (b) Omisso Demonstrativo : ut,  
*Audies ex me quod non omnes probent.* — *CIC.*
  - (c) Post Comparativum et *quàm* : ut,  
*Majora deliquerant quàm quibus ignosci posset.* — *LIV.*
  - (d) Post *dignus, indignus, idoneus, aptus* : ut,  
*Dignus est qui imperet.* — *CIC.*
  - (e) Ubicunque significat *talis ut* : sic enim construitur
    - (1) Post *est, sunt, invenio, reperiō, habeo*, similia : ut,  
*Est qui vinci possit.* — *HOR.*  
*Inventus est qui flammis imponeret manum.* — *LIV.*  
*Habes qui assideat, fomenta paret.* — *HOR.*
    - (2) Post *aliquis, pauci, multi, solus*, similia, indefinitè posita : ut,  
*Est aliquid quod non oporteat, etiamsi licet.* — *CIC.*  
*Solus es, Cai Cæsar, cujus in victoriâ nemo ceciderit nisi armatus.* — *CIC.*

- (3) Post *nemo, nihil, nullus*, similia, item post Interrogativa negationem expectantia : ut,

*Nihil est quod tam deceat quàm constantia.* — CIC.

*Quis est qui non oderit proterviam pueritiam?* — CIC.

- Obs. Relativæ Particulæ *quo, quâ, quomodo, quare, ubi, unde, cur*, cum similibus, iisdem ferè regulis, quibus Relativum *qui quæ quod*, Indicativum vel Subjunctivum postulant : ut,

*Perge quo cæpisti.* — CIC.

*Digna res est ubi nervos intendas.* — TER.

*Erat nihil cur properato opus esset.* — CIC.

- § 196. Not. 1. *Quominus*, post Verba quæ quid *impedimenti* continent, Subjunctivum regit inceptæ, sed *impeditæ* actionis : ut,

*Senectus non impedit quominus litteris utamur* — CIC.

*Non recusavit quominus pœnam subiret.* — NEP.

*Per Afranium stetit quominus dimicaretur.* — CÆS.

- (Obs.) *Ne* post eadem Verba prohibet actionem : ut,

*Pontus erat vetitus ne mergeret æquore terram.* — MANIL.

*Sulpicius intercesserat ne exules reducerentur.* — CIC.

- Not. 2. *Quin* (qui-ne, quî-ne) Subjunctivum regit :

- (a) Pro *qui non* post Negativa et Interrogativa : ut,

*Nihil est quin male narrando possit depravari.* — TER.

*Nullum intermisi diem quin scriberem.* — CIC.

*Quis fundum colit, quin sues habeat?* — VARRO.

- (b) Pro *quodd non, ut non*, post negationem vel interrogationem *dubitationis, abstinentiæ, impedimenti, causæ*, et similium : ut,

*Non dubito quin fuerint ante Homerum poeta.* — CIC.

*Nec requies quin mox pomis exuberet annus.* — VIRG.

*Facere non possum quin quotidie ad te mittam.* — CIC.

*Prorsus nihil abest quin sim miserrimus.* — CIC.

*Quin ad diem decedam nulla causa est.* — CIC.

*Quis dubitet quin in virtute divitiæ positæ sint?* — CIC.

*Quid est causæ quin decemviri coloniam in Juniculum possint deducere?* — LIV.

## DE ALIIS QUIBUSDAM PARTICULIS.

- § 197 (A) *Nedum* Subjunctivo jungitur : ut,

*Mortalia facta peribunt,*

*Nedum sermonum stet honos et gratia viva.* — HOR.

- (B) *Ne*...*quidem* negativam vim augeat, interpositâ *inter ne* et *quidem* eâ parte sententiæ, in quâ fit emphasis :

- (a) Præcedente Verbo cum alterâ Negativâ : ut,

*Non prætereundum est ne id quidem.* — CIC

- (b) Sequentē Verbo sine alterâ Negativâ *ut*,  
*Ne ad Catonem quidem provocabo.* — CIC
- C. (a) *Ně*, *an*, interrogativæ particulæ, dubitanter interrogant: *num* responsionem expectat negativam: *nonne*, *annon* affirmativam: *ut*,  
*Qualis est tua mens? potesne dicere?* — CIC.  
*An tu me tristem esse putas?* — PLAUT.  
*Num negare audes?* — CIC.  
*Canis nonne similis lupo est?* — CIC.
- (b) In Duplici Interrogatione sunt hæ varietates.
1. *Utrum* sequente *an*: *ut*,  
*Hæc utrum abundantis an egentis signa sunt?* — CIC.
  2. *Num* sequente *an*: *ut*,  
*Num duas habetis patrias an est illa patria communis?* — CIC.
  3. *Ně* sequente *an*: *ut*,  
*Romamne venio an hic maneo an Arpinum fugio?* — CIC.
  4. Particula omissa, sequente *an* aut *ně*: *ut*  
*Interrogatur tria pauca sint anne multa?* — CIC.  
*Quæram justum sit necne poëma?* — HOR.

## DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS ORATIONIS OBLIQUÆ.

- § 198. R. G. I. — Sententia, quæ subordinatur Orationi Obliquæ, sive Relativo sive Conjunctione intercedente, Subjunctivum exigit: *ut*,  
*Ais, quoniam sit natura mortalis, immortalem etiam esse oportere.* — CIC.  
*Scito me, postquam in urbem venerim, redisse cum libris in gratiam.* — CIC.  
*Fateor me oratorem, si modò sim, ex Academiæ spatiis exstitisse.* — CIC.  
*Simile veri est, non ex iisdem semper populis exercitus scriptos, quanquam eadem semper gens bellum intulerit.* — LIV.  
*Sapientissimum esse dicunt eum, cui, quod opus sit, ipse veniat in mentem; propius accedere illum, qui alterius bene inventis obtemperet.* — CIC.  
*Cæsar ad me scripsit, gratissimum sibi esse quod quieverim.* — CIC.



199. R. G. II.—Sententia Subordinata, quæ opinionem cujuscumque vel cogitationem indicat, sive Relativo sive Conjunctione intercedente, Subjunctivum exigit: ut,

*Laudat Africanum Panætius quòd fuerit abstinens.*—CIC.

*Alium rogantes regem misère ad Jovem,*

*Inutilis quoniam esset qui fuerat datus.*—PHÆDR.

*Sapiens non dubitat, si ita melius sit, migrare de vitâ.*—CIC.

*Darius ejus pontis, dum ipse abesset, custodes reliquit.*—NEP.

*Etsi nihil habeat in se gloria, cur expetatur, tamen virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur.*—CIC.

*In Hispaniâ prorogatum veteribus imperatoribus est imperium cum exercitibus quos haberent.*—LIV.

*Quum abessem, quotiescunque patria in mentem veniret, hæc omnia occurrebant, colles, campique, et Tiberis, et hoc cælum, sub quo natus educatusque essem.*—LIV.

200. R. G. III.—Relativum vel Conjectio, quum subordinatur Subjunctivo, Subjunctivum regit: ut,

*Tanta est caritas patriæ, ut vestris etiam legionibus sanctus essem, quòd eum a me servatum esse meminissent.*—CIC.

*Equidem illud molior, ut mihi Cæsar concedat, ut absim quum aliquid in senatu contra Cnæum agatur.*—CIC.

*Erat in Hortensio memoria tanta, ut, quæ secum commentatus esset, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, quibus cogitavisset.*—CIC.

- Not.—Oratio Obliqua longè excurrit apud Historicos; Enuntiationes in primis, tum etiam his adpersæ Petitiones Interrogationesque: ut,

*Orat Tarquinius Veientes, ne se extorrem egentem ex tanto modò regno cum liberis adolescentibus ante oculos suos perire sinerent: alios peregrè in regnum Romam accitos; se regem, argentem bello Romanum imperium, a proximis sceleratâ conjuratione pulsum: . . . patriam se regnumque suum repetere, et persequi ingratos cives velle: ferrent opem, adjuvarent; suas quoque veteres injurias ultum irent, toties cæsas legiones, agrum ademptum.*—LIV.

*Docebat Cæsar, quàm veteres quàmque justæ causæ necessitudinis ipsis cum Æduis intercederent; quæ senatûs consulta, quoties, quàmque honorifica in eos facta essent; ut omni tempore totius Galliæ principatum Ædui tenuissent, prius etiam quàm nostram amicitiam appetissent: populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modò sui nihil deperdere, sed gratiâ, dignitate, honore arctiores relinquerent: quod verò ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id eis eripi quis puti posset?*—CÆS.

# PROSODIÆ COMPENDIUM.

§ 201. De Syllabarum quantitate disserit,  
Et de Metrorum legibus, Prosodia.

## DE SYLLABARUM QUANTITATE.

### DEFINITIONES.

1. *Mensura Tempus eloquendæ est syllabæ:*  
Quod et vocatur *Quantitas*.  
*Obs.* Vocalis observetur : in vocalium  
Stat quantitate syllabarum quantitas.
- 2 *Longi (-) brevisque (·) Temporis notas habes.*  
*Obs.* 1. Singulis longis brevibusque binis  
Par est eademque potestas.  
*Obs.* 2. *Communis* audit illa, quæ interdum brevis,  
Et rursus eadem longa vocalis sonat.  
*Not.* — *H* non habetur consonans, nullamque vim  
Exercet in Prosodiâ.

### REGULÆ QUANTITATIS GENERALES.

§ 202. *R. G. I.* — Omnis Diphthongus contractaque Syllaba longa est :

*Ut praēs, heū, gaūdens : cōāgo fit cōgo, nīhīl nīl ;*  
*Pro bōvibus bōbus ; mōmentum pro mōvimentum.*

*Obs.* At tu vocali *præeuntem* corripies *præ*.

§ 203. *R. G. II.* — Dant Derivatis proprium Primaria tempus :  
Sic *sālīceta sālīx, pōmum pōmaria* format.

*Obs.* Fit tamen in multis aliter : sic *āret ārena,*  
Sic *hūmanus hōmo* est ; sic *lūcet parva lūcerna.*

*R. G. III.* — Nec non Simplicium tempus Composta sequuntur  
A *pūto* sic *repūto*, sic a *mēmor immēmor* exstat.

*Obs.* Sunt excepta tamen : sic *nūbo pronūba* format.

§ 204 *R. G. IV.* — Prævia vocali vocalis corripitur : ceu  
*Principūm, prōhibe :*

*Obs.* 1 Sed multa hinc excipe Græca : ut,  
*Chāonis, Ænēas, Clāo, Myrtōus, Enjō.*

- Obs. 2.* *A* longam Primæ priscus Genitivus habebit :  
*Terrāi, aulāi* ; sic format Quinta, *diēi* :  
 Scribe tamen *rēi* atque *rēi, fidēi* atque *fidēi*.
- Obs. 3.* Longa Vocativo est penultima vocis in *aius*,  
 Aut *eius* ; *Cāi, Pompēi*, hâc lege sonantur.
- Obs. 4.* *I* Verbi *fīo* longa est, nisi cūm comes est *er* ;  
 “ *Omnia nunc fient, fieri quæ posse negabam.* ”
- Obs. 5.* *I* dat communem Genitivus in *ius* : ut *ille*  
*Illius illiusque* facit : sic *ius iusque*  
*Totus et unus* habent, *ipse isteque, nullus et ullus* :  
*Alterius* semper breviat ; producit *alius*.
- Obs. 6.* Nunc *Diana* feras agit, nunc *dīa Diana*.  
 Sic *ēhe* vel *ōhe* ; sed semper dicimus *ēheu*.

§ 205. *R. G. V.*—Longa situ vocalis erit, quam bina sequetur  
 Consona ; sic, *pāllōr trīstis* : seu voce in eādē  
*J* subit, *x*, aut *z* ; sic, *Ajāx, āxis, Amāzon*.

*Obs.* Excipe *quadrijugus, bijugus*, quæ corripunt *i*.

*Not.* — Vocalis, vi curta suâ, communis erit, si  
 Consona postponens liquidam sibi muta sequetur :  
 Sic rectè *lugūbre* melos vel *lugūbre* dices :  
*Dūplex* sive *dūplex, Tēcmessam* sive *Tēcmessam*.

*Obs. 1.)* *N* post *g* longam dat semper : ut *āgnus* et *ignis*.  
 Nec minus *m* post *g* ; *tēgmen* quod monstrat et *āgmen*.

(*Obs. 2.)* Syllaba si liquidam dividerit altera mutâ,  
 Longa prior semper : quod *sūb-ruit, āb-lue*, monstrant

§ 206. *R. G. VI.* — Perfecti brevis est geminati syllaba prima :  
 Ut, *pēpuli, dīdīci, pūpugi, cēcīdi*, atque *cēcīdi*.

*R. G. VII.* — Efficiunt primam Perfecta disyllaba longam,  
 Ut, *vidi, lēgi, mōvi*que. Sed excipis octo :  
*Bībi, dēdi, fūi, fidī,*  
*Stēti, stīti, tūli, scīdi*.

*G. VIII.* — Primam producuntque disyllaba ritè Supina,  
 Ut, *visum, lōtum, mōtum*que. Sed excipis octo :  
*Itum, cītum, dātum, litum,*  
*Rātum, rūtum, sātum, sītum*.



## DE QUANTITATE SYLLABARUM FINALIUM.

§ 207. *R. I.* — Pleraque produces Monosyllaba, qualia *mē, vēr*.

*Obs.* Corripuntur in *l, b, d, t*, ut, *vēl, sūb, id, ēt, stāt* :  
*Es* cum compositis, ut *adēs* : *quē, vē*, quumque rogat, *nē*.  
*Fēc, nēc, ān, īn, fēr, pēr, tēr, vēr, cōr, quis, bis, is* et *cis*.

§ 208. *R. II.*—Producuntur in *A*: ceu *frustrā, intrāque, parāque*.

*Obs.* Sed casus rectos et quartos excipe: quales,  
*Carminā Musā* canit; resonant *Amaryllidā* sylvæ.  
 Atque vocativos plerosque, ut *Orestā, Thyestā*:  
*Ejā, itā* particulas, cumque his *quā, quæ* breviant *a*.

§ 209. *R. III.* — Corripiuntur in *E*: ceu *legē timetē carerē*.

*Obs.* *E* longam Primæ casus Quintæque requirunt,  
 Ut *Thisbē, speciē*: quæ derivantur ab illis,  
 Ut *quarē* atque *hodiē*: contractaque, qualia *Tempē*:  
 Verba in eo primi numeri Mandantia, ut *audē*:  
 (Sed *cavē* sive *cavē* scribendi est æqua potestas)  
 Ex Adjectivis Adverbia ducta Secundæ,  
 Ut *miserē*: jungantur *ohē, fermēque, ferēque*.

§ 210. *R. IV.* — Producuntur in *I*: ceu *dicī, orbīque, dolīque*.

*Obs.* Attamen hinc multos Græcorum deme Dativos  
 Atque Vocativos, ut *Thyrsidī, Phyllidī, Chlorī*:  
*Sicubī, necubī* deme, *nisi* et *quasi*, queis brevis est *i*.  
 (At *mihi, ubi, tibi, ibi, sibi*, communem faciunt *i*.)

§ 211. *R. V.* — Producuntur in *O*: ceu *virgō, ultrōque, juvōque*

*Obs.* At *putō* finalem, *sciō, nesciō*, corripiunt *O*:  
 Adde *modō* et compōsta, *duō, octō, egō*, queis *citō* junge.  
*O* proprium claudens nomen communis habetur,  
 Ut *Matho*, (sed longa est in Græcis semper, ut *Argō*).  
 Quædam Flaccus habet communia, plurima Naso,  
 Plura poetarum corruptior addidit ætas.

*R. VI.* — Producuntur in *U*: sic *tū, dictūque, diūque*.

*R. VII.* — Corripiuntur in *Y*: sic dant *chelī, Tiphī, poe'æ*.

212. *R. VIII.* — In *C* producuntur, ut *illīc* (excipe *donēc*).

*R. IX.* — Corripe in *L, D, T*: sic *Hannibāl, illūd, amavīt*.

*R. X.* — Corripiuntur in *N*: ceu *culmēn*.

(At excipe Græca  
 Multa, ut *Hymēn, Acrōn*, vocali prædita longā.)

*R. XI.* — Corripiuntur in *R*: ceu *calcār, amabitūr, Hectōr*.

*Obs.* Græca tamen, *cratēr, æthēr*, producis, et *æēr*.

§ 213. *R. XII.* — Producuntur in *As*: ut *terrās*

(Excipe Græca  
 Queis Genitivus *-ādis*, ceu *Pallās*: et excipe casus  
 Crescentūm quartos, ceu *lampadās*: his *andās* adde.

R. XIII. — Produciuntur in *Es*, ut *sedēs* atque *riderēs*.

Obs. Exciipienda tamen quæ Græci corripiunt; ut  
*Troadēs* : excipias etiam *penēs*, excipiasque  
 Crescentis brevis est penultima queis Genitivi,  
 Ut *seqēs* (at *pariēs* semper produciuntur, atque  
*Pēs* cum compositis : *abiēs*, *ariēs*que, *Cerēs*que).

§ 214. R. XIV. Corripiuntur in *Is* : ceu *dicerīs*, *utilīs*, *enīs*.

Obs. Obliqui casus plurales excipiuntur,  
 Ut *terrīs*, *vobīs* : etiam persona secunda  
 In primo numero Quartæ Præsentis, ut *audīs* :  
 Composita a *vīs*, *sīs* : *malīs*, *nolīs*que, *velīs*que.  
 (Sed *ris* Præteriti et persona secunda Futuri  
 Activæ Vocis rectè communis habetur ;  
*Feceris*, *addideris*, *tuleris*.) Et nomina produc  
 Crescentis longa est penultima queis Genitivi,  
 Ut *Samnīs* : itidem *Simōīs*, *gratīs*que, *forīs*que.

§ 215. R. XV. — Produciuntur in *Os* : ut *ventōs* atque *sacerdōs*.

Obs. Corripienda tamen quæ Græci corripiunt, ut  
*Phasidōs*, *Argōs*, *epōs*. Sic *compōs* et *impōs*, *ōs*, *exōs*.

R. XVI. — Corripiuntur in *Us* : ceu *tempūs*, *amamūs*, et *intūs*.

Obs. Hinc Quartæ casus contractos excipe, ut *artūs* :  
 Longaque crescentis penultima queis Genitivi,  
 Ut *tellūs incūs*que, *juventūs* atque *senectūs* :  
 Producta a Græcis, ut *Sapphūs* atque *Melampūs*,  
 Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen *Iesūs*.

R. XVII. — Corripiuntur in *Ys* : *chelȳs* ut, *chlamȳs*, *Othrȳs*,  
*Erinnȳs*.

Not. — Ducit ab *Auctorum* scriptis ea syllaba tempus,  
 Regula quam longam nulla brevemve facit.

## DE METRORUM LEGIBUS.

### DEFINITIONES.

- § 216. 1. In proferendis syllabis *Arsin* voca  
 Elationem vocis (huic *Ictus* comes) ;  
*Thesis*que contra vocis est depressio.  
*Pes* syllabarum est certa consecutio :  
 Pedumque certa consecutio *Rhythmus* :  
 Apud poetas *Versus* est nomen *Rhythmī* :  
 Certumque Versuum ordinem *Carmen* voca  
*Metrum*ve : et audit certa pars Versūs *Metrum*.
- § 217. 2. Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur *Iambus* : ˘ –  
 Quòd si longa brevi præcesserit, ille *Trochæus* : – ˘  
*Pyrrhichius* brevibus voluit consistere binis : ˘ ˘

*Spondeus* binis voluit consistere longis : - -  
*Dactylus* efficitur longâ brevibusque duabus : - ˘ ˘  
 Postque breves binas *Anapæstus* simplice longâ : ˘ ˘ -  
*Tribrachyn* huc brevibus formatum subijce ternis. ˘ ˘ ˘

Not. 1. — Quem Thesis incipiat, dices *ascendere* Rhythmum :  
 Quale tuus specimen versus, Iambe, dabit :  
 Cœperit ex Arsi contra, *descendere* dices ;  
 Dactyle, tu talem, tuque, Trochæe, facis.

Not. 2. — *Metrum* in Dactylico carmine singuli,  
 At bini in reliquis constituunt pedes.

Not. 3. — Complendis metris cui syllaba deficit una,  
 Hic Versus Catalecticus audit.  
 Complendis metris cui deerit syllaba duplex,  
 Ille Brachycatalecticus audit.  
 Syllaba cui superest completis unica metris,  
 Versus Hypercatalecticus audit.  
 Cui nihil aut deest aut superest, teres atque rotundus  
 Versus is Acatalecticus audit.



## DE SCANSIONE ET FIGURIS SCANSIONIS.

§ 218. *Scansio*, | quam vari|â con|cinnant | arte Fi|guræ,  
 Distribu|it Ver|sum | pro rati|one Pe|dum.

A. Vocalem elidit *Synalæpha* in limite vocis,  
 Si Vocalis erit subnexæ in limine vocis ;  
*Phyllid' am' | ant' ali|as : nam | me dis|cedere | flevit.*  
 (pro *Phyllida*, *amo*, *ante*.)

Obs. 1. Interdum legem *Synalæphæ* infringit *Hiatus* :  
*Ter sunt | cona|tī im|ponere | Peliō | Ossam.*

Obs. 2. *Heu*, *O*, et *ah* nunquam vocalis proxima delet.

B. *Ecthlipsis* Vocalem atque *m* de limite trudit,  
 Si Vocalis erit subnexæ in limine vocis ;  
*O cu|ras homin' | O quant' | est in | rebus in|ane.*  
 (pro *hominum*, *quantum*.)

§ 219. C. Syllaba de binis conflata *Synæresis* audit,  
 Ut monstrant *deest*, *dein*, *aureos*, *alvearia*, *Theses*.

Obs. Apud poetas jura consonantium  
 Subinde sumit *I* vel *U* :

“ *Flūviorum rex Eridanus. Labat āriete murus.*  
*Gēnua tremunt. Pectunt et tēnuia vellera Sereæ.* ”

D. Una sed in binas divisa *Diæresis* audit.  
 Quod tibi *Naiades* monstrant flavique *Suævi* :

Obs. Ponitur *U* pro *V* : *siliās*, *soliitque* videbis.

- § 220 E. Ante pedum finem *Cæsura* vocabula finit ·  
*"Lumina, labentem || cælo || quæ ducitis annum."* — VIRG  
*Obs.* Quam fecit natura brevem, vocalis in Arsi  
 Longa fit interdum, *Cæsura* Ictuque favente :  
*"Pectoribûs || inhians spirantia consulit exta."*
- F. Secernit vocemque pedemque *Dialysis* unâ :  
*"Lumina || labentem cælo quæ || ducitis || annum."*
- Not.* — Ultima communis censetur syllaba versûs.

## DE VERSIBUS DACTYLICIS.

### I. DE HEXAMETRO SIVE SENARIO DACTYLICO

- § 221. Hexameter pedibus senis concluditur : horum  
 Dactylus est quintus : sextâ statione locatur  
 Spondeus ; reliquisque locis reperitur utervis.
- Obs.* 1. Quintâ | sede lo | cat re | rum gravi | tas spon | deum.
- Obs.* 2. Hexametrum *Cæsura* solet distinguere, quâ pes  
 Tertius aut quartus || sese || discernit in Arsi.
- (*Obs.* 1.) Post Thesin interdum *Cæsura* est unica Versûs :  
*"Impiger, iracundus, || inexorabilis, acer."* — HOR.
- (*Obs.* 2.) Damnaris versum, *Cæsura* qui vacet omni.
- Obs.* 3. Efficit Hexametri de more disyllaba finem  
 Sive trisyllaba vox, rarò polysyllaba, rarò,  
 Altera nî præeat, claudit monosyllaba versum.
- Obs.* 4. Ultima perrarò sorbetur syllaba versûs :  
 Quod quum contingit, tum versus *Hypermæter* audit :  
*"Omnia | Mercuri | o simi | lis, vo | cemque co | loremque,*  
*Et cri | nes fla | vos et | membra de | cora ju | ventæ."* — VIRG

### II. DE PENTAMETRO DACTYLICO.

- § 222. Pentameter partes binas habet : utraque binis  
 Procedit pedibus, sequitur quos syllaba longa.  
 Primam pro lubitu Spondeus, Dactylus, intrant :  
 Dactylicis tantum pedibus pars altera gaudet.
- Obs.* 1. Pentametri primam partem *Cæsura* secundâ  
 Separat : atque loco Synalœpha excluditur illo.  
*"Quamvis | ingeni | o || non valet, | arte va | let."*
- Obs.* 2. Pentametri format de more disyllaba finem.
- (*Obs.*) *Est* licet ad finem, si fit Synalœpha, remitti :  
*"Invi | tis ocu | lis | littera | lecta tu | a est."*  
 Vel si vox anteit monosyllaba, qualis in illo .  
*Præmia | si studi | o || consequor | ista, sat | est.*
- Obs.* 3. Ne partis primæ sit vox monosyllaba finis,  
 Nî vox præcedat monosyllaba, qualis in illo :  
*"Magna ta | men spes | est || in boni | tate Dei."*  
 Vel vox interdum brevibus confecta duabus :  
*Hæc præ | stat sine | vi !, sce | tra tre | menda Jo | vi.*

### III. DE CARMINE HEROICO ET DE CARMINE ELEGIACO.

§ 223. Hexametr̃is gaudet solis Heroica Musa :  
Hexametros Elegi Pentametrosque ligant̃

Obs. Disticha perfectum malunt includere sensum :  
Nec simplicis sententiæ  
Constructionem distichis scindi placet.



#### § 224. HEXAMETRI DACTYLICI

(QUI ET VERSUS MEMORIALES SUNT DE VOCUM DIFFERENTIA).

Cantat *acanthis* avis, sed floret *acanthus* in agris.  
In silṽis *acer* est : equus *acer* Olympia vincit.  
Qui fert *arma* humer̃is, *armo* dux fertur equino.  
Mel vaga condit *apis* : deus est *Ægyptius Apis*.  
Vexat *asilus* equos ; miseros excep̃it *asylum*.  
Qui sculpit, *cælat*, qui servat condita, *celat*.  
Voce *cānes* ; duc eja *cānes*, nisi tempora *cānes*.  
Tenduntur nexi *casses* ; nitet *ærea cassis*.  
*Casside* cinge caput : capiuntur *cassibus* apri.  
*Cēdo* facit *cessi* ; *cecīli cado* ; *cædo cecīdi*.  
*Clava* ferit : *clavus* firmat ; *clavisque* recludit.  
Fert ancilla *cōlum* ; penetrat res humida *cōlum*.  
Rusticus arva *cōlit*, sed *cōlat* turbida vina.  
*Cominus* ense feris ; jactā cadis *eminus* hastā.  
Ut placeas *cōmiti*, mores *cōmes* indue *cōmes*.  
*Cōmædi scenam*, *cōmēdones* quærite *cænam*.  
*Consule* doctores ; sic tu *tibi consulis* ipsi.  
Bellandi *cupīdo* nocuit sua sæpè *cupīdo*.  
Carmina *dicuntur*, Domino dum templa *dicantur*.  
Solvere *diffidit*, nodum qui *diffidit* ense.  
Uxorem *ducit* vir ; *nubit* sponsa marito.  
*Edūcat* hic catulos, ut mox *edūcat* in apros.  
Si tibi non est *æs*, *ēs* inops, et pingua non *ēs*.  
Fallit sæpe *frētum* placido ninis æquore *frētum*.  
*Fructus* arboribus, *fruges* nascuntur in agris.  
Sol nubes *fūgat*, et *fūgit* irreparabile tempus.  
Ales *hirundo* volat ; nat *hirudo* ; vernat *arundo*.  
Per quod quis peccat, per *īdem* mox plectitur *īlem*.  
Difficilis *lābor* est, cujus sub pondere *lābor*.  
Frons pueri est *lēvis*, *lēvis* autem lingua puellæ.  
In silvis *lēpōres*, in verbis quære *lēpōres*.  
Non licet asse *mihi*, qui *me* non asse *licetur*.  
*Mālo* ego *māla* meā bona quā *māla* frangere *mālā*.  
*Merr vēnit*, *mercesque vēnit* quæsita labore.  
*Mulcet* amante manu, dum *mulget* Sylvia *vaccam*.



Carus eris Domino, *miseris* si *miseris* aurum.  
*Nūtēre*, parve puer, cupies quicumque *nūtēre*.  
*Oblīta* quæ fūco rubet, est *oblīta* decori.  
*Occīdit* ille dolo turpi, quem *occīdit* amicus.  
*Opperior* Caium qui pullo *ōperitur* amictu.  
*Os* (*ōris*) *mandat*, sed *ōs* (*ossis*) *manditur* *ōre*.  
 Uxoris *pārēre* et *pārēre*, *pārāre* mariti est.  
*Pārentes* pueri faciunt gaudere *pārentes*.  
 Nī *pendēre vōles*, non debita *pendēre nōles*.  
 Lude *pīlā*: *pīlum* torquetur: *pīla* columna est.  
 Pro reti et regione *plāga* est; pro verbere *plāga*.  
 Sunt cives urbis *pōpulus*; est *pōpulus* arbor.  
 Si vitare *pōtes*, ne plus duo pocula *pōtes*.  
*Prora* prior, *puppis* pars postera, et ima *carina*.  
*Tribula* grana terunt; *tribuli* nocuere novali.  
 Spondet *vas* (*vadis*), at *vas* (*vasis*) continet escam.  
*Vas* caput, at nummos tantum *præs* præstat amice.  
 Si transire *vēlis* maris undas, utere *vēlis*.

## ELEGORUM EXEMPLA

(QUI ET VERSUS MEMORIALES SUNT).

*Fīdē*, sed ante *vīdē*: qui *fīdit*, nec benè *vīdit*,  
 Fallitur: ipse *vīdē* ne capiare *fīdē*.  
*Forfice* sartores, tonsores *forpice* gaudent;  
 At faber ignitum *forcipe* prensat opus.  
*Consortes* fortuna eadem, *socios* labor idem,  
 Unum *collegas* efficit officium:  
 At caros faciunt schola, ludus, mensa, *sodales*.  
 Sulcus agri *līra* est: dat *lyra* tacta modos.  
 Ne sit *securus*, qui non est *tutus* ab hoste;  
 Ad flumen *ripas*, ad mare *littus* habes.  
 Sunt ætate *senes*; *veteres* vixere priores:  
 Quod non est *simulo dissimulo*que quod est.  
*Ungula* conculcat; lacerat, tenet, arripit *unguis*;  
*Ulva* tenax stagno nascitur, *alga* mari.  
*Vallamus* proprie castra, at *sepimus* ovile,  
 Hasta *teres* dici, sphaera *rotunda* potest.  
 Quod scriptum est *dele*, sed flammam *extingue* lucernæ;  
 Lingua cibum *gustat*, qui bene cunque *sapit*.  
 Est in carne *cutis*, detracta e corpore *pellis*;  
*Tergum* pandit homo; bellua *tergus* habet.  
 Pistor habet *furnum*; *fornace* hypocausta calescunt:  
 Hæc *nōta* Grammatici non mihi *nōta* fuit.  
 Anne *nōvi* quid habes? Alium *pete*: nil ego *nōvi*.  
 Quod minimè *rēfert* garrulus ille *rēfert*.  
 Si quā fortè *sēdes*, atque est tibi commoda *sēdes*,  
*līlā sēdē sēdē*; fōrs nova *tuta* parum est.

# TRANSLATIONS

## OF THE

### LATIN RULES AND EXAMPLES.

---

#### § 17.

Poema, <i>a poem</i> , n.	Vās, <i>a vessel</i> , n.
Mare, <i>a sea</i> , n.	Vas, <i>a surety</i> , m.
Leo, <i>a lion</i> , m.	Mas, <i>a male</i> , m.
Natio, <i>a nation</i> , f.	As, <i>a pound</i> , m.
Caro, <i>flesh</i> , f.	Gigas, <i>a giant</i> , m.
Ordo, <i>order</i> , m.	Elephas, <i>an elephant</i> , m.
Virgo, <i>a virgin</i> , f.	Adamas, <i>adamant</i> , m.
Homo, <i>a man</i> , c.	Nubes, <i>a cloud</i> , f.
Nemo, <i>no man</i> , c.	Milēs, <i>a soldier</i> , c.
Turbo, <i>a whirlwind</i> , m.	Hospēs, <i>a host</i> , or <i>guest</i> , c.
Ligo, <i>a spade</i> , m.	Satellēs, <i>a body-guard</i> , c.
Macedo, <i>a Macedonian</i> , m.	Mergēs, <i>a sheaf</i> , f.
Lac, <i>milk</i> , n.	Segēs, <i>standing corn</i> , f.
Sōl, <i>the sun</i> , m.	Interprēs, <i>an interpreter</i> , c.
Mel, <i>honey</i> , n.	Tegēs, <i>a mat</i> , f.
Fel, <i>a gull</i> , n.	Quiēs, <i>rest</i> , f.
Rēn, <i>the kidney</i> , m.	Obsēs, <i>a hostage</i> , c.
Sindōn, <i>fine linen</i> , f.	Præsēs, <i>a president</i> , c.
Halcyōn, <i>a kingfisher</i> , f.	Pēs, <i>a foot</i> , m.
Lumen, <i>light</i> , n.	Mercēs, <i>hire</i> , f.
Pecten, <i>a comb</i> , m.	Herēs, <i>an heir</i> , c.
Calcār, <i>a spur</i> , n.	Æs, <i>copper</i> , n.
Jubār, <i>a sunbeam</i> , n.	Præs, <i>a surety</i> , m.
Par, <i>a pair</i> , n.	Avis, <i>a bird</i> , f.
Far, <i>meat</i> , n.	Amnis, <i>a river</i> , m.
Carcēr, <i>a prison</i> , m.	Lapīs, <i>a stone</i> , m.
Vēr, <i>spring</i> , n.	Cassīs, <i>a helmet</i> , f.
Patēr, <i>a father</i> , m.	Tigris, <i>a tiger</i> , c.
Imber, <i>a shower</i> , m.	Cinīs, <i>ashes</i> , m.
Itēr, <i>a journey</i> , n.	Pulvīs, <i>dust</i> , m.
Latēr, <i>a brick</i> , m.	Iīs, <i>strife</i> , f.
Honōr, <i>honour</i> , m.	Samnīs, <i>a Samnite</i> , m.
Arbōr, <i>a tree</i> , f.	Quirīs, <i>a Roman</i> , m.
Æquōr, <i>a smooth surface</i> (sea), n.	Dīs, <i>Pluto</i> , m.
Marmōr, <i>marble</i> (sea), n.	Sanguīs, <i>blood</i> , m.
Cor, <i>the heart</i> , n.	Glīs, <i>a dormouse</i> , m.
Fulgūr, <i>lightning</i> , n.	Dōs, <i>a dowry</i> , f.
Ebūr, <i>ivory</i> , n.	Cōs, <i>a whetstone</i> , f.
Iecūr, <i>the liver</i> , n.	Sacerdōs, <i>a priest</i> , or <i>priestess</i> , c.
Ætas, <i>age</i> , f.	Flōs, <i>a flower</i> , m.

Os, *a mouth*, n.  
 Custōs, *a guardian*, c.  
 Bōs, *an ox*, c.  
 Os, *a bone*, n.  
 Virtūs, *virtue*, f.  
 Servitūs, *slavery*, f.  
 Juventūs, *youth*, f.  
 Senectūs, *old age*, f.  
 Salūs, *safety*, f.  
 Palūs, *a marsh*, f.  
 Incūs, *an anvil*, f.  
 Pecūs, *a beast*, f.  
 Tellūs, *earth*, f.  
 Rūs, *the country*, n.  
 Mūs, *a mouse*, m.  
 Grus, *a crane*, f. Sus, *a swine*, c.  
 Vulnūs, *a wound*, n.  
 Tempūs, *time*, n.  
 Pecūs, *cattle*, n.  
 Laus, *praise*, f.  
 Fraus, *deceit*, f. Puls, *pulse*, f.  
 Frons, *a brow*, f.  
 Pars, *a part*, f. Frons, *a leaf*, f.  
 Glans, *an acorn*, f.  
 Trabs, *a beam*, f.  
 Stirps, *a trunk*, f.  
 Hiems, *winter*, f.  
 Cælebs, *a bachelor*, m.

Municeps, *a burgess*, f.  
 Princeps, *a chief*, c.  
 Auceps, *a fowler*, c.  
 Caput, *a head*, n.  
 Pax, *peace*, f. Fax, *a torch*, f.  
 Judex, *a judge*, c.  
 Vindex, *an avenger*, c.  
 Index, *an informer*, c.  
 Ilex, *scarlet oak*, f.  
 Carex, *sedg*, f. Vibex, *a weal*, f.  
 Vervex, *a wether*, m.  
 Nex, *death*, f. Lex, *law*, f.  
 Grex, *a flock*, m.  
 Remex, *a rower*, m.  
 Senex, *an old person*, c.  
 Supellex, *furniture*, f.  
 Cornix, *a crow*, f.  
 Calix, *a cup*, m.  
 Fornix, *an arch*, m.  
 Strix, *a screech owl*, f.  
 Nix, *snow*, f. Vox, *a voice*, f.  
 Nox, *night*, f.  
 Nux, *a walnut-tree*, f.  
 Lux, *light*, f.  
 Conjux, *a spouse*, c.  
 Phryx, *a Phrygian*, m.  
 Lynx, *a lynx*, m.  
 Arx, *a citadel*, f.

§ 21. (Dant) The following nouns make (*im pro em*) *im* instead of *em* (Accusativo) in the Accusative case; (*i pro e*) and *i* instead of *e* (in Ablativo) in the Ablative: buris, *a ploughtail*; cucumis, *a cucumber*; amussis, *a carpenter's rule*; ravis, *hoarseness*; sitis, *thirst*; vis, *force*; (et) and tussis, *a cough*; (et) and (flumina) names of Rivers (quæ claudit *is*) which end in *is*; (ut) as Albis, *the Elbe*; Liris, *the Garigliano*; Tiberis, *the Tiber*.\* (Sumunt) The following take (*im vel em*) either *im* or *em* (Accusativo) in the Accusative case, (*i vel e*) and either *i* or *e* (in Ablativo) in the Ablative: neptis, *a grand-daughter*; febris, *a fever*; messis, *a harvest*; clavis, *a key*; puppis, *a ship's stern*; pelvis, *a pan*; restis, *a rope*; navis, *a ship*; securis, *an axe*; turris, *a tower*; (adde his) add to these, sementis, *seed-time*; (atque) and strigilis, *a flesh-brush*.†

\* Also some nouns of Greek origin in *is*; as, Syrtis, Charybdis, poesis.

† The following nouns sometimes have Abl. Sing. in *i*: amnis, anguis, avis, civis, classis, finis, fustis, ignis, unguis, imber, supellex. Notice ruri, *in the country*; vesperi, *at eventide*.

(Neutra) Neuter Nouns (quæ exeunt) which end (in *al*, *ar*, *e*), in *al*, *ar*, and *e*, (gaudent) prefer (finger) to form (*i* Singularis Ablativi) *i* in the Ablative Singular, (*ia* Pluralis Nominativi) and *ia* in the Nominative Plural. (His excepta sunt) From these are excepted (in *ar*) the following in *ar*: *baccar*, *a kind of plant*; *nectar*, *nectar*; *jubar*, *a sunbeam*; *far*, *corn or meal*.

(Quæ efferunt) Those which form (*ium* pro *um*) *ium* instead of *um* (Plurali Genitivo) in the Genitive case Plural (sunt) are, 1. (*i* formantia Ablativo) Nouns forming *i* in the Ablative Singular; 2. (non crescentia Genitivo) Nouns not increasing in the Genitive case; 3. (pleraque) most Nouns (in *x* vel *s*) ending in *x* or *s* (positis post consonantem) following a consonant\*; 4. (cum aliis Monosyllabis) with other Nouns of One Syllable; *mas*, *a male*; *mus*, *a mouse*; *nix*, *snow*; *nox*, *night*; *os*, gen. *ossis*, *a bone*; *cos*, *a whetstone*; *sal*, *salt*; *sol*, *the sun*; *cor*, *the heart*; *pax*, *peace*; *glis*, *a dormouse*; *lis*, *strife*; (et) and *dos*, *a dowry*. (His excipienda sunt) From these must be excepted (quæ *um* libenter efferunt) the following, which prefer to form *um*: *vates*, *a prophet*, *prophetess*, *poet*, or *poetess*; *senex*, *an old man*; *pater*, *a father*; *panis*, *bread*; (et) and *accipiter*, *a hawk*; (et) and *canis*, *a dog*; *frater*, *a brother*; *mater*, *a mother*; *juvenis*, *a youth*; (et sæpius) and generally *apis*, *a bee*; *volucris*, *a bird*.†

§ 70. (Viri) Names of Men, (Populi) names of Peoples, (et) and (Divi) names of Gods, (Venti) names of Winds, (Menses) names of Months, (Montes) names of Mountains,

\* Many nouns in *ns* either take or reject *i* in Gen. Pl., as, *parens*, *parentium*, or *parentum*. So all Present Participles.

Nouns in *as* *ātis*, *is* *ītis*, *as* *ācis*, *ix*, *icis*, often form Gen. Pl. in *ium*; as *civitas*, *civitatum*.

Several monosyllables and other nouns of this Declension fluctuate in the formation of the Gen. Pl., and the student must observe the usage of writers.

† All Adjectives following the 3d Decl. form Acc. Sing. Masc. in *em*. Parisyllabic adjectives form Abl. Sing. in *i*; as, *tristis*, *tristi*; imparisyllables in *i* or *e*; and of these, Participles and Comparatives prefer *e*; others *i*, except a few which take *e*; as *dives*, *pauper*, *sospes*, *superstes*. Adjectives of this Declension form Nom. Pl. Neut. in *ia*, except the Comparatives, and *vetus*, *vetera*. And those which form Nom. in *ia* form Gen. Pl. in *ium*, except *celer*, *dives*, *inops*, *pauper*, and some others. *Memor*, *uber*, *degener*, have no Neut. Pl., and form Gen. Pl. in *um*.

(Rivi) names of Rivers, (sunt) are (Generis Masculini) of the Masculine Gender. (Plantæ) Names of Plants, (Divæ) names of Goddesses, (Feminæ) names of Women, (Terræ) names of Countries, (Urbes) names of Cities, (Insulæ) names of Islands, (sunt, are) (Generis Feminini) of the Feminine Gender.\* (Vox indeclinabilis) Any undeclined Word (est) is (Neutrius Generis) of the Neuter Gender. (Sunt) The following are (Communis Generis) of the Common Gender: civis, *a citizen*; hostis, *an enemy*; juvenis, *a young person*; testis, *a witness*; iudex, *a judge*; artifex, *an artizan*; auctor, *an author*; exsul, *an exile*; opifex, *an artificer*; comes, *a companion*; heres, *an heir*; hospes, *a guest or host*; dux, *a leader*; obses, *a hostage*; interpres, *an interpreter*; conjux, *a husband or wife*; incola, *an inhabitant*; sacerdos, *a priest or priestess*; vindex, *an avenger*; adolescens, *a young man or woman*; infans, *an infant*; index, *an informer*; parens, *a parent*; præsul, *a president*; par, *a mate*; custos, *a guardian*; municeps, *a burgess*; satelles, *a body-guard*; bos, *an ox or cow*; miles, *a soldier*; vates, *a seer or poet*; augur, *a soothsayer*; grus, *a crane*; canis, *a dog*; tigris, *a tiger*; serpens, *a serpent*; sus, *a swine*; (jungimus) we add dama, *a deer*; talpa, *a mole*.†

§ 71. (*A et e*) Words ending in *a* and *e* (sunt) are (Feminina) Feminine; (*as et es*) words ending in *as* and *es* (sunt) are (Masculina) Masculine.

(Masculorum nomina in *a*) The names of Males ending in *a* (sunt) are (Masculina) Masculine: (ut) as, nauta or navita, *a sailor*; verna, *a slave born in his master's house*; (et) and poeta, *a poet*; scurra, *a buffoon*; scriba, *a notary*; (et) and propheta, *a prophet*.

\* Winds follow the Gender of ventus, months of mensis, mountains of mons, rivers of fluvius, plants of arbor. Some rivers are Fem., as Styx, Lethe, Allia. Many names of Mountains are Fem., as Ossa, Cæta, Ætna, Rhodope, Alpes, &c.; some Neuter, as Soracte, Pelion. Some names of Plants are Masculine, as oleaster, *a wild olive*; some Neuter, as siler, *a withy*. Some names of Cities are Masculine, as Sulmo, Selinus; and those in *i*, as Delphi, Veii; some Neuter, as Tibur, Anxur, Tarentum, Præneste.

† Those names of Animals which are found in only one gender are called Epicæna; and the words mas or femina must be used when it is necessary to distinguish the sex: as Masc. passer, *a sparrow*; passer femina, *a hen-sparrow*; Fem. vulpes, *a fox*; vulpes mas or mascula, *a dog-fox*.

§ 72. (*Us et er*) The terminations *us* and *er* belong (Masculinis) to Masculine Nouns; (*um*) the termination *um* (tribuitur) is assigned (Neutris) to Neuter Nouns.

(In *us*) The following Nouns in *us* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: *alvus, the belly*; *arctus, the Bear constellation*; *carbasus, canvass*; *colus, a distaff*; *humus, the ground*; *methodus, a method*.<sup>\*</sup> *Virus, poison*; *pelagus, the sea*; (Neutra) are Neuter. *Vulgus, the common people*, (*fere sit*) may generally be (Neutrum) Neuter: (*subinde*) now and then (fit (Masculum) it is made Masculine.

§ 73. (Masculis) Among Masculine words (*inseritur*) is placed (*quod claudit o, or, os, vel er*) any Noun which ends in *o, or, os, or er*; (*et*) and (Nomen) any Noun (*desinens in es*) ending in *es*, (*si*) if (*flectit casus impares*) it forms imparisyllabic cases [that is, if it increases in the Genitive case Singular].

(*Illa*) Those Nouns (*quæ desinunt in do et go*) which end in *do* and *go* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine; (*sed*) but (*manent*) the following remain (Masculina) Masculine: *cardo, a hinge*; *ligo, a spade*; *ordo, order*; (*atque*) and *margo, a margin*.

(In *io*) Nouns in *io* (sunt) are (Feminina) Feminine: (*illa*) those (*tantum*) only (Masculina) are Masculine, (*quæ*) which (*vel spectabis*) you may either see (*oculis*) with your eyes (*vel tu tractabis*) or you may touch (*manibus*) with your hands.<sup>†</sup>

*Caro, gen. carnis, flesh* (*mavult*) prefers (*addere se*) to be added (Femininis) to Nouns feminine.

(*Pauca in or*) A few Nouns in *or* (sunt Neutra) are Neuter: *æquor, the level of the sea or of a plain*; *ador, parched corn*; *marmor, marble, or the smooth sea*; *cor, the heart*. *Arbor, a tree*, (*est Femininum*) is Feminine.

*Cos, a whetstone*, (*et*) and *dos, a dowry*, (sunt Feminina) are Feminine: (*utrumque os*) the two words, *os ossis, a bone*; and *os oris, a mouth*; (Neutra) are Neuter.<sup>‡</sup>

(*Multa in er*) Many Nouns in *er* (sunt) are (Neutra) Neuter: *verber, a stripe*; *siler, a withy*; *acer, a maple*; *ver, spring*; *tuber, a wen*; *uber, a teat*; (*et*) and *cadaver*,

<sup>\*</sup> Also, *vannus, a winnowing-fan*, is fem.

<sup>†</sup> As *papilio, a butterfly*; *scipio, a staff*. Numerals in *io* are masc. as *ternio, senio*.

<sup>‡</sup> The Greek words *chaos, epos, melos*, are Neuter.

a *carcass*; piper, *pepper*; iter, a *journey*; (et) and papaver, a *poppy*.

(Æs), *brass* or *copper*, (est neutrum) is neuter; (sex in *es*) six Nouns in *es* (quæ) which (flectunt casus impares) form imparisyllabic cases (sunt) are (Feminina) Feminine: compes, a *fetter*; teges, a *mat*; merces, *reward*, *hire*; merges, a *cornsheaf*; quies, *rest*; seges, *standing corn*.\*

§ 74. (Inseras Femininis) You must place among Feminine words (quæ claudunt *is*, *x*, *aus*, et *as*) those which end in *is*, *x*, *aus*, and *as*, (*s* cum consonante nexa) in *s* immediately following a consonant, (*es* æqualiter inflexa) and *es* forming parisyllabic cases [that is, not increasing in the Genitive case Singular].

(Multa) Many Nouns (quæ claudit *is*) which end in *is* (sunt) are (Masculini Generis) of the Masculine Gender: amnis, a *river*; axis, an *axle*; callis, a *path*; collis, a *hill*; caulis, a *stalk*; cucumis, a *cucumber*; (et) and follis, a *leathern bag* or *bellows*; fascis, a *bundle*; funis, a *rope*, fustis, a *cudgel*; finis, an *end* or *boundary*; ignis, *fire*; orbis, a *circle*; (atque) and crinis, *hair*; panis, *bread*, piscis, a *fish*; postis, a *doorpost*; ensis, a *sword*; sentis, a *bramble*; corbis, a *basket*; torquis, a *chain*; mensis, a *month*; torris, a *firebrand*; unguis, a *nail* or *talon*; (et) and canalis, a *conduit*; vectis, a *lever*; vermis, a *worm*; (et) and sodalis, an *intimate companion*; cassis, a *net*; cinis, *ashes*; glis, a *dormouse*; (et) and anguis, a *snake*; lapis, a *stone*; pulvis, *dust*; (atque) and sanguis, *blood*.†

(Pleraque) Most Nouns (quæ claudit *ex*) which end in *x* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine, (ut) as grex, a *flock*; (sed) but (manent) the following remain (Feminina) Feminine: nex, *death*; supellex, *furniture*; ilex, the *scarlet oak*; carex, *sedge*; lex, a *law*.‡

(In *ix*) The following in *ix* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine: fornix, an *arch* or *vault*; phoenix, the *fabulous bird so called*; (et) and calix, a *cup*.§

(In *as*) The following words in *as* (Masculina sunt) are

\* Ales, a *bird*, is Common.

† Anguis, callis, corbis, cinis, pulvis, torquis, are sometimes Feminine. Casses, *nets*, is Masculine; cassis, *helmet*, Feminine.

‡ Fæx, forfex, forpex, vibex, are Feminine. Cortex, imbrex, obex, rumex, silix, are sometimes Feminine.

§ Bombyx, onyx, are Masculine; also the parts of the *As* in *x*, a quincunx.



Masculine: *vas, vadis, a personal surety; gigas, a giant; elephas, an elephant; as, assis, a Roman coin and weight; mas, a male; (et) and adamas, adamant; (Neutra) the following are Neuter; vas, vasis, a vessel; nefas, sin; fas, right.*

(Adde) Add (Masculinis) to Masculine words: *mons, a mountain; fons, a fountain; (et) and torrens, a torrent; gryps, a griffin; (et) and pons, a bridge; rudens, a cable; hydrops, dropsy; dens, a tooth; (et) and bidens, a two-pronged fork; oriens, the east; occidens, the west; (et) and tridens, a trident.\**

(In *es*) The following in *es* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine: *verres, a boar-pig; (et) and acinaces, a scimitar.*

§ 75. (Neutra claudunt) Neuter words of the 3d declension end in *a* (et) and *e, ar, ur, us, c, l, n*, (et) and *t*.

(In *ur*) The following words in *ur* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine: *furfur, bran; turtur, a turtle-dove; vultur, a culture; fur, a thief.*

(In *us*) The following in *us* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine: *lepus, Gen. lepōris, a hare; (et) and mus, a mouse.*

(In *us*) The following in *us* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: *virtus, virtue; (atque) and servitus, slavery; juven-tus, youth; incus, an anvil; (atque) and palus, a marsh; senectus, old age; tellus, earth; (atque) and salus, health; (quibus *u*) in which *u* (manet longa) remains long (in transitu Genitivi) in passing to the Genitive case.*

(Et) Also *pecus, Gen. pecūdis, a beast, (est) is (Feminini Generis) of the Feminine Gender.*

(In *l*) The following in *l* (Mascula sunt) are Masculine: *mugil, a sea-mullet; consul, a consul; sal, salt; sol, the sun; (atque) and pugil, a pugilist.*

(Masculina sunt) The following are Masculine: *ren, a kidney; splen, the spleen; pecten, a comb; delphin, a dolphin; attagen, a woodcock.*

(In *on*) The following in *on* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: *Gorgon, a Gorgon; sindon, muslin; halcyon, a king-fisher.*

§ 76. (In Quarta) In the Fourth Declension (tribuimus *us*) we assign the termination *us* (Masculis) to Nouns Masculine; (Neutris *u*) the termination *u* to Nouns Neuter.

(Quartæ in *us*) The following of the Fourth Declension in *us* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: *domus, a house; porticus,*

\* The parts of the *As* in *ns* are Masculine; *as, triens, quadrans.*



*a porch*; acus, *a needle*; Idus, *the Ides in a Roman month*; (atque) and manus, *a hand*; tribus, *a tribe*; nurus, *a daughter-in-law*; socrus, *a mother-in-law*; anus, *an old woman*.

§ 77. (Inseres Femininis) You will place among Feminine words (Nomina Quintæ) Nouns of the Fifth Declension (in *es*) ending in *es*.

Dies, *a day*, (est) is (in Singulo) in the Singular Number (mas) Masculine (vel) or (Femininum) Feminine; (in Plurali Numero) in the Plural Number (semper) always (Masculinum) Masculine.

§ 78. (Singularis Numerus) The Singular Number (deest) is wanting (multis Nominibus) to many Nouns: (ut) as, manes, *the spirits of the dead*; loculi, *a purse*; penates, *household deities*; cunæ, *a cradle*; thermæ, *warm baths*; nugæ, *trifles*; grates, *thanks*; arma, *arms*; viscera, *bowels*; magalia, *cottages*; (cum deûm Festis) with Festivals of the gods, (ut) as, Floralia, *the festival of Flora*.\*

\* The following is a further list of Substantives wanting the Singular Number: —

FIRST DECLENSION.

Angustiæ, <i>straits</i> .	Minæ, <i>threats</i> .
Argutiæ, <i>refinements</i> .	Minutiæ, <i>details</i> .
Bigæ, <i>a chariot and pair</i> .	Nundinæ, <i>market-day</i> .
Clitellæ, <i>panniers</i> .	Nuptiæ, <i>a bridal</i> .
Deliciæ, <i>delight, daintiness</i> .	Phaleræ, <i>horse-trappings</i> .
Divitiæ, <i>riches</i> .	Prestigiæ, <i>jugglery</i> .
Epulæ, <i>a feast</i> .	Primitiæ, <i>first-fruits</i> .
Excubiæ, <i>a night watch</i> .	Quisquilæ, <i>rubbish</i> .
Exequiæ, <i>a funeral</i> .	Reliquiæ, <i>remnants</i> .
Exuviæ, <i>spoils</i> .	Salebræ, <i>roughnesses</i> .
Facetiæ, <i>pleasantries</i> .	Salinæ, <i>a salt-work</i> .
Feriæ, <i>a holiday</i> .	Scalæ, <i>a staircase</i> .
Habenæ, <i>reins</i> .	Scopæ, <i>a besom</i> .
Induciæ, <i>a truce</i> .	Tenebræ, <i>darkness</i> .
Inferiæ, <i>offerings to the dead</i> .	Triciæ, <i>intricacies, trifles</i> .
Insidiæ, <i>an ambush</i> .	Valvæ, <i>folding-doors</i> .
Lapidicinæ, <i>a stone quarry</i> .	Vindiciæ, <i>a claim, defence</i> .

Also Calendæ, *the Calends*; Nonæ, *the Nones of a month*; Athenæ, Thebæ, Syracusæ, with other towns.

SECOND DECLENSION.

(a) Masculine.

Cancelli, <i>a lattice</i> .	Inferi, <i>the Gods below</i> .
Cani, <i>white hairs</i> .	Liberi, <i>children</i> .
Codicilli, <i>writing tablets</i> .	Posteri, <i>posterity</i> .
Fasti, <i>annals</i> .	Superi, <i>the Gods above</i> .
Fori, <i>the hatches</i> .	

(Multa) Many Substantives (quæ) which (carent Plurali) are destitute of a Plural Number (apparent) appear (lecti- tantibus) to students.\*

(Nonnulli Casus) Some Cases (absunt his) are wanting to these Nouns : fas, *right* ; frugis, *fruit* ; dapis, *a feast* ; opis, *help* ; vis, *force* ; (et) and (multa) many Nouns (præter hæc) besides these (apparent) appear, (quæ) which (carent) are destitute of (Casibus nonnullis) some Cases.†

(b) *Neuter.*

Bellaria, *dainties.*  
Crepundia, *toys.*  
Cunabula, *a cradle.*  
Exta, *entrails.*  
Justa, *funeral offerings.*

Lamenta, *lamentations.*  
Munia, *duties.*  
Præcordia, *the midriff.*  
Tësqua, *wild places.*

Also names of People and Places, as Volsci, Delphi, Leuctra, &c

THIRD DECLENSION.

(a) *Masculine and Feminine.*

Antes, *the rows of vines.*  
Cervices, *the neck* (also sing. in poetry).  
Cœlites, *the Gods above.*  
Fides, *a lute* (also sing. in poetry).

Fores, *a door.*  
Lemures, *goblins.*  
Majores, *ancestors.*  
Minores, *posterity.*  
Proceres, *nobles.*

Also names of People, Places, &c., as Brigantes, Cyclades, &c.

(b) *Neuter.*

Brevia, *shallows.*

Mœnia, *city walls.*

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Artus, *limbs.*

Idus, *the Ides.*

\* Among the many words which are not used in the Plural Number, notice : — (1) Materialia : as, aurum, *gold* ; argentum, *silver* ; lac, *milk* ; sanguis, *blood*. (2) Abstracta : as, letum, *death* ; senectus, *old age* ; fames, *hunger* ; pietas, *piety*. (3) Collectiva : as, vulgus, *the common people* ; supellex, *furniture*. (4) And the following : aer, *the atmosphere* ; æther, *the sky* ; humus, *the ground* ; pontus, pelagus, *the sea* ; tellus, *earth* ; ævum, *time* ; ver, *spring* ; vesper, *evening*.

† Nouns defective in Case are numerous. Those having only one case in a Number are called Monoptota ; those having two, Diptota ; three, Triptota, &c.

(1) Many Nouns have only the Nom. and Accus. in one or both Numbers : —

(a) Greek Neuters in *os* in Sing. and Plur., as melos, melē.

(b) Fas, nefas, instar, nihil, necesse, opus (*need*), in Sing. only, having no Plur.

(Quæ efferunt) Those which form (Numerum Pluralem) the Plural Number (in *a* vel *i*) in *a* or *i* (sunt) are: frenum, *a bit*; carbasus, *canvas*; (et) and locus, *a place*\*; rastrum, *a rake*; sibilus, *a hiss*; (et) and jocus, *a jest*†; Tartarus, *hell*, (fit) becomes (in Plurali) in the Plural Number Tartara; (et) and cælum, *heaven*, cœli.

(Quædam) Some Substantives (abundant Casibus) are

(c) Rura, mella, farra, tura, murmura, metus, situs, spes, &c., in Plur., which form Sing. fully.

(2) Many Verbals of the Fourth Decl. are used in Dat. Sing. or Abl. Sing. only; as, Dat. despiciatui, derisui, ostentui, &c.; Abl. injussu, rogatu, permissu, promptu, procinctu, natu, &c.

(3) Various words are used in single Cases with an adverbial force; as, Abl. noctu, gratis, ingratiis, fortuitu, &c.: Accus. infitias (ire), *to deny*; (ad) incitas (redigere), *to reduce to extremity*; venum (tradere), *to offer for sale*; suppetias (ferre), *to lend succours*: Gen. dicis (causa), *for form's sake*; nauci (facere), *to hold cheap*, &c.

(4) Observe especially the following Defectives: —

(Ambages, *a circuit*) has Abl. Sing. and full Plur.

Astus, *cunning*, Nom. and Abl. Sing., Nom. and Acc. Plur.

(Cassis, *a net*), Acc. Abl. Sing. (both rare), full Plur.

(Compes, *a fetter*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

(Daps, *a feast*), has all but Nom. Sing., full Plur.

(Ditio, *sway*), has all but Nom. Sing., no Plur.

(Faux, *a jaw*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

Fors, *chance*, Nom. Abl. Sing., no Plur.

(Frux, *fruit*), has all but Nom. Sing., full Plur.

Grates, *thanks*, Nom. Acc. Plur.

Inquies, *restlessness*, Nom. Sing.

(Juger, *an acre*), Abl. Sing., Dat. Abl. Plur.; other forms from jugerum, i.

Mane, *morning*, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing., no Plur.

Nemo, *nobody*, Gen. nullius, Dat. nemini, Acc. neminem, Abl. nullo.

(Obex, *a bolt*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

(Ops, *help*), Gen. Acc. Abl. Sing., full Plur.

Pondo, *pounds*, indeclin. Plur.

(Prex, *prayer*), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

(Repetundæ, sc. pecuniæ, *extortion*), Gen. Abl. Plur.

(Spons, *inclination*), Abl. Sing.

(Verber, *a stripe*), Gen. Abl. Sing., full Plur.

Gen. vicis, Acc. vicem. Abl. vice, *change*. no Nom. S., full Plur.

Vis, *force*, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing., full Plur., vires, virium, &c.

Frugi, the old Dat. of frux, is used Adjectively; as, homo frugi, *an honest man*. So nequam, *worthless*, is of all cases.

\* Loca, *spots*; loci, *spots or places in books, topics*.

† Ostrea, *an oyster*; Pl. ostreæ and ostrea

redundant in Cases: (ut) as, domus, *a house*; laurus, *a laurel*; Œdipus, *Œdipus*.\*

\* Declension of Domus: —

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Domus.	domus.
Gen. Domûs.	domuum <i>or</i> domorum.
Dat. Domui.	domibus.
Acc. Domum.	dominus <i>or</i> domos.
Abl. Domu <i>or</i> domo.	domibus.

The Gen. Domi is used to signify *at home*; as, domi meæ, *at my home*.

Laurus, cupressus, colus, ficus, pinus, follow the 2d Declension, but also take from the 4th the Cases in *us* and *u*; Œdipus, Gen. Œdipodis and Œdipi. There are many Substantives with a two-fold Declension; as, juventa and juvenus; vespera and vesper, eri (which forms Abl. vespero, vespere, *or* vesperi); duritia and durities, &c. Many Adjectives have also double forms, as bijugus and bijugis.

Vas makes Gen. Pl. vasorum, Dat. vasis. So anciliorum from ancile, *a shield*. Greek Nouns in *ma*, Gen. *tis*, have Dat. Pl. *tis*; as, poema, Dat. Pl. poematis.

The following Substantives change their signification in the Plural Number: —

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Ædes, <i>a temple</i> ;	ædes, <i>a house</i> .
Aqua, <i>water</i> ;	aquæ, <i>medicinal springs</i> .
Auxilium, <i>help</i> ;	auxilia, <i>auxiliary forces</i> .
Bonum, <i>a good</i> ;	bona, <i>goods, effects</i> .
Carcer, <i>a prison</i> ;	carceres, <i>a starting-place</i> .
Castrum, <i>a fort</i> ;	castra, <i>a camp</i> .
Cera, <i>wax</i> ;	ceræ, <i>a waxen tablet</i> .
Comitium, <i>the Assembly-place</i> ;	Comitia, <i>the Assembly at Rome</i> .
Copia, <i>plenty</i> ;	copiæ, <i>forces</i> .
Epulum, <i>a sacred feast</i> ;	epulæ, <i>a banquet</i> .
Facultas, <i>a faculty</i> ;	facultates, <i>means</i> .
Finis, <i>an end</i> ;	fines, <i>boundaries</i> .
Fortuna, <i>fortune</i> ;	fortunæ, <i>the gifts of fortune, a fortune</i> .
Gratia, <i>favour</i> ;	gratiæ, <i>thanks</i> .
Hortus, <i>a garden</i> ;	horti, <i>a pleasure-garden</i> .
Impedimentum, <i>a hindrance</i> ;	impedimenta, <i>baggage</i> .
Littera, <i>a letter of the alphabet</i> ;	litteræ, <i>an epistle, or literature</i> .
Ludus, <i>play</i> ;	ludi, <i>public games</i> .
Lustrum, <i>a term of five years</i> ;	lustra, <i>lairs of wild beasts</i> .
Natalis, <i>a birth-day</i> ;	natales, <i>origin</i> .
Opera, <i>exertion</i> ;	operæ, <i>workmen</i> .
Opis (Gen.), <i>help</i> ;	opes, <i>power, wealth</i> .
Pars, <i>a portion</i> ;	partes, <i>a part in a play</i> .
Rostrum, <i>a beak</i> ;	rostra, <i>the pulpit for speaking in the Roman forum (adorned with the beaks of captured ships)</i> .
Sal, <i>salt</i> ;	sales, <i>wit</i> .
Tabula, <i>a board</i> ;	tabulæ, <i>writing tablets</i> .

§ 79.\* (Verborum prima conjugatio) the first conjugation of verbs, (cui *o, as, āre*, terminatio) the termination of which is *o, as, āre*, (fit *avi* in Perfecto) becomes in the Preterperfect Tense *avi*; (subjicit *atum* Supino) and makes its Supine end in *atum*.

(Hinc excipienda sunt) From this rule must be excepted (quæ efferunt) verbs which form (*ui itum*) *ui* in the Preterperfect, and *itum* in the Supine.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
crepo, <i>I utter a sound</i> ;	crepui,	crepitum.
cubo, <i>I lie down</i> ;	cubui,	cubitum.
sono, <i>I sound</i> ;	sonui,	sonitum.
domo, <i>I tame</i> ;	domui,	domitum.
veto, <i>I forbid</i> ;	vetui,	vetitum.
tono, <i>I thunder</i> ;	tonui,	tonitum.
Seco, <i>I cut</i> ;	secui,	sectum.
frico, <i>I rub</i> ;	fricui,	fritum.
Juvo, <i>I help</i> ;	jūvi,	jutum.
lāvo, <i>I wash</i> ;	lāvi,	lōtum;

(et vindicat) and it takes also *lāvatum*.

Do, <i>I give</i> ;	dēdi,	dātum.
sto, <i>I stand</i> ;	stēti,	stātum.

Mico, *I glitter*, (dat Perfectum micui) makes its Preterperfect micui; Plico, *I fold*; (dat Perfectum plicui) makes its Preterperfect plicui; (Mico fert) mico takes (nullum supinum) no supine; (*atum* dat vel *itum* Plico) Plico makes plicatum or plicitum.

§ 80. (Verborum altera conjugatio) the second conjugation of Verbs, (cui *eo, es, ēre*, terminatio) the termination of which is *eo, es, ēre*, (fit *ui* in Perfecto) becomes in the Preterperfect Tense *ui*, (subjicit *itum* Supino) and makes its Supine end in *itum*.

(Hinc excipienda sunt) From this rule must be excepted (quæ efferunt) Verbs which form (*evi, etum*) *evi* in the Preterperfect, and *etum* in the Supine; (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
neo, <i>I spin</i> ;	nevi,	netum.
deleo, <i>I blot out</i> ;	delevi,	deletum.
(Adde his) Add to these:—		
fleo, <i>I weep</i> ;	flevi,	fletum.
pleo, <i>I fill</i> ;	plevi,	pletum.
oleo, <i>I grow</i> ;	olevi,	oletum.†

(cum Compositis) with their compounds.

\* Translate et, atque, ac, and; dat, facit, format, efficit, makes; suscipit, vindicat, takes; fit, becomes; stat, stands.

† Aboleo, Sup. abolitum: adoleo (or adolesco), Sup. adultum.

(His) In the following, (Perfectum) the Preterperfect Tense (stat in *di*) stands in *di*; (*sum* Supinum terminat) the Supine ends in *sum*:

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
prandeo, <i>I dine</i> ;	prandī,	pransum.
sēdeo, <i>I sit</i> ;	sēdi,	sessum.
vīdeo, <i>I see</i> ;	vīdi,	vīsum.
(Sed) But,		
spondeo, <i>I promise</i> ;	spōpondi,	sponsum.
tondeo, <i>I shear</i> ;	tōtondi,	tonsum.
mordeo, <i>I bite</i> ;	mōmordi,	morsum.
pendeo, <i>I hang</i> ;	pēpendi,	pensum.

(His) In the following (Perfectum) the Preterperfect Tense (fit) is formed (in *si*) in *si*, (*sum* Supinum exigit) the Supine requires *sum*:

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
jubeo, <i>I command</i> ;	jussi,	jussum.
mulceo, <i>I soothe</i> ;	mulsi,	mulsum.
(Itidemque) and similarly,		
mulgeo, <i>I milk</i> ;	mulsi,	mulsum.
tergeo, <i>I wipe</i> ;	tersi,	tersum.
ardeo, <i>I burn</i> ;	arsī,	arsum.
rīdeo, <i>I laugh</i> ;	rīsi,	rīsum.
suadeo, <i>I persuade</i> ;	suasi,	suasum.
maneo, <i>I remain</i> ;	mansi,	mansum.
hæreo, <i>I stick</i> ;	hæsi,	hæsum.
(Sic et) So also,		
algeo, <i>I am chill</i> ;	alsi,	—
fulgeo, <i>I shine</i> ;	fulsi,	—
(Item) also,		
urgeo, <i>I push</i> ;	ursi.	—

(Sed) But (his) in these (Supinum) the Supine (deficit) is wanting.

(Dant *si* et *tum*) These two make the Preterperfect in *si*, and the supine in *tum*:

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Indulgeo, <i>I indulge</i> ;	indulsi,	indultum.
torqueo, <i>I twist</i> ;	torsi,	tortum.
Sed (But),		
Augeo, <i>I increase</i> ;	auxi,	auctum.
frigeo, <i>I am cold</i> ;	frixi,	—
lugeo, <i>I mourn</i> }	(dant) make luxi.	
luceo, <i>I shine</i> }		

(Sed) But (non generant) these three latter do not form (Supinum) a Supine.

(Hæc) The following (volunt) will have (*vi* suffici) *vi* to be added (Perfecto) to the Preterperfect Tense, (*tum* Supino) and *tum* to the Supine: —

Present	Preterp.	Supine
cāveo, <i>I beware</i> ;	cāvi,	cautum
fāveo, <i>I favour</i> ;	fāvi,	fautum.
fōveo, <i>I cherish</i> ;	fōvi,	fōtum.
mōveo, <i>I move</i> ;	mōvi,	mōtum.
vōveo, <i>I vow</i> ;	vōvi,	vōtum.*

(His) In the following (*ui stat*) *ui* stands (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect Tense, (*tum Supinum terminat*) *tum* is the termination of the Supine :

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
doceo, <i>I teach</i> ;	docui,	doctum.
misceo, <i>I mingle</i> ;	miscui,	mistum.
sorbeo, <i>I suck in</i> ;	sorbui †,	sorptum
teneo, <i>I hold</i> ;	tenui,	tentum.
torreo, <i>I roast</i> ;	torrui,	tostum.

(His) In the following (Præteritum) the Preterperfect (scribitur) is written (Passivè) Passively, (Præsens) the Present (Activè) Actively :

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
audeo, <i>I dare</i> ;	ausus sum.	_____
gaudeo, <i>I rejoice</i> ;	gavisus sum.	_____
soleo, <i>I am wont</i> ;	solitus sum.	_____

§ 81. (Verborum tertia conjugatio) the third conjugation of Verbs, (cui *o, is, ěre*, terminatio) the termination of which is *o, is, ěre*, (dat Perfectum) makes its Preterperfect Tense (variæ formæ) of diverse form ; (*tum vel sum*) *tum* or *sum* (stat) stands (Supino) in the Supine.

§ 82. (*Bo, po, habent*) *Bo* and *po* have (*psi additum Perfecto*) *psi* to end the Preterperfect, (*ptum Supino*) and *ptum* the Supine : (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
nubo, <i>I marry</i> ;	nupsi,	nuptum. ‡

(Tamen) But,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
rumpo, <i>I break</i> ;	rupi,	ruptum.
bibo, <i>I drink</i> ;	bibi.	bibitum.
strepo, <i>I roar</i> ;	strepui,	strepitum.

(Sic declino *co, go, ho, quo*) I thus decline *co, go, ho, quo* ; (*xi Perfecto*) *xi* in the Preterperfect ; (*ctum Supino*) *ctum* in the Supine : (ut) as,

\* Paveo, pavi ; ferveo, ferbui.

† Also sorpsi.

‡ Lambo. *I lick*, lambi : cumbo, *I lie down*, cubui, cubitum.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
duco, <i>I lead</i> ;	duxi,	ductum.
sugo, <i>I suck</i> ;	suxi,	suctum.
rego, <i>I rule</i> ;	rexī,	rectum.
veho, <i>I carry</i> ;	vexi,	vectum.

(*Sco jubet*) *Sco* desires (*vi subjici*) *vi* to end (Perfecto) Preterperfect, (*tum Supino*) and *tum* its Supine: (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
cresco, <i>I grow</i> ;	crevi,	cretum.
suesco, <i>I am habituated</i> ;	suevi,	suctum.
quiesco, <i>I rest</i> ;	quievi,	quietum.
nosco, <i>I know</i> ;	nōvi,	nōtum.*
pasco, <i>I feed</i> ;	pāvi,	pastum.
compesco, <i>I restrain</i> ;	compescui.	—
posco, <i>I require</i> ;	poposci.	—
disco, <i>I learn</i> ;	didici.	—
Ico, <i>I strike</i> ;	ici,	ictum.
vinco, <i>I conquer</i> ;	vīci,	victum.
linquo, <i>I leave</i> ;	liqui,	lictum.
Parco, <i>I spare</i> ;	peperci,†	parsum.
Spargo, <i>I sprinkle</i> ;	sparsi,	sparsum.
mergo, <i>I dip</i> ;	mersi,	mersum.
tergo, <i>I wipe</i> ;	tersi,	tersum.
Ago, <i>I do</i> ;	egi,	actum.
frango, <i>I break</i> ;	fregi,	fractum.
tango, <i>I touch</i> ;	tetigi,	tactum.
pango, <i>I covenant</i> ;	pepigi,	pactum ;
(sed Composita) but its Compounds make - <i>pegi</i> , - <i>pactum</i> .		
pungo, <i>I prick</i> ;	pupugi,‡	punctum.
jungo, <i>I join</i> ;	junxi,	junctum.
lego, <i>I read or gather</i> ;	lēgi,	lectum ;

(compositum) when compounded (*sæpè lexi dat*) it often forms *lexi*.§

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Figo, <i>I fix</i> ;	fixi,	fixum.
finco, <i>I frame</i> ;	finxi,	fictum.
pingo, <i>I paint</i> ;	pinxi,	pictum.
stringo, <i>I tie</i> ;	strinxi,	strictum.

(*Do jubet*) *Do* requires (*si suffici*) *si* to be joined (Perfecto) to its Preterperfect, (*sum Supino*) and *sum* to its Supine :

\* Of its compounds, agnosco makes Sup. agnitum ; cognosco, cognitum.

† Comparco, comparsi.

‡ Compounds of pungo make Preterp. punxi.

§ Of the compounds of lego, *I gather*, diligo forms dilexi ; intelligo intellexi ; negligo, neglexi. The others form lēgi, as colligo collegi ; so do the compounds of lego, *I read*, as perlego, perlegi.



Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
lædo, <i>I hurt</i> ;	læsi,	læsum.
(Verum) But,		
cedo, <i>I yield</i> ;	cessi,	cessum.
(Sic) So,		
illido, <i>I beat on</i> ;	illisi,	illisum.
divido, <i>I divide</i> ;	divisi,	divisum.

(Flecte) Form (vertendo) by changing (*do in di*) *do* into *di* (quæ exeunt) those which end (in *ando, endo*) in *ando endo*.\*

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
pendo, <i>I weigh</i> ;	pependi,	pensum.
tendo, <i>I stretch</i> ;	tetendi,	tensum.
(tamen) but,		
findo, <i>I cleave</i> ;	fidi,	fissum.
scindo, <i>I cut</i> ;	scidi,	scissum.
fundo, <i>I pour</i> ;	fudi,	fusum.
tundo, <i>I hammer</i> ;	tutudi,	tusum.
cudo, <i>I fashion</i> ;	cudi,	cusum.
cado, <i>I fall</i> ;	cecidī,	casum.
cædo, <i>I beat or kill</i> ;	cecidi,	cæsum.
ëdo, <i>I eat</i> ;	ëdi,	ësum.

Abdo, *I hide* ; addo, *I add* ; condo, *I store up* ; credo, *I trust* ; obdo, *I block up* ; perdo, *I lose* ; reddo, *I restore* ; edo, *I utter* ; prodo, *I betray* ; trado, *I deliver* ; vendo, *I sell* ; dedo, *I give up* ; (quæ) which (composita sunt a do) are compounded of do, *I give* ; (-didi, -ditum, efferunt) form *didi, -ditum* : (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
edo,	edidi,	editum.
dedo,	dedidi,	deditum.
flecto, <i>I bend</i> ;	flexi,	flexum.
necto, <i>I twine</i> ;	nexi,	nexum.
pecto, <i>I comb</i> ;	pexi†,	pexum.
peto, <i>I seek</i> ;	petivi,	petitum.
meto, <i>I mow</i> ;	messui,	messum.
mitto, <i>I send</i> ;	misi,	missum.
verto, <i>I turn</i> ;	verti,	versum.‡

(Verbum) A verb (quod fit a sisto) which is formed from sisto (sufficit -stīti Perfecto) joins to its Preterperfect -stīti.

§ 83. (So, sivi, situm, fit) So makes sivi, situm ; (sic formatur) thus is formed : —

\* As scando, scandi, scansum ; defendo, defendi, defensum.

† Also, nexui, pexui.

‡ Sterto, *I snore*, stertui.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
arcesso, <i>I send for</i> ;	arcessivi,	arcessitum.
laccio, <i>I provoke</i> ;	laccessivi,	laccessitum.
viso, <i>I visit</i> ;	visi,	—
pinso, <i>I pound</i> ;	pinsui,	pistum.*

§ 84. *Texo, I weave*, (stat) stands (unum in *xo*) the only verb in *xo*, (quod vindicat) which takes *texui*, *textum*.

§ 85. *Lo, lui, tum* : (sic flectitur) thus is formed

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Consulo, <i>I consult</i> ;	consului,	consultum.
occulo, <i>I hide</i> ;	occului,	occultum.
(Sed) But,		
colo, <i>I cultivate</i> ;	colui,	cultum.
molo, <i>I grind</i> ;	molui,	molitum.

(A cello verba cellui) Verbs compounded from *cello*, *I impel*, make *cellui* : (sed) but (conjugabis) you will form,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
percello, <i>I strike</i> ;	perculi,	perculsum.
pello, <i>I drive</i> ;	pepŭli,	pulsum.
vello, <i>I pluck</i> ;	velli and vulsi,	vulsum.
fallo, <i>I deceive</i> ;	fefelli,	falsum.
psallo, <i>I sing or play</i> ;	psalli,	—
sallo, <i>I salt</i> ;	—	salsum.

*Tollo, I raise*, (formatum) formed in the Preterperfect *sustuli*, (fit) becomes (in Supino) in the Supine *sublatum*.

(*Mo, mui, mitum fit*) *mo* forms *mui, mitum* ; (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
fremo, <i>I bellow</i> ;	fremui,	fremitum.
gemo, <i>I groan</i> ;	gemui,	gemitum.
tremo, <i>I tremble</i> ;	tremui,	—
(Supino carens) Which has no supine.		
como, <i>I deck</i> ;	comsi,	comtum.
promo, <i>I produce</i> ;	promsi,	promptum.
(Sic flectuntur) Sc are formed,		
sumo, <i>I take</i> ;	sumsi,	sumtum.
demo, <i>I take away</i> ;	demsī,	demtum.
(Sed) But,		
emo, <i>I buy</i> ;	ēmi,	emtum.
premo, <i>I press</i> ;	pressi,	pressum.

(Latini) Latin writers (sæpè ponunt *p*) often interpose *p* (inter *m* et *s* vel *t*) between *m* and *s* or *t*. (Sic fiunt) Thus are formed *sumpsi*, *dempsi*, *demptum*, *comptum*, *promptum*, *sumptum*, *emptum*, &c.

\* Also *pinsum*.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
<b>Cano, I sing;</b> (composita) its compounds make <i>-cinni, -centum.</i>	<b>cecini,</b>	<b>cantum;</b>
<b>pono, I place;</b>	<b>posui,</b>	<b>positum.</b>
<b>gigno, I beget;</b>	<b>genui,</b>	<b>genitum.</b>
<b>temno, I despise;</b>	<b>temsi, or tempsi,</b>	<b>temtum.</b>
<b>sterno, I strew;</b>	<b>stravi,</b>	<b>stratum.</b>
<b>sperno, I despise;</b>	<b>sprevi,</b>	<b>spretum.</b>
<b>cerno, I discern;</b>	<b>crevi,</b>	<b>cretum.</b>
<b>lino, I anoint;</b>	<b>lēvi,</b>	<b>lītum.</b>
<b>sino, I allow;</b>	<b>sivi,</b>	<b>situm.</b>
<b>verro, I brush;</b>	<b>verri,</b>	<b>versum.</b>
<b>curro, I run;</b>	<b>cucurri,</b>	<b>cursum.</b>
<b>quæro, I seek;</b>	<b>quæsiui,</b>	<b>quæsitum.</b>
<b>tero, I rub;</b>	<b>trivi,</b>	<b>tritum.</b>
<b>uro, I burn;</b>	<b>ussi,</b>	<b>ustum.</b>
<b>gero, I carry on;</b>	<b>gessi,</b>	<b>gestum.</b>
<b>fero, I bear,</b>	<b>tuli,</b>	<b>latum.</b>
<b>sero, I sow, or plant;</b>	<b>sevi,</b>	<b>sātum.</b>

Sero (dat) makes serui, sertum, (si stat) if it stands (cum vi recendi) with the meaning of joining.

## § 86.

<b>Facio, I make;</b>	<b>fecit,</b>	<b>factum.</b>
<b>jacio, I cast;</b>	<b>jecit,</b>	<b>jectum.</b>

(Dant a lacio) Compounds of  
lacio, I tice; make

lexi, lectum.\*

(Et a specio) and compounds of

specio, I spy; spexi, spectum.

fodio, I dig; fōdi, fossum.

fugio, I fly; fūgi, fūgitum.

capio, I take; cēpi, captum.

rapio, I snatch; rapui, raptum.

pario, I bring forth; peperit, partum.†

cupio, I desire; cupivi, cupitum.

quatio, I shake; —, quassum.

(Sed) But (in Compositis) in the Compounds (dat) it forms  
-cussum.

## § 87. (Uo format) Uo forms ui, utum: (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
<b>tribuo, I afford;</b>	<b>tribui,</b>	<b>tributum.‡</b>

(Vo inflectit) Vo forms vi and utum: (ut) as,

<b>solvo, I loose, or pay;</b>	<b>solvi,</b>	<b>solutum.</b>
<b>volvo, I roll;</b>	<b>volvi,</b>	<b>volutum.</b>

\* As allicio, allexi: but elicio, elicui, elicium.

† Fut. Part. pariturus.

‡ Ruō, Sup. rūtum; Fut. Part. ruiturus.

(Tamen) but,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Fluo, <i>I flow</i> ;	fluxi,	fluxum.
struo, <i>I build</i> ;	struxi,	structum.
vivo, <i>I live</i> ;	vixi,	victum.
stinguo, <i>I quench</i> ;	stinxi,	stinctum.*

§ 88. (Verborum quarta conjugatio) the fourth conjugation of Verbs, (cui *io, is, ire, terminatio*) the termination of which is *io, is, ire*, (fit) becomes (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect Tense *ivi*, (Supino *itum* sufficit) and makes its Supine end in *itum*.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Sancio, <i>I ratify</i> ;	sanxi,	sanctum :
(nec respuit) nor does it	reject sancivi, sancitum.	
vincio, <i>I bind</i> ;	vinxi,	vinctum
fulcio, <i>I prop</i> ;	fulsi,	fultum.
sarcio, <i>I darn</i> ;	sarsi,	sartum.
farcio, <i>I stuff</i> ;	farsi,	fartum.
amicio, <i>I clothe</i> ;	amicui,	amictum.
salio, <i>I dance</i> ;	salui or salii,	saltum.
At (but)		
singultio, <i>I sob</i> ;	singultivi,	singultum.
sepelio, <i>I bury</i> ;	sepelivi,	sepultum.
venio, <i>I come</i> ;	vēni,	ventum.
vēneo, <i>I am sold</i> † ;	vēnii,	—
sepio, <i>I fence in</i> ;	sepsi.	septum.
aperio, <i>I open</i> ;	aperui,	apertum.
comperio, <i>I find out</i> ;	comperi,	compertum.
reperio, <i>I find</i> ;	repperi,	repertum.
haurio, <i>I drain</i> ;	hausi,	haustum.
sentio, <i>I perceive</i> ;	sensi,	sensum.

§ 89. (Flexeris) You must form (Deponentia) Deponent Verbs (ex regulis) according to the rules (Activorum) of Active Verbs : (nam) for (Præteritum Passivum) the Preterperfect Passive (est) is (Derivativum) a Derivative (Supini) of the Supine.

Present.	Preterp.
(1.) Reor, <i>I think</i> ;	ratus sum
misereor, <i>I pity</i> ;	misertus sum. ‡
fateor, <i>I confess</i> ;	fassus sum :
(flecte sis) form (-fessus in Compocitis) -fessus in the Compounds.	
(2.) Labor, <i>I fall</i> ;	lapsus sum.
utor, <i>I use</i> ;	usus sum.

\* Only known in its compounds *distinguo, extinguo*.

† Veneo is from *venum-eo*, as *vendo* from *venum-do*.

‡ Also *miseritus sum*.

Present.	Preterp.
loquor, <i>I speak</i> ;	locutus sum.
æquor, <i>I follow</i> ;	secutus sum.
nitor, <i>I strive</i> ,	nisus, or nixus, sum.
irascor, <i>I am angry</i> ;	iratus sum.
queror, <i>I complain</i> ;	questus sum.
gradior, <i>I step</i> ;	gressus sum.
patior, <i>I suffer</i> ;	passus sum :
(et) and (- <i>pessus</i> in Compositis)	- <i>pessus</i> in its Compounds
ulciscor, <i>I avenge</i> ;	ultus sum.
apiscor, <i>I acquire</i> ;	aptus sum.
(Sed) but	
adipiscor, <i>I acquire</i> ;	adeptus sum.
profiscor, <i>I go</i> ;	profectus sum.
expergiscor, <i>I awake</i> ;	experrectus sum.
obliscor, <i>I forget</i> ;	oblitus sum.
commiscor, <i>I imagine</i> ;	commentus sum. *
(Sed) but	
nanciscor, <i>I find</i> ;	nactus sum.
paciscor, <i>I covenant</i> ;	pactus sum.
mori, <i>I die</i> ;	mortuus sum. †
nascor, <i>I am born</i> ;	natus sum.
orior, <i>I arise</i> ;	ortus sum. ‡
(Queis Futura) The Future Participles of which last three Verbs are moriturus, nasciturus, oriturus.	

(Quartæ) of the fourth conjugation,

Present.	Preterp.
Metior, <i>I measure</i> ,	mensus sum.
ordior, <i>I begin</i> ;	orsus sum.
At (but)	
experior, <i>I try</i> ;	expertus sum.
opperior, <i>I wait for</i> ;	oppertus sum.

§ 90. (Flexeris) You must conjugate (Inceptiva) Inceptive Verbs (ducta a Verbis) derived from Verbs (ut Primitiva) as their Primitives ; (sic) thus

Present.	Preterp.
exardesco, <i>I begin to blaze</i> ;	exarsi (from ex, ardeo).
obsolesco, <i>I grow out of date</i> ;	obsolevi (from obs, oleo).
tremisco, <i>I begin to tremble</i> ;	tremui (from tremo).
rescisco, <i>I begin to know</i> ;	rescivi (from scio).

\* Commiscor, and reminiscor (which has no Supine), are Compounds of an obsolete verb *meniscor*.

† Morior, Infin. *mori*, and sometimes *moriri*.

‡ Orior is partly declined after the 3d Conjugation, partly after the 4th. Pres. *Orior*, *orëris*, *oritur*, *orimur*, &c. But Infin. *Oriri* ; Imperf. Conj. *Orirer*.

So Potior, *I obtain*. Pres. *Potior*, *potiris* and *potëris*, *potitur* and *potitur*, &c. Imperf. Subj. *Potirer* and *potërer*, *potireris* and *potëreris*, &c. Preterp. *Potitus sum*. Infin. *Potiri*.

(*Ui terminus*) *Ui* is the termination (Perfecto) to the Preterperfect (factorum) of those formed (ex Nominibus) from Nouns : (sic) thus,

Present.  
evanesco, *I vanish* ;  
consanesco, *I get well* ;

Preterp.  
evanui (from e, vanus).  
consanui (from cum, sanus).

(Plurima) Very many (carent Supinis) have no Supines ; (multis) in many (Perfecta) Preterperfects (non apparent) do not appear. \*

(*Hæxeris*) you must form (Impersonalia) Impersonal Verbs (ex regulis) according to the rules (Personalium) of Personals.

Present.  
pudet, *it shames* ;  
pœnitet, *it repents* ;

But,  
miseret, *it affects with pity* ;  
libet, *it pleases* ; §  
tædet, *it wearies* ;  
piget, *it irks* ;

Preterp  
puduit. †  
pœnituit.  
misertum est. ‡  
libuit and libitum est.  
pertæsum est and tæduit.  
pigitum est and piguit. ||

(In operibus Latinis) in Latin works (apparent) appear (lectitantibus) to readers (multa Verba) many Verbs

- \* The following are the only Inceptive Verbs which have Supines :—  
Abolesco, adolesco, obsolesco, exolesco, coalesco, congelasco, exardesco, concupisco, convalesco, indolesco, obdormisco, inveterasco, scisco, revivisco.

The following have neither Supine nor Preterperfect : —

Ægresco, arboresco, albesco, ditiesco, dulcesco, grandesco, hebesco, herbescio, ignesco, incurvesco, juvenesco, mitesco, mollesco, pinguesco, plumesco, puerasco, silvesco, sterilesco, tenerasco, fatisco, augesco, hisco, labasco, renidesco.

Most of the others have Preterperfects, but no Supines.

† Or puditum est.

‡ Or miseritum est.

§ Also written lubet. Its compound is collibet, collibuit, and collibitum est.

|| Add also licet, *it is lawful*, licuit and licitum est.

Pudet and licet have the Active Future Participles, puditurus, liciturus. Pudet, piget, pœnitet, have Gerunds and Passive Participles in *ius*, pudendi, &c., pigendi, &c., pœnitendi, &c.

Many Verbs have the 3d Person Singular used impersonally : as, delectat and juvat, *it delights* ; constat, *it is acknowledged* ; præstat, *it is better* ; restat, *it remains* ; apparet, *it appears* ; accidit, *it happens* ; sufficit, *it is enough* ; evenit, *it comes to pass* ; expedit, *it is expedient* ; tonat, *it thunders* ; pluit, *it rains* ; and numerous others.

(quæ carent Supinis) which have no Supines, (multa quæ Perfecto) and many which have no Preterperfect.\*

§ 91. (Converteris) You must change (*a* in *e*) *a* into *e* (horum in Compositis) in the Compounds of the following Verbs : arceo, *I exclude* ; carpo, *I crop* ; damno, *I condemn* ; lacto, *I entice* ; fatiscor, *I am weary* ; fallo, *I deceive* ; farcio, *I stuff* ; jacto, *I toss or boast* ; gradior, *I step* ; patior, *I suffer* ; partior, *I divide* ; tracto, *I treat* ; pario, *I bring forth* ; patro, *I perform* ; (atque) and cando, *I inflame* ; sacro, *I devote* ; spargo, *I sprinkle* ; (atque) and scando, *I climb*. †

(Converteris) You must change (*a* in *i*) *a* into *i* (horum in Compositis) in the compounds of the following Verbs : ago, *I act* ; cado, *I fall* ; cano, *I sing* ; frango, *I break* ; habeo, *I have* ; lateo, *I lie hid* ; fateor, *I confess* ; pango, *I*

\* The Verbs which have no Supines are : —

The Compounds of nuo and guo (as abnuo, ingruo) ; the Compounds of cado (except occido) ; Neuter Verbs in *-ueo*, as paveo ; Neuter Verbs in *-eo*, *-ui* (except caleo, careo, doleo, jaceo, lateo, mereo, noceo, oleo, pareo, placeo, taceo, valeo) ; also, algeo, timeo, urgeo, lugeo, fulgeo, frigeo, turgeo, luceo, strideo, ango, clango, disco, posco, compesco, dego, lambo, mico, refello, metuo, psallo, respuo, tremo, sapio, gestio, ineptio, and some others.

The Verbs which have neither Preterperfect nor Supines, besides the Inceptives, are : —

Desiderativa in *-urio* (except parturio, esurio) ; also, ægreo, flaveo, caneo, hebeo, scateo, liveo, renideo, polleo, vegeo, humeo, aveo, lacteo, mæreo, ambigo, furo, ferio, labo, vergo, plecto, vado, reminiscor, diffiteor, ringor, medeor, vescor, liquor, liquet, and some others

† Arceo : comp. coerceo, exerceo.

Carpo . . . decerpo, excerpo, discerpo.

Damno . . . condemno.

Lacto . . . delecto, oblecto.

Fatiscor . . . defetiscor.

Fallo . . . refello.

Farcio . . . confercio, differcio, infercio, refercio.

Jacto . . . disjecto, objecto, &c.

Gradior . . . aggredior, congrador, egredior, ingredior, prægredior, progredior, transgredior, digredior.

Patior . . . perpetior.

Partior . . . dispartior, impartior.

Tracto . . . attracto, contracto, detracto, obtrecto.

Patro . . . impetro, perpetro.

Cando . . . accendo, incendo, succendo.

Sacro . . . consecro, desecro, exsecro, obsecro.

Spargo . . . adspargo, conspergo, dispergo, inspergo, respargo,

Scando . . . adscendo, conscendo, descendo, transcendo.

*fasten* ; *salio*, *I dance or leap* ; *statuo*, *I decree* ; (*atque*) and *tango*, *I touch* ; *capio*, *I take* ; *rapio*, *I snatch* ; *sapio*, *I am wise* ; *facio*, *I do* ; *jacio*, *I cast* ; *lacio*, *I entice* ; *placeo*, *I please* ; *taceo*, *I am silent*. \*

(Excepta) The following are excepted : *perago*, *I perform* ; *perplaceo*, *I please thoroughly* ; (*et*) and *facio*, *I do*, (*mistum cum Adverbiis*) compounded with Adverbs.

(Convertito) Change (*a* in *u*) *a* into *u* (*ex*) in Verbs compounded of *calco*, *I tread* ; *salto*, *I dance* ; *quatio*, *I shake*. †

(Converteris) You must change (*e* in *i*) *e* into *i* (*horum in*

- \* **Ago** : comp. *abigo*, *adigo*, *exigo*, *transigo*, *ambigo*. But *circumago*, *perago*, *satago* : (-ēgi, -actum).
- Cado** . . . *accido*, *concido*, *decido*, *excido*, *incido*, *occido*, *procido* : (-cīdi, -casum).
- Cano** . . . *accino*, *concino*, *occino*, *præcino*, *recino*. *succino* : (-cinui, -centum).
- Frango** . . . *confringo*, *diffingo*, *effringo*, *infringo*, *perfringo*, *præfringo*, *refringo* : (-fregi, -fractum).
- Habeo** . . . *adhibeo*, *exhibeo*, *inhibeo*, *perhibeo*, *prohibeo*. But *posthabeo*.
- Lateo** . . . *deliteo*.
- Fateor** . . . *confiteor*, *profiteor*, *diffiteor* : (-fessus).
- Pango** . . . *compingo*, *impingo*, *oppingo* : (-pegi, -pactum).  
But *repango*.
- Salio** . . . *adsilio*. So *circumsilio*, *desilio*, *dissilio*, *exsilio*, *insilio*, *præsilio*, *prosilio*, *resilio*, *subsilio*, *transilio* : (-silui or -silii, -sultum).
- Statuo** . . . *constituo*, *destituo*, *instituo*, *restituo*, *substituo*.
- Tango** . . . *attingo*, *contingo*, *pertingo* : (-tigi, -tactum).
- Capio** . . . *accipio*, *concipio*, *decipio*, *excipio*, *incipio*, *percipio*, *præcipio*, *recipio*, *suscipio* : (-cepi, -ceptum).
- Rapio** . . . *abripio*, *arripio*, *corripio*, *deripio*, *diripio*, *eripio*, *præripio*, *proripio*, *surripio* : (-ripui, -reptum).
- Sapio** . . . *desipio*, *resipisco*.
- Facio** . . . *afficio*, *conficio*, *deficio*, *efficio*, *inficio*, *perficio*, *præficio*, *proficio*, *reficio*, *sufficio* : (-feci, -fectum).  
But *benefacio*, *malefacio* : (feci, factum).
- Jacio** . . . *abjicio*, *adjicio*, *conjicio*, *disjicio*, *ejicio*, *injicio*, *objicio*, *projicio*, *rejicio*, *subjicio*, *transjicio* : (-jaci, -jectum).
- Lacio** . . . *allicio*, *elicio*, *illicio*, *pellicio*.
- Placeo** . . . *displiceo*. But *perplaceo*, *complaceo*.
- Taceo** . . . *conticeo*, *reticeo*.
- † **Calco** : comp. *conculco*, *inculco*, *proculco*.
- Salto** . . . *adsulto*, *exsulto*, *insulto*, *resulto*.
- Quatio** . . . *decutio*, *discutio*, *excutio*, *incutio*, *percutio*, *recutio*, *succutio* : (-cussi, -cussum).



Compositis) in the Compounds of the following Verbs: *egeo*, *I want*; *teneo*, *I hold*; (atque) and *emo*, *I buy*; *specio*, *I spy*; *sedeo*, *I sit*; (atque) and *premo*, *I press*; (adde) add *dedi*, *I gave*; (atque) and *lego*, *I gather*; (adde) add *steti*, *I stood*; (atque) and *rego*, *I rule*.\*

(Sunt excepta) The following are excepted: *relego*, *I read again*; *perlego*, *I read through*; (et) and *prælego*, *I read publicly*.

(Si) If (mutato Simplici) the Simple Verb being changed (Compositi Præsens) the Present Tense of the Compound Verb (sumsit *i*) has taken *i*, (sumet *ē*) it will take *ē* (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect, (si) if (valet) it is able (fingerē) to make the vowel (longam) long: (sic) thus,

Present.	Preterp.
deficio, <i>I fail</i> ;	defēci.
projicio, <i>I throw</i> ;	projēcī.
conspicio, <i>I behold</i> ;	conspēxi.
dirigo, <i>I direct</i> ;	dirēxi.
pergo (per-rego), <i>I proceed</i> ;	perrēxi.
surgo (sus-rego), <i>I rise</i> ;	surrēxi.
porrigo (pro-rego), <i>I stretch</i> ;	porrēxi. †

(Composta) The Compounds (a) from *quæro*, *I seek*; *cædo*, *I beat* or *kill*; (et) and (a) from *lædo*, *I hurt*; (mutant) change (*æ* in *i*) *æ* into *i*. ‡

\* *Egeo*: comp. *indigeo*.

*Teneo* . . . *attineo*, *contineo*, *detineo*, *distineo*, *obteneo*, *per-tineo*, *retineo*, *sustineo*: (-*tinui*, -*tentum*).

*Emo* . . . *adimo*, *dirimo*, *eximo*, *interimo*, *perimo*, *redimo*: (-*emi*, -*entum*). But *coemo*, *dēmo* (for *de-imo*).

*Specio* . . . *adspicio*, *conspicio*, *despicio*, *dispicio*, *inspicio*, *per-spicio*, *prospicio*, *respicio*, *suspicio*: (-*spexi*, -*spectum*).

*Sedeo* . . . *assideo*, *consideo*, *desideo*, *dissideo*, *insideo*, *obsideo*, *præsideo*, *resideo*: (-*sedi*, -*sessum*).

*Premo* . . . *comprimo*, *deprimo*, *exprimo*, *imprimo*, *opprimo*, *perprimo*, *reprimo*, *supprimo*: (-*pressi*, -*pressum*).

*Lego*, *I* } . . . *colligo*, *deligo*, *diligo*, *eligo*, *intelligo*, *negligo*, *se-*  
*gather* } *ligo*. The Compounds of *Lego*, *I read*, keep *e*.

*Rego* . . . *corrigo*, *dirigo*, *erigo*, &c.: (-*rexī*, -*rectum*).

† This rule applies only where the Simple Verb has *e* in the Stem-syllable of the Preterperfect, as in the examples given. When the Stem-vowel is not lengthened in the Preterperfect, *i* is kept, as *continui*: also when the Stem-vowel of the Simple Preterperfect is not *e*, as *illisi*.

‡ *Quæro*: comp. *acquiro*, *conquiro*, *disquiro*, *exquiro*, *inquiro*, *per-quiro*.

*Cædo* . . . *accido*, *concido*, *decido*, *excido*, *incido*, *occido*, *præcido*, *recido*, *succido*.

**Plaudo, I applaud,** (convertit) changes *au* in *o* *au* into *o*: **claudo, I shut,** (commutat) changes (*au* in *u*) *au* into *u*: **obedio, I obey,** (solummodo) only (ex audio) compounded from audio, **I hear,** (dat *au* in *e*) changes *au* into *e*.\*

(Reduplicatio) The Reduplication (Simplicis) of the Simple Verb (exibit) will disappear (a Compositis) from the Compounds: (sic) thus (a) from **pello, I drive away,** *pepuli*, (fit) comes **impello, I impel,** *impuli*.

(Sed) But (Composta) the Compounds (a) from **disco, I learn;** **posco, I require;** **do, I give;** (et) and (a) from **sto, I stand;** (servant) keep the Reduplication.†

§ 92. (Præpositio *cum*) The Preposition *cum* (fit *con-*) becomes *con-* (quando stat compositum) when it appears in Composition.

**Ambi, re, se, sus,** (et) and **dis** (stant tantum) appear only (in Compositis) in Compounds.‡

(Præpositio) A Preposition (sæpe mutat) often changes (terminantem consonantem) its final consonant (sic) in such a way (ut fiat) that it may become (similis) assimilated (consonanti Simplicis) to the first consonant of the Simple Verb. (ut) as,

ad-fero (fit) becomes affero.  
in-lino . . . illino.

obpeto becomes oppeto

(Convertite) Change (*n* in *m*) *n* into *m* (ante *b* vel ante *p*) before *b* or *p*: (ut) as,

con-bibo (fit) becomes combibo

in-plico becomes implico.

(Alia aliæ transferunt) Other Prepositions make other changes (*quæ*) which (*longa sunt relatu*) are long to recount.

Lædo . . . allido, collido, elido, illido.

(The *i* of these Compounds remains in the Preterperfect; as, **acquisivi, occidi, elisi.**)

\* **Plaudo:** comp. **complodo, explodo, supplodo.** But **applaudo.**

**Claudo** . . . **concludo, discludo, excludo, includo, intercludo, ocludo, præcludo, recludo** (-clusi, -clusum).

† **Disco:** comp. **addisco, condisco, dedisco, edisco;** Preterp. -**didici.**

**Posco** . . . **deposco, exposco, reposco;** Preterp. -**poposci.**

**Sto** . . . **adsto, consto, exsto, insto, præsto;** Preterp. -**steti;** **circumsto, supersto;** Preterp. -**steti.**

‡ **Ambi, around, about;** **re, again, back;** **se, apart;** **dis, in different parts or ways.** Some grammarians think **sus** to be put for **subs, under;** others form it from **susum, for sursum, up;** which is more suitable to the sense of the words in which it is found, though the Participle **sublatus,** from **sustuli,** affords an argument for the first opinion.

(Do) I give (*hoc unum*) this single thing (*notandum*) to be remarked \* :

ab-fero (*fit*) becomes aufero.

|

ab-fugio becomes aufugio.

\* The following are the changes of Prepositions in Composition : —

(1) A, ab, abs, *from*. A, before *m* and *v*; as, amitto, avertō. Abs, before *c* and *t*; as, abscedo, absterreo: shortened into as before *p*, as aspello, asporto. Ab, before other letters. But note, aufero, aufugio.

(2) Ad, *to*. Unchanged before vowels, and before *h, j, m, v*; as, adeo, adhibeo, adjungo, admiror, advoco. Becomes ac before *qu*; as, acquiro. Assimilated before the other consonants; as, accedo, attero: but may remain unchanged before most of them; as, adfero or affero, adsumo or assumo.

(3) Con, for cum, *with*. Becomes com- before *b, m, p*; as, com-bibo, commoveo, compono. Assimilated before *l, r*; as, colludo, corrumpo. Becomes cō before vowels and *h*; as, coalesco, cohæreo; except comedo. Unchanged before the other consonants; as, concutio, convoco. Observe cognosco.

(4) E, ex, *out of*. Ex, before vowels, and before *c, p, q, s, t*; as, exeo, excludo, expungo, exquiro, exsculpo, extraho. Assimilated before *f*; as, effundo. E before the other consonants; as, educo, eniteo.

(5) In, in, into, towards, against, upon. Becomes im before *b, m, p*; as, imbibo, immitto, impello. Assimilated before *l* and *r*; as, illudo, irruo. Unchanged before other letters; as, inco, incumbo. Observe ignosco.

(6) Ob, over-against. Assimilated before *c, f, g, p*; as, occurro, offero, oggannio, oppono: unchanged before other letters. But note obsolesco, ostendo.

(7) Sub, under (*secretly*). Assimilated before *c, f, g, m, p, r*; as, succumbo, sufficio, suggero, summoveo, suppono, surripio: but sometimes remains unchanged before these letters; as, subrideo, subruo. Unchanged before vowels and the other consonants; as, subeo, subtraho.

(8) Trans, across, beyond. Becomes trā in a few Verbs; as, trado, trano. Tran before *s*; as, tran-scribo. Unchanged before other letters.

(9) Ambi, around, about. Becomes amb before vowels; as, ambeo. Am before *p*; as, amplector. An before *c, q, f*; as, anquiro, anfractus.

(10) Dis, di, in different parts or ways. Dis before *c, p, q, s, t*; as, discumbo, displiceo, disquiro, disseco, distraho. Assimilated before *f*; as, differo. Before *j* sometimes dis; as, disjicio: sometimes di; as, dijudico. Before other consonants, di; as, dimoveo. But dirumpo and dirumpo.

(11) Re, again, back. Unchanged before consonants; as, requiro. Becomes red before vowels; as, redarguo. Buttman considers red the original form of this preposition (as also sed of se, prod of pro); whence reddo for re-do; rē-cīdit for red-cīdit; rettuli, reppuli, repperi, for red-tuli, red-puli, red-peri.

(12) Ante, before; circum, around; de, from, (down); inter, among, between; per, through; præ, before; pro, for, instead of (forward); post, after; præter, beside; subter, beneath; super, above; se, apart; sus, up, are unchanged in Composition. Except the following instances: anticipo, circuit, intelligo, pellicio, pelluceo. pejero. Note prodeo and prodigo for pro-eo and pro-ago.

§ 93. A. I. Adjectives, Participles, and Pronouns, agree with their Substantives in-gender, number, and case : as, *No friend will-go to lost wealth.*

The-Substantive is-understood by Ellipse\* : as, *Most shun toil.* (Supply *men.*)

Neuter Adjectives perform the-office of-Substantives : as, *Death is last of-all things.*

II. A-finite Verb agrees with its-Nominative-Case in-number and person : as, *All vices war against nature.*

Sometimes an-Infinitive, or some Phrase, is-put for the-Nominative : as, *To-lie is not mine.* — *How long life is going-to-be, is uncertain.*

The-Nominative of-Pronouns is-expressed seldom : as, *We-lean always towards the-forbidden, and we-desire things-denied.*

Unless it-avail for-distinction or emphasis : as, *I expelled kings ; ye bring-in tyrants.*

Impersonal-Verbs have not a-Nominative expressed : as, *It-irks and earnestly repents himself.*

The-Persons of-the-Verb *sum* (I am) often are-understood . as, *Nothing (is)-good except what (is)-honourable.*

The-Infinitive sometimes is-put-after the-Nominative : as, *Then pious Æneas began-to-tear-off the-robe from-his-shoulders.*

But the-Infinitive generally is-put-after the-Accusative, a-finite Verb going-before : as, *Men-report that-Homer was blind.*

III. The-Relative agrees with its-antecedent † in-gender, number, and person, but in-case it-is-construed with its-own sentence : as, *That is the-pleasantest friendship, which resemblance of-characters has-coupled.*

B. A-Substantive, Singular in form but not in-meaning, often has a-Verb, an-Adjective, or a-Relative, plural : as, *Part load the-tables with-viands.* — *The-Tegeatan youth come-up slow to-the-succour.*

Two or more singular Nouns generally have an-Adjective, Verb, or Relative, plural : as, *Hannibal and Philopæmen were taken-off by-poison.*

The-plural Verb agrees generally with the-Nominative of-the-worthier Person : but the-Adjective or Relative with the-Noun of-the-worthier Gender.

The-First Person is worthier than the-Second, the-Second than the-Third : as, *If thou and Tullia are-well, I and Cicero are-well.*

In things having-life the-Masculine Gender is worthier than the-Feminine : as, *My (literally, to-me) father and mother are dead.*

\* Ellipsis (ellipse) is a Figure of Syntax which leaves out some word or words belonging to the regular construction of the Sentence.

† The Antecedent of the Relative is that word or those words to which the Relative is referred.

But in things without-life, the-Adjective or Relative will-be most-frequently in the-Neuter Gender: as, *Riches, honour, glory, are placed within your-view.* (literally, *eyes.*)

Copulative Verbs\*, *sum* (I-am) *fio* (I-become) *videor* (I-seem) *vocor* (I-am-called), with the-like, whether of-a-Finite or Infinitive Mood, have the-same case on-either-side: as, *A-long syllable placed-after a-short, is-called Iambus.* — *I-am-acknowledged a-royal boy by established tokens.* — *It-is-allowed you to-be happy!*

A-Verb, placed between two Nominatives, sometimes agrees with the-latter alone: as, *The-quarrels of-lovers are the-renewal of-love.*

A-Relative placed between two Substantives of-the-same thing†, often agrees with the-latter alone: as, *Thebes, which is the-capital of-Bæotia.*

To-a-Substantive, Pronoun, and sometimes to-a-Sentence, a-Substantive of-the-same thing‡ may be-put-in-Apposition in the-same case: as, *Riches, incentives of-evils, are-dug-out (of the earth).* — *We consuls are-wanting.* — *Let-him-reflect (that) an-orator is-being-formed, a-difficult matter.*

When two Substantives of-different things come-together, one is-put in the-Genitive-Case: as, *Reclining under the-cover of-a-beech-tree.*

§ 94. C. I. Verbs Transitive govern an-Accusative of-the-nearer Object: as, *Despise pleasures.* — *In-the-first-place, worship God.*

Some Neuter and Passive Verbs admit an-Accusative of-their-own operation§: as, *He-serves a-hard slavery.* — *Claudius played hazard.*

Some Verbs, especially those of-asking and teaching, have a-double Accusative: as, *We-all demand of-thee peace.* — *Why now should-I-teach thee letters, O-ass?*

Most of these-Verbs keep the-Accusative of-the-thing in the-Passive Voice: as, *She-delights to-be-taught Ionic movements.*

The-Accusative of-respect in-the-Greek manner is-placed-after Neuter and Passive Verbs as-well as Adjectives: as, *He-quivers with-his-ears and trembles in-his-limbs.* — *(She is) all dyed with-redness in-her-tender cheeks.* — *They-are naked as-to-their arms.*

\* See § 101.

† That is, which are both used to define the same person or thing; as, *Animal and hominem: Thebæ and caput.*

‡ By a Substantive of the same thing is meant one which expresses the same person or thing in another character or by another title, for the purpose of definition or explanation.

§ Called the Cognate Accusative

These Prepositions govern an-Accusative: *Ante* (before), *apud* (at, with, among), *ad* (to, at), *adversus* (over-against, towards), *circum* (around), *circa* (around, about), *citra*, *cis* (on-the-near-side-of), *contra* (against, over-against), *inter* (between, among), *erga* (towards), *extra* (out-of), *infra* (beneath), *intra* (within), *juxta* (near), *ob* (on-account-of, before), *penes* (in-the-power-of), *pone* (behind), *post* (behind, after, since) *præter* (beside, beyond, except), *prope* (near), *propter* (on-account-of, nigh), *per* (through, by), *secundum* (after, along, according to), *supra* (above), *versus* (towards), *ultra* (beyond), *trans* (across). To these add *super* (above, over), *subter* (beneath), and *in* (into, towards, to, upon, against, &c.), *sub* (under, about) if motion takes-place.

II. The-Vocative, the-Case of-one-called, is-governed by an-Interjection either expressed or understood: as, *Son*, or, *O Son*.

The-Interjections *en* and *ecce* (lo!) govern the-Accusative and the-Nominative; *O*, *ah*, *heu*, *hem*, *proh* (alas), the Accusative, the-Nominative, and the-Vocative: as, *Lo a-wretched man!*—*Lo a-new disturbance and quarrel!*—*Alas pitiable boy!*—*Alas (for) human emptiness!*—*The-honour of-gods and men forfend!*—*Holy Jupiter forfend!*

*Hei* and *væ* (alas!) govern a-Dative: as, *Alas me wretched!*—*Woe-to-thee, pleader!*

III. Almost all Adjectives and Verbs, also Adverbs and Substantives, govern a-Dative of-the-remoter Object, for-the-sake of-which something is or is-done: as, *We-wish to-be rich not only for-ourselves.*—*For-me in-yon-place (there-is) neither sowing nor reaping.*—*Numa chose virgins for-Vesta.*—*For-the-city he-is a-father, and for-the-city a-husband.*

Accordingly *sum* signifying possessively has a-Dative of-the-possessor: as, *For there-is to-me (i. e. I have) a-father at-home; there-is (i. e. I have) a-cruel stepmother.*

Very-many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs govern a-Dative, sometimes even Substantives, by which is-signified advantage, communication, comparison, consecration, agreement, habit, help, and fitness, kindness, nearness, pleasantness, affinity, delivery, indulgence, demonstration, promise, trust, and narration, compliance, command, and whatever (is) contrary to-these; together with *nubo* (I-marry), *vaco* (I-am-at-leisure-for): other-instances will-stand under the-First Rule: as, *Let-him-be serviceable to-his-country, useful to-the-fields.*—*A-poet is bordering-on an-orator.*—*A-multitude burdensome to peace, and hostile to-quiet rest.*—*It-is proper-to-live agreeably to-nature.*—*He-lends a-patient ear to-cultivation.*—*What he-gives to-another, he-takes-from himself.*—*(He) assured this to-me, and persuaded (me of it).*—*Fortune guarantees safety to-us.*—*Philosophy heals minds.*—*We-favour thee.*—*I-am-wroth-with thee.*—*The-conquering side pleased the-*

*Gods, but the-conquered (pleased) Cato.—Spare a-pious race.—A snake appeared to-Sulla sacrificing.—O beautiful boy, trust not too-much to-complexion.—Amassed money rules or serves each-man.—Wilt-thou-combat even a-love which-has-pleased?—Venus married Vulcan.—I-give-my-leisure always to-philosophy.—(There is) no trusting to-partners of-sovereignty.*

*Communis* (common), *similis* (like), *proprius* (peculiar), *par* (equal), and *alienus* (foreign), and more-Adjectives, sometimes prefer a-Dative, sometimes a-Genitive: as, *Middle-things are likeliest to-true.—Thinkest-thou (that) the-Gods are like thyself?—Activity of-mind is natural to-us.—To-speak ornamentally is the-property of-an-orator.*

*Delecto* (I-delight); *juvo* (I-help or please); *jubeo* (I-order); *rego* (I-rule); *lædo* (I-hurt); *governo* (I-govern); are-joined to-an-Accusative contrary-to-the-rule: as, *The-camp pleases many.—Thou, O-Roman, remember to-rule the-nations with-thy-sway.*

*Tempero* and *moderor* (I govern or restrain) have a-Dative or an-Accusative: as, *This-person restrains horses, who (will) not restrain his-anger.*

Verbs compounded with the-Adverbs *bene* (well), *satis* (enough), *male* (ill), and with Prepositions, especially these, *ad*, *ante*, *ab*, *in*, *inter*, *de*, *sub*, *super*, *ob*, *con*, *post*, and *præ*, generally govern a-Dative: as, *I-satisfy the-rest always; never myself (mihi ipsi).—Sicily formerly was-contiguous to-Italy.—The-giants waged war upon-the-Gods.—(We) often put-under hens the-eggs of-ducks.*

Many of these vary their-construction: as, *The-Helvetii surpass the-remaining Gauls in-valour.—These faults exist in love.*

The-Dative of-the-Agent follows Verbal-Adjectives in *bilis*, and the-Gerundive in *dus*; sometimes Perfect Participles, rarely Passive Verbs; as, *He died lamented by-many good-men.—Chremes remains, who is to-be-entreated by-me.—A-great citizen died and dreaded by-Otho.—Here I am a-barbarian, because I-am-understood not by-any-one.*

Passive Verbs and Participles generally have an-Ablative of-the-Agent with the-Preposition *a* or *ab*: as *He-is-praised by these, he-is-blamed by those.—The-death of-Crassus was bewailed by many.*

The-Dative of-the-purpose is-added to-the-Verb *sum* and many others, either for a-Nominative or for an-Accusative: as, *The-ant is for-a-pattern of-great toil.—I-have-lost the-kernel: he-has-left the-shells for-pawn.*

Often a-double Dative is-admitted; as, *The-greedy sea is a-destruction to-sailors.*

IV. The-Genitive of-the-possessor follows almost all Substantives, likewise the-Verbs *sum* (I-am); *facio* (I-make); *fiō* (I-become); by the-Ellipse of -Substantive: as, *The-properties of-*

*individuals are the-riches of-the-st.te.—All-things which were the woman's become the man's.—Scipio made Spain of-Roman dominion.*

*Est* Impersonal is-put-before a-Genitive, if *nature, token, office, or duty*, is-understood: as, *It-is (the-nature) of-any man to-err.—It-is (the-token) of-a-dishonest man to-deceive by-a-lie.—It-is (the-duty) of-a-young-man to-reverence (his) elders* (majores natu).

An-Ellipse of-other Nouns also happens before a-Genitive: as, *Hector's Andromache.* (supply *wife.*)—*Glaucus's Deiphobe.* (supply *daughter.*)—*We-had-come to Vesta's.* (supply *temple.*)—*I-see this-man's Byrrhia.* (supply *slave.*)

The-Personal Genitive concealed in the-Possessive Pronoun takes another Genitive agreeing-with itself: as, *The-commonwealth was preserved by-the-exertion of-me alone.—You-saw the-eyes of-me weeping.*

The-Genitive of-Quality follows Substantives: as, *A-boy of-ingenuous countenance and ingenuous modesty.* Quality is-put also in the-Ablative: as, *An-old-man with-long beard, with-rough hair.*

Partitive words, Numerals, Comparatives, and Superlatives, govern a-Genitive, with-which they-agree in-gender: as, *Many of-these trees were planted by-my own hand.—I-am-charmed with-each of-you.—We-follow thee, holy-one of-gods.—Sulla lost a-hundred and-twenty of-his-men.—The-elder of-the-Neroes.—Bravest of-the-Gauls.—Of-mortals nobody is-wise at-all hours.—Least of-all.*

These Genitives, *gentium, terrarum*, and others, follow the Adverbs of-Place, *huc* (hither), *eò* (thither), *quò* (whither), *ubi* (where) and-the-like: as, *I-think we-must-migrate to-some-quarter of-the-world.*

Adverbs and Substantives signifying Quantity, also Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns, govern a-Genitive: as, *Enough of-eloquence, too-little of-wisdom.—Justice requires no reward.—He-preserved something of-his-ancient strength.—As-much of-credit as of-money.*

(These) govern a-Genitive:—Verbal-Adjectives in *ax*, some Participles put Adjectively, and Adjectives signifying knowledge, care, and desire, memory, fear, crimination, power, and those-which stand in-a-contrary sense; the-poets give many others: as, *Time decourer of-things.—A-mind covetous of-another's-property, lavish of-his-own.—The mind of-men is ignorant of-fate.—All-men hate one-forgetful of-a-benefit.—Innocent of-a-brother's blood.—Anger is without-control of-itself.—O late in-your-studies.*

Certain Verbs of-accusing, acquitting, condemning, reminding, govern a-Genitive of-the-thing: as, *We-condemn soothsayers (as guilty) of-folly.—Adverse circumstances remind us of-religious-duties.*



*Memini* (I-remember), *recordor*, *reminiscor* (I-recollect), *obliviscor* (I-forget), govern sometimes a-Genitive, sometimes an-Accusative-case : as, *God commands thee to-remember death.*—*Dying he-remembers sweet Argi.*

*Misereor*, *miseresco* (I-pity), are-joined to-a-Genitive ; as, *Thou-pitiest us not-at-all.*

V. Adjectives, Verbs, and sometimes Substantives, admit an-Ablative signifying the-cause, or instrument, or manner, or material, or respect, or any-soever limitation : as, *Dido wild with-horrid purposes.*—*The-bad hate to-sin from-fear of-punishment.*—*These strive to-defend with-javelins, those with-stones.*—*Wrong is-done in-two manners, by-violence or deceit.*—*We-consist of-soul and body.*—*Ennius mightiest in-genius, untrained in-art.*—*Mardonius, a-Mede by-nation.*—*He-is not aged, but yet already advanced in-life.*

*Fungor* (I-discharge), *fruo* (I-enjoy), *utor* (I-use), *vescor* (I-eat), govern an-Ablative, *potior* (I-gain), an-Ablative or a-Genitive : as, *I-will-discharge the-office of-a-whetstone.*—*When he-was-able to-use his-victory, he-chose-rather to-enjoy (it).*—*The-Numidians feed-on wild flesh.*—*He-gains the-gold by-force.*—*The-Romans gained the-standards.*

Adjectives and Verbs which relate to *plenty* or *want* govern an-Ablative, many also a-Genitive ; as, *Love is very-fruitful both in-honey and gall.*—*The-soul is never void of-motion.*—*It-is shameful to-be-dissolved in-luxury.*—*To-be-free from-blame is a-very-great comfort.*—*Rich in-wealth, rich in-embroidered furniture and gold.*—*The-king of-the-Cappadocians, wealthy in-slaves, wants money.*—*These things sate me of-life.*

*Opus* and *usus* (need) govern an-Ablative : as, *Where facts are-at-hand, what need is-there of-words ?*—*My-son has need of-twenty minas.*

The-Adjectives, *dignus* (worthy), *indignus* (unworthy), *præditus* (endued), *fretus* (relying), *contentus* (contented), also the Verb *dignor* (I-deem-worthy), govern an-Ablative : as, *The-Muse forbids the-man worthy of-praise to-die.*—*Lentulus is endued with-uncommon modesty.*—*I-indeed deem not myself worthy of-such an-honour.*

The-Ablative of-Price follows Verbs and Adjectives, signifying *purchase*, *sale*, or *valuation*. as, *I buy not hope at-a-price.*—*Many an-honour is-sold for-gold.*—*The-victory cost the-blood of-many.*—*What is not needful, is dear at-a-penny.*

These Ablatives, *vili*, *parvo*, *minimo* (for a-little), *nimio* (for-too-much), *magno*, *plurimo* (for-a-great-price), *duplo* (for-twice-as-much), and *dimidio* (for-half), are-used by Ellipse, the-word *pretio* being-understood : as, *Hunger costs little, daintiness a-great-deal*

The-value of-a-thing generally has a-Genitive, especially those

elliptical (Genitives), *magni, parvi, minimi, pluris*, and *plurimi*: as, *A-wise-man deems pain of-no-account.—Virtue holds pleasure of-very-little-worth.—One eye-witness is of-more value than ten hearsay-(witnesses).*

*Pluris, minoris, tanti, quanti, maximi*, signify price as-well-as value: as, *He-bought the pleasure-garden at-as-large-a-price as Pythius wished.*

The-Ablative of Difference is-joined to-Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs of Comparative and Superlative meaning: as, *The-sun is by-many times larger than the-moon.—Doctrines differing from the Cynics by a coat.*

Especially the-elliptic Ablatives: *altero* (by-as-much-more), *hoc* (by-this-much), *eo* (by-that-much), *quo* (by-how-much), *nihilo* (by-nothing), and *nimio* (by-too-much), *dimidio* (by-half), *duplo* (by-twice-as-much), *quanto* (by-how-much), *tanto* (by-so-much), *paullo* (by-a-little), *multo* (by-much), *aliquanto* (by-a-good-deal): as, *Regret is so-much heavier as the-fault is greater.—By-so-much the-worst poet of-all as thou (art) the-best patron of-all.*

The-Ablative of-Comparison is-governed by Comparatives, whether Adjectives or Adverbs: as, *Silver is poorer than-gold, gold than-virtues.—I-think death lighter than-disgrace.*

*Quàm* is-omitted elegantly after *plus, amplius, minus*: as, *He-inflicted on-me more (than) five-hundred blows.*

These Prepositions govern an-Ablative: *a, ab (abs)* (from, after, by, on-the-side-of), *absque* (without), *coram* (in-the-presence-of), *de* (from, of, concerning), *palam* (in-the-sight-of, with-the-knowledge-of), *clam* (without-the-knowledge-of), *cum* (together-with, with), *ex, e* (out-of, of, after, agreeably-to, on-the-side-of), *sine* (without), *tenus* (as-far-as), *pro* (before, for, according-to), *præ* (before, owing-to): to-these add, *subter* (under), *super* (upon, concerning), and *in* (in, upon, among), *sub* (under, just-at) if station occurs.

A-Preposition in Composition sometimes governs the-same Case which it-governed also out-of Composition: as, *They-thrust-off the-ships from-the-rock.—Now I-address thee, O-Africanus.*

Verbs of-departing, separating, repelling, removing, and the-like, govern an-Ablative, even omitting the-Preposition: as, *Thou-wilt-retire from-thy-wide-purchased parks and mansion.—The-Athenian people drove Phocion from-his-country.*

To-this-Rule refer the-Ablative after Verbs and Participles of-origin, such-as are *natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus* (born, sprung, descended): as, *Atræus grandson of-Tantalus, son of-Pelops.—O-thou-sprung from-the-blood of-Gods.*

*Tenus* governs either a-Genitive Plural or an-Ablative, and is-placed after its Case: as, *The-dewlaps hang from the-chin as-far-as the-legs.—Antiochus was commanded to-reign as-far-as Taurus.*

*Cum* is joined to-the-Cases of-Personal Pronouns, and usually

of-the-Relative, so that of-two words one is-formed : as, *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum or quocum, quibuscum*.

A-Substantive and a-Participle are-placed together in the-Ablative, which they-call Absolute : as, *Kings having-been-expelled consuls were appointed.—Cæsar being-on-the-point-of-coming, O-morning-star, restore the-day.—Obedience failing, government also falls.*

A-Substantive is-put also absolutely with a-Substantive or Adjective, where the-Participle of-being is-understood : as, *Nothing must-be-despaired, Teucer being-leader and Teucer omen-giver.—And now Hector was dust, his-brothers being-alive.*

§ 95. D. I. Definition of-time is-put in the-Ablative, if (the question) *when or within what time*, is-asked : as, *All wars rest in-winter.—Whatever befalls, we-shall-know in-two-days.*

The-use of-Prepositions in defining time is frequent : as, *The-sun makes two-turns in each year.—De die* (that is, *before the-close of-day*).—*De nocte* (that is, *before the-close of-night*).—*De multâ nocte* (that is, *long before the-close of-night*).—*Sub vesperum* (that is, *on-the-approach-of evening*).—*I-wait day after day.*

*How-long a-time ago, before, or after*, is stated sometimes by the-Ablative, sometimes by the-Accusative : as, *The-assembly had-been held already thirty days ago. — This was done almost two-years ago.*

Duration of-time, when (the question) *how-long* is asked, is-put most-commonly in the-Accusative, less-usually in the-Ablative : as, *Pericles presided-over Athens forty years.—The-Assyrians held empire one-thousand three-hundred years.*

II. The Place in which something is or is-done is-put in the-Ablative, either without a-Preposition or far more-commonly with the-Preposition *in* : as, *By-chance I-was-walking in-the-Sacred Road.—He-marries a-wife in Lemnos.*

The-name of-a-Town, in which something is or is-done, is-put in the-Ablative, provided it-be either of-the-third Declension or of-the-Plural Number : as, *Alexander died at-Babylon.—Philippus is at-Naples, Lentulus at-Pozzuoli — Bred at-Thebes or at-Argi.*

But it-is-put in the-Genitive, if it-is both of-the-first or second Declension, and of-the-singular Number : as, *What can-I-do at-Rome ? I-know-not (how) to-tell-a-lie. — He dwells at-Miltus.*

The-name of-a-Place is-governed generally by a-Preposition after a-Verb of-Motion : as, *He-marched into Gaul.—From Europe you-seek Asia.*

The-name of-a-Town, to which one-goes, is-put in the-Accusative usually without a-Preposition : as, *Regulus returned to-Carthage.*

The-name of-a-Town, from which one-goes, is-put in the-Ablative usually without a-Preposition : as, *Demaratus fled from-Corinth.*

But both Towns often take, and other Nouns reject a-Preposition after Verbs of-motion : as, *No rumour had-come from Brundisium.—Part-of-us will-come to-Scythia and Crete's rapid Oaxes.*

*Humus, domus, and rus* imitate the-construction of-towns: as, *Cudmus* scatters on-the-ground the-teeth, mortal seeds. — *Arms* abroad are of-little-worth, unless there-is safe-counsel at-home. — *Go home full, evening comes, go, she-goats.* — *I-see the-old-man* returning from-the-country.

III. The-Space-of-Distance is-put more-commonly in the-Accusative, sometimes in the-Ablative: as, *I-was-distant from Amanus* one day's journey. — *The-temple of Æsculapius is-distant from Epidaurus* five thousand paces (i. e. five Roman miles).

The-Space of-Progression is-put in the-Accusative: as, *Then having-dined we-crawl three miles.*

The-Space of-Dimension is-put most-commonly in the-Accusative, sometimes in the-Ablative, sometimes in the-Genitive: as, *The-walls of-Babylon* were 200 feet high. — *A-foot-and-a-half* long, a-foot wide. — *Make floors* 10 feet broad.

• § 96. E. I. *Libet* (it-pleaseth), *licet* (it-is-lawful), *liquet* (it-is-clear), and most Impersonal-Verbs, govern a-Dative: as, (*Let*) not (that) please thee which (is) not lawful. — *Savage bears* agree among themselves. (lit. it-is-agreed to-savage bears.)

*Piget* (it-irketh), *pudet* (it-shameth), *pœnitet* (it-repenteth), *tædet* (it-wearieth), and *miseret* (it-pitieth), govern an-Accusative of-the-person, with a-Genitive of-the-thing, or with an-Infinitive: as, *Thou pitiest others; for-thyself thou (hast) neither pity nor shame* (lit. It-pitieth nor shameth thee.) — *I am-sorrowed and wearied of-the-morals of-the-state.* — *It-repenteth them partly of-their-crimes, partly of-their-follies.* — (*He*) whom it-repenteth to-have-sinned is almost innocent.

*Delectat* (it-delighteth), *juvat* (it-pleaseth), *decet* (it-beseemeth), *dedecet* (it-misbeseemeth), *oportet* (it-behoveth), take an-Accusative: as, *It-delighteth me to-have-cultivated Helicon* in earliest youth. — *Least-of-all does-it-beseem an-orator to-be-angry.* — *It-behoveth a-law to-be brief.*

*Pertinet, attinet* (it-belongeth, relateth, or concerneth), take the-Preposition *ad* with an-Accusative: as, *It-concerneth the-common-wealth, that-I be-preserved.* — *Let-him-squander, waste, be-ruined, it-concerneth me nought.*

*Interest* (it-imports or concerns), *refert* (it-matters or concerns), admit a-Genitive: as, *It-imports all-men to-act rightly.* — *It-matters-in composition, what-things you-place-before what.*

With these Verbs are-joined instead of-Personal Pronouns, the-Feminine Ablatives: *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*, the word *re* being-understood: as, *It-concerns both me and thee (that) thou be-well.* — *What matters-it to-me, whom I-am-a-slave-to?*

To-these Verbs are-added the-Genitives of-value, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris*: as, *It-concerns both of-us greatly that I-should-see you.* — *This avails not more than if-you-should-carry water to a-sieve*

Neuter Verbs are-used Impersonally in the-Passive Voice for any persons : as, *A-shout-of-dissent-was-uttered by all* (that is to say, *all shouted-dissent*). — *What is-doing ? there-is-a-standing-still* (that is to say, *there-is-a-standing-still by us*, or *we-stand-still*).

II. Almost every Active Sentence may be-changed into a-Passive (sentence), so that the Nominative of-the-Active Sentence shall-become in the-Passive an-Ablative of-the-Agent.

(A.) If the-Verb of-the-Active Sentence has an-Accusative of-the-nearer Object, the-Verb in-the-Passive will-be Personal ; the-Accusative of-the-Active passing into the-Nominative of-the Passive : as,

ACT. *The-consul managed the-affair admirably.*

PASS. *The-affair was-managed admirably by the-consul.*

(B.) If not, the-Verb of-the-Passive-Sentence will-be Impersonal, and either will-stand without a-case, or will-govern the-same case which it-governed in the-Active : as,

ACT. *The-enemy fought steadily.*

PASS. *(There was) steady fighting by the-enemy.*

ACT. *We need medicine.*

PASS. *There-is-a-need by us of-medicine.*

Where there-can be no ambiguity, the-Ablative of-the-Agent is-suppressed after Passive Impersonals : as, *We-go* (itur a nobis) *into an-ancient forest.*

Hence it-appears that-the-same Cases are-governed by Passive Verbs as by Active, except only the-Accusative of-the-nearer Object.

*Vapulo* (I am beaten), *veneo* (I am sold), *exulo* (I am banished), *liceo* (I am bid for), *fio* (I am made), with some other-Verbs, are-construed in-a-Passive sense : as, *The-witness was-beaten with-a-stick by the-defendant.* — *I-had-rather be-plundered by a-citizen than be-sold by an-enemy.* — *I-am-tortured lest my-husband fall by an-incensed enemy.*

§ 97. F. I. The-Infinitive with the-Gerunds and Supines makes the-Substantive of-the-Verb.

The-Infinitive is-joined to-many Verbs and Participles, and in-poetry to-Adjectives : as, *To-envy occurs not to a-wise-man.* — *I-seem to-wander through holy groves.* — *They-use to-think long who wish to-perform great-things.* — *Both well-matched to-sing, and ready to-answer.*

For the-Accusative of-the-Infinitive the-Gerund in *dum* is-put after Prepositions : as, *A-short time is long enough for living well.* — *The-characters of-boys reveal themselves in playing.*

For the-Genitive the-Gerund in *di* is-put after Adjectives and Substantives : as, *I-am-desirous of-satisfying the-republic.* — *Thucydides surpasses all in-skill of-language.*

For the-Dative the-Gerund in *do* is-put after some Adjectives and Verbs: as, *Crassus could not be a-match for-the-argument.*

For the-Ablative the-Gerund in *do* is-put signifying Cause, Instrument, or Manner, or with the-Prepositions, *ab, de, ex, in, cum*: as, *By-doing nothing men learn to-do ill. — Jove we-name from helping.*

Gerunds (have) an-Active signification; but if they-are Transitive, their construction may be-represented passively, indeed (is) oftener represented, by the-Participle in *dus*, which thence receives the-name of-Gerundive.

The-Gerundive Construction is of-this-kind, that the-Substantive is-drawn into the-Case of-the-Gerund, with which (Case) the-Gerundive must-agree: as, *We-extract from-the-earth fire for agriculture. — It-seemed an-opportunity for-making a-revolution.*

For signifying Necessity Passively, the-Gerundive is-used Impersonally in the-Neuter Gender: as, *You must consult for-the-properties of-the-citizens. — (We) must pray that (there) be a-sound mind in a-sound body.*

II. The-Supine in *um*, like an-Accusative, is-put-after Verbs signifying motion: as, *They-come to-see, they-come that they-may-be-seen themselves. — We-send to-learn-of the-oracles of-Phæbus.*

The-Supine in *u* is-put, like an-Ablative of respect, both (after) many Adjectives, and also (after) the-Substantives, *fas, nefas, opus*: as, *(Let) nothing shameful to-be-spoken and seen approach these doors, within which is a-boy. — Lo! ill-omened sight, a-serpent issues-from the-altars.*

III. Participles, Gerunds, and the-Supine in *um*, govern the-Cases of-their Verbs: as, *All having-dared monstrous wickedness and having-achieved their-daring.*

§ 98. G. Neuter Adjectives of-each Number sometimes are-put Adverbially, especially by poets: as, *He-will-be-a-slave forever, who cannot enjoy a-little. — He-returns backward fierce, looking sourly.*

Conjunctions Sociative and Dissociative connect like Cases, Moods, and Tenses: as, *He admires the-gates, and the-bustle, and the-pavement of-the-streets. — Virtue can neither be-snatched nor stolen-away. Unless a-different principle of-construction interfere.*

H. *Ne* the-prohibitive Conjunction is-joined to-an-Imperative or Subjunctive Mood: as, *Let-there be no delay (in performing) my commands. — Lay not the-blame on me.*

These-Conjunctions require the-Subjunctive: *ut* (that) &c.

These Conjunctions take the-Subjunctive or Indicative according-to the circumstances: *quum* (when) &c.

These Conjunctions generally take the-Indicative, unless the-nature of-the-passage require the Subjunctive: *quod* (that, because) &c.

*Quamvis* is found with the Indicative in historians and poets: as, *Although he prevails not by genius, he prevails by art.*

The Relative, *qui quæ quod*, governs the Subjunctive, when it signifies *because, although, in-order-that, or such-that*; as, *I pity you, because you make this man your foe. — I sent a letter by which (I might) both pacify and admonish him. — He is one who may be conquered. — Who is there that hates not saucy boyhood.*

The Subjunctive is joined to Pronouns and Particles of interrogation, when put subordinately\*: as, *He knows not even this, who himself is, whether he is, or is not.*

Such Interrogatives are: *quis* (who or what), *quantus* (how great), *qualis* (of what sort), *qui* (who or what), *quot* (how many), *quotus* (which in order of number), *unde* (whence), *ubi* (where or when), *quando* (when), *quàm* (how), *quomobrem* (wherefore), *quare* (wherefore), *cur* (why), *quomodo* (how), *num, ne* (whether), *ut* (how) *an* (whether), *utrum* (whether).

A Relative or Conjunction, when it is subordinated\* to an Infinitive or Subjunctive, governs a Subjunctive: as, *Cæsar wrote to me, that it was very agreeable to him that I have been quiet. — I am striving that Cæsar may allow me to be absent, when anything is moved against Cnæus in the senate.*

A Conjunction is understood sometimes: as, *It behoves (that) you devote yourself to philosophy.* (supply *ut*.) — *I will inquire (whether) a poem be complete or not.* (supply *utrum*.) — *O Icarus, thou shouldst have a share in so great a work, did grief allow.* (supply *si*, *if*.) — *Though you drive out nature with a fork, it will return continually.* (supply *etsi*.)

§ 201. ((Prosodia) Prosody (disserit) treats (de quantitate) concerning the quantity (syllabarum) of syllables, (et) and (de legibus) concerning the laws (metrorum) of metres

1. (*Tempus*) Time (est) is (mensura) the measure (eloquendæ syllabæ) of uttering a syllable: (quod) which (et) also (vocatur) is called *Quantitas* (quantity).

(*Vocalis observetur*) Let the vowel be observed; (quantitas syllabarum) the quantity of syllables (stat) depends (in quantitate vocalium) on the quantity of the vowels.

2. (*Habes*) you have (notas) these marks (longi Temporis) of long Time [—], (brevisque) and of short Time [~].

(*Singulis longis*) One long Time (brevisque binis) and two short (est) have (par eademque potestas) one and the same power.

(*Illa vocalis*) That vowel, (quæ) which (sonat) sounds (interdum) sometimes (brevis) short, (et rursus) and again (eadem) likewise (longa) long, (audit) is called (*communis*) common.

(*H*) The letter *h* (non habetur) is not reckoned (consonans) a-

\* These expressions must be explained by the Master from the Larger Syntax.

consonant, (exercetque) and exercises (nullam vim) no power (in Prosodiâ) in Prosody.

§ 202. (Omnis diphthongus) Every diphthong (contractaque syllaba) and contracted syllable (longa est) is long: (ut) as (*præs*) a-surety, (*heu*) alas, (*gaudens*) rejoicing: (*coago*) I-compel (fit *cōgo*) becomes *cōgo*, (*nihil*) nothing (*nūl*) becomes-*nūl*; (*bōbus*) to-oxen (pro *bovibus*) is-put-for *bovibus*; (*mōmentum*) an-impulse (pro *movimentum*) for *movimentum*.

(At) But (tu corripies *præ*) you will-shorten *præ* (*præeuntem vocali*) going-before a-vowel.

§ 203. (Primaria) Primitives (dant) give (proprium tempus) their-own quantity (Derivatis) to-their-derivatives: (sic) thus (*sālix*) a-willow (format) forms (*sāliceta*) willow-grounds, (*pōmum*) an-apple (*pōmaria*) orchards.

(Tamen) Yet (in multis) in many-instances (fit aliter) it-happens otherwise: (sic) thus (*ārena ūret*) sand is-dry; (sic) thus (*hōmo est hūmanus*) man is human; (sic) thus (*parva lūcerna lūcet*) a-little candle shines.

(Nec non) Moreover (Composta) Compound-words (sequuntur) follow (tempus Simplicium) the-quantity of-their-Simples: (sic) thus (*repūto*) I-consider (exstat) comes (a *pūto*) from *pūto*, I-think, (sic) thus (*immēmor*) unmindful (a *mēmor*) from *mēmor*, mindful.

(Tamen) Yet (sunt excepta) there-are exceptions: (sic) thus (*nubo*) I marry (format *pronūba*) forms *pronuba*, a bridesmaid.

§ 204. (Vocalis) A-vowel (prævia vocali) going-before a-vowel (corripitur) is-shortened: (ceū) as, (*principūm*) a-beginning; (*prōhibe*) forbid.

(Sed) But (hinc excipe) except from-this-rule (multa Græca) many Greek-words: as, *Chaonis*, *Æneas*, *Clio*, *Myrtous*, *Enyo*.

(Priscus Genitivus) The-old Genitive (Primæ) of-the-first-declension (habebit) will-have (a longam) long *a*: (*terrāi, aulāi*) as-*terrāi*, of-earth, *aulāi*, of-a-hall: (sic) thus (Quinta) the 5th Declension (format *diēi*) makes *diēi*, of-a-day: (tamen) but (scribe) write (*rēi atque rēi*) *rēi* and *rēi*, of-a-thing, (*fidēi atque fidēi*) *fidēi* and *fidēi*, of-faith.

(Penultima) The last-syllable-but-one (Vocativo) of-the-Vocative-Case (vocis) of-a-word (in *aius* aut *eius*) ending in *aius* or *eius* (longa est) is long: (hac lege) by-this rule (sonantur) are-sounded (*Cūi*) O-Caius, (*Pompēi*) O-Pompeius.

(I verbi *fiō*) The-*i* of-the-verb *fiō*, I-become, (longa est) is long, (nisi) except (cum comes est *er*) when *er* follows it: (*omnia nunc fient*) all-things will-happen now (*fieri quæ posse negabam*) which I-said could (not) happen.

(Genitivus in *ius*) A-Genitive-Case in *ius* (*i* dat communem) makes *i* common: (ut) as (*ille*) he (*illius illiusque facit*) makes *illius* and *illius*: (sic) so (*totus*) whole, (et) and (*unus*) one, (*ipse*) self, (que) and (*iste*) that, (*nullus*) none, (et) and (*ullus*) any



(habent *ius iusque*) have *ius* and *ius* (in the Genitive): (*alterius*) the-Genitive *alterius* (semper breviat) always shortens *i*, (*producit alius*) the-Genitive *alius* lengthens-it.

(Nunc *Diana*) Sometimes *Diana* (feras agitat) chases beasts, (nunc) sometimes (*dīa Diana*) divine *Diana*: (sic) thus (*dicimus*) we-say (*ōhe* vel *ōhe*) *ōhe* or *ōhe*, oh! (sed semper *ēheu*) but always *ēheu*, alas.

§ 205. (Vocalis) Any-vowel (erit) will-be (longa situ) long by-Position, (quam) which (bina consona) two-consonants (sequetur) shall-follow; (ceu) as (*pallor tristis*) sad paleness: (quam) or-which (voce in eadem) in the-same word (*j* subit) *j* follows (*x* aut *z*) or *x* or *z*: (sic) thus, (*Ajax*) Ajax, (*axis*) an-axle, (*Amazon*) an-Amazon.

(Excipe) except (*quadrijugus*) yoked-with-four-horses, (*bijugus*) yoked-with-two-horses, (quæ corripunt *i*) which shorten the-*i*.

(Vocalis) A-vowel (vi curta suâ) short by-its-own power (communis erit) will-be common, (si) if (consona muta) a-mute consonant (postponens liquidam sibi) with a liquid after it (sequetur) shall-follow: (sic) thus (rectè dices) you-will rightly say (*lugubre melos*) a-mournful melody (vel *lugubre*) or *lugubre*: (*dūplex*) double (sive *dūplex*) or *dūplex*: (*Tēcmessam*) Tecmessa (sive *Tēcmessam*) or *Tēcmessam*.

(*N* post *g*) *Gn* (semper dat longam) always makes a-long-syllable, (ut) as (*agnus*) a-lamb (et) and (*ignis*) fire: (nec minus) and likewise (*m* post *g*) *gm*; (quod) which (*tegmen*) a-covering (et) and (*agmen*) a-troop (monstrat) shews.

(Si) If (altera syllaba) another syllable (diviserit) shall-have-divided (liquidam mutâ) the-liquid from-the-mute, (prior) the-former-syllable (longa semper) is-always long; (quod) which (*subruit*) he-undermines, (*ab-lue*) wash-away, (monstrant) shew.

§ 206. (Syllaba prima) The-first syllable (Præteriti geminati) of-a-reduplicated Preterperfect (brevis est) is short: (ut) as (*pepuli*) I-have-driven-away, (*didici*) I-have-learnt, (*pupugi*) I-have-pricked, (*cecidi*) I-have-fallen, (atque) and (*cecidi*) I-have-beaten.

(Perfecta disyllaba) Preterperfects of-two-syllables (efficiunt) make (primam longam) the-first-syllable long: (ut) as, (*vidi*) I-have-seen, (*legi*) I-have-read, (que) and (*movi*) I-have-moved: (sed) but (excipis octo) you-except eight: (*bibi*) I-have-drunk, (*dedi*) I-have-given, (*fui*) I-have-been, (*fidi*) I-have-cleft, (*steti*) I-have-stood, (*stiti*) I-have-stopped, (*tuli*) I-have-borne, (*scidi*) I-have-cut.

(Que) also (Supina disyllaba) Supines of-two-syllables (ritè producant) properly lengthen (primam) their-first-syllable: (ut) as (*visum*) to see, (*lotum*) to-wash, (que) and (*motum*) to-move: (sed excipis octo) but you-except eight: (*citum*) to-rouse, (*datum*)

to-give, (*itum*) to-go, (*litum*) to-smear, (*ratum*) to-think, (*rutum*) to-throw-down, (*satum*) to-sow, (*situm*) to-allow.

§ 207. (Produces) You-will-lengthen (*pleraque monosyllaba*) most words-of-one-syllable, (*qualia*) such-as (*me*) me, (*ver*) spring

(In *l, b, d, t*.) Words-of-one-syllable ending-in *l, b, d, t*, (*corripiuntur*) are shortened: (*ut*) as (*vel*) even, (*sub*) under, (*id*) that, (*et*) and (*stat*) he-stands: (*es*) thou-art (*cum compositis*) with its-compounds, (*ut*) as (*ades*) thou-art-present; (*que*) and, (*ve*) or, (*quumque rogat, ne*) and *ne* when it-is-interrogative: (*fac*) make, (*nec*) neither, (*an*) or, (*in*) in, (*fer*) bear, (*per*) through, (*ter*) thrice, (*vir*) a-man, (*cor*) a-heart, (*quis*) who? (*bis*) twice, (*is*) he, (*et cis*) and *cis* on-this-side-of.

§ 208. (In *A*) Words-ending-in *A* (*producuntur*) are-made-long: as, (*frustra*) in-vain, (*que*) and (*intra*) within, (*que*) and (*para*) prepare.

(*Sed excipe*) But except (*casus rectos*) Nominative Cases (*et quartos*) and Accusatives: (*quales*) such as (*musa*) the-muse (*carmina* canit) sings songs: (*silvæ*) the-woods (*resonant Amaryllida*) resound Amaryllis: (*atque*) and (*Vocativos plerosque*) most Vocatives, (*ut*) as (*Oresta*) O-Orestes, (*Thyesta*) O-Thyestes: (*particulas*) the particles (*eja*) ho! (*ita*) so, (*cumque his*) and with these (*quia*) because: (*quæ breviant a*) which shorten *a*.

§ 209. (*Corripiuntur in E*) Words-in *E* are-made-short: (*ceu*) as (*lege timete carere*) fear to-be-without law.

(*Casus*) The-Cases (*Primæ Quintæque*) of-the-first and fifth-declension (*requirunt e longam*) require *e* long: (*ut*) as, (*Thisbe*) Thisbe, (*specie*) by-appearance: (*quæ derivantur ab illis*) and-words-which are-derived from them: (*ut*) as (*quare*) wherefore, (*atque*) and (*hodie*) to-day; (*contractaque*) and contracted-words (*qualia*) such-as (*Tempe*) Tempe: (*Verba in eo*) Verbs of-the second-conjugation (*mandantia*) in-the-Imperative-Mood (*primi numeri*) Singular Number: (*ut*) as (*aude*) dare-thou: [(*sed*) but (*scribendi est æqua potestas*) we may equally write (*cavē* sive *cavē*) *cavē* or *cavē*, beware]: (*Adverbia*) Adverbs (*ducta*) derived (*ex Adjectivis secundæ*) from Adjectives of-the-second-declension, (*ut*) as (*miserē*) wretchedly: (*jungantur*) let-there-be-added (*ohē*) oh! (*que*) and (*fermē*) generally (*que*) and (*ferē*) commonly.

§ 210. (*Producuntur in I*) Words-in *I* are-made-long, (*ceu*) as (*dici*) to be said, (*que*) and (*orbi*) to-a-circle, (*que*) and (*doli*) deceits.

(*Attamen*) But (*deme hinc*) except from-this-rule (*multos Dativos*) many Datives (*atque Vocativos*) and Vocatives (*Græcorum*) of the Greeks: (*ut*) as (*Thyrsidi*) to-Thyrsis, (*Phyllidi*) to-Phyllis, (*Chlori*) O-Chloris: (*deme*) except (*sicubi*) if-any-where, (*necubi*) lest-any-where, (*nisi*) unless, (*et*) and (*quasi*) as-if, (*queis*)

*brevis est i*) which have *i* short. [(At) But (*mihi*) to-me, (*ubi*) where, (*tibi*) to-thee, (*ibi*) there, (*sibi*) to-himself, (*communem faciunt i*) make *i* common.]

§ 211. (Producuntur in O) Words-in O are-long; (ceu) as (*virgo*) a-virgin, (que) and (*ultro*) spontaneously, (que) and (*juvo*) I-help.

(At) But (*puto*) I-think, (*scio*) I-know, (*nescio*) I-know-not, (*corripiunt finalem O*) shorten final *O*. (Adde) add (*modò*) only (et composita) and its-compounds, (*duo*) two, (*octo*) eight, (*ego*) I, (queis) to which (junge) join (*citò*) quickly. (O proprium claudens nomen) O at-the-end-of a-proper name (*communis habetur*) is-reckoned common, (ut) as (*Matho*) Matho: (sed) but (in Græcis) in Greek-names (*longa est semper*) it-is always long; (ut) as (*Argo*) the-ship-Argo. (Flaccus) Horace (habet) has (*quædam communia*) certain-words common, (Naso) Ovid (*plurima*) very-many: (*corruptior ætas*) a-more-corrupt generation (*poetarum*) of-poets (*addidit*) added (*plura*) more-instances.

(Producuntur in U) Words-in U are-long, (sic) thus (*tu*) thou, (que) and (*dictu*) to-be-said, (que) and (*diu*) long.

(Corripiuntur in Y) Words-in Y are short; (sic) thus (*poetæ dant*) poets have (*chely*) O-lute, (*Tiphys*) O-Tiphys.

§ 212. (In C producuntur) Words-in C are-long, (ut) as (*illic*) there: (excipe) except (*donec*) until.

(Corripe in L, D, T,) shorten words-in L, D, T; (sic) thus (*Hannibal*) Hannibal, (*illud*) that, (*amavit*) he-loved.

(Corripiuntur in N) Words-in N are-short: (ceu) as (*culmen*) a summit. (At excipe) But except (*Græca multa*) many Greek-words (*vocali prædita longâ*) possessing a-long vowel, (ut) as, (*Hymen*) Hymen, (*Acron*) Acron.

(Corripiuntur in R) Words-in R are-short: (ceu) as (*calcâr*) a spur, (*amabitur*) he-will-be-loved, (*Hector*) Hector.

(Tamen) But (producis) you-lengthen (*Græca*) the Greek-words: as (*cratër*) a bowl, (*æthër*) the sky, (*aër*) the atmosphere.

§ 213. (Producuntur in As) Words-in As are long: (ut) as (*terras*) lands. (Excipe) Except (*Græca*) Greek-words (queis Genitivus *âdis*) which have a Genitive in-*âdis*, (ceu) as (*Pallas*) Minerva: (et excipe) except too (*casus quartos*) accusatives (*crescentûm*) of-nouns-increasing, (ceu) as (*lampadas*) torches; (hi adde) add to-these (*anas*) a-duck.

(Producuntur in Es) Words in Es are-long; (ut) as (*sedes*) a-seat, (et) and (*videres*) you-might-see. (Excipienda tamen) But we-must-except (*quæ Græci corripiunt*) words-which the-Greeks shorten; (ut) as (*Troades*) Trojan-women: (*excipias etiam*) except also (*penes*) in-the-power-of, (*excipiasque*) and except (queis *brevis est*) nouns-which have short (*penultima*) the-last-syllable-but-one (*crescentis Genitivi*) of-an-increasing Genitive, (ut) as (*seges*) standing-corn: (at) but (*pariēs*) a-house-wall (*semper pro-*

ducitur) is-always lengthened, (atque) and (*pes*) a-foot (cum compositis) with-its-compounds: (que) and (*abies*) a-fir-tree, (que) and (*aries*) a-ram, (que) and (*Ceres*) Ceres.

§ 214. (Corripiuntur in *Is*) Words in *Is* are-short; (ceu) as (*diceris*) thou-art-said, (*utilis*) useful, (*ensis*) a-sword.

(Obliqui casus plurales) The-oblique-cases plural (excipiuntur) are-excepted, (ut) as (*terris*) by-lands, (*vobis*) to-you: (etiam) also (persona secunda in primo numero) the-second-person singular (Præsentis) Present-tense (Quartæ) of-the-Fourth-conjugation, (ut) as (*audis*) thou-hearest: (composita a *vis*, *sis*) the-compounds of *vis* thou-wilt, *sis* thou-mayst-be; (*malis*) thou-mayest-prefer, (que) and (*nolis*) thou-mayst-refuse, (que) and (*velis*) thou-mayst-wish. [(*Sed ris*) but *ris* (persona secunda) the-second person-singular (Præteriti et Futuri) of-the-Preterperfect and Future (Activæ vocis) of the Active voice (rectè communis habetur) is-properly held common; (as) (*feceris*) thou-mayst-have-done, (*addideris*) thou-mayst-have-added, (*tuleris*) thou shalt have borne.] (At produc nomina) But lengthen nouns (queis longa est) which have long (penultima) the-penultimate (crescentis Genitivi) of-an-increasing Genitive, (ut) as (*Samnis*) a-Samnite: (itidem) likewise (*Simois*) the-Simois, (que) and (*gratis*) freely, (que) and (*foris*) abroad.

§ 215. (Producuntur in *Os*) Words-in *Os* are-long, (ut) as (*ventos*) winds (atque) and (*sacerdos*) a-priest.

(Corripienda tamen) But we-must-shorten (quæ Græci corripunt) words-which the-Greeks shorten, (ut) as, (*Phasidos*) of-the-Phasis, (*Argos*) Argos, (*epos*) an-epic-poem: (sic) so (*compos*) master-of, (et) and (*impos*) powerless, (*os*) a bone, (*exos*) boneless.

(Corripiuntur in *Us*) Words-in *Us* are-short: (ceu) as (*tempus*) time, (*amamus*) we-love, (et) and (*intus*) within.

(Hinc excipe) Except from-this-rule (casus contractos) the-contracted cases (quartæ) of-the-fourth-declension, (ut) as (*artus*) limbs: (queisque longa est) and nouns-which have long (penultima) the-penultimate (crescentis Genitivi) of-an-increasing-Genitive: (ut) as (*tellus*) earth, (que) and (*incus*) an-anvil, (*juventus*) youth, (atque) and (*senectus*) old-age: (producta a Græcis) words-lengthened by the-Greeks, (ut) as (*Sapphûs*) of-Sappho, (atque) and (*Melampus*) Melampus, (atque) and (*Iesus*) Jesus, (nomen) a-name (venerandum) to-be-adored (piis cunctis) by-all pious-persons.

(Corripiuntur in *Ys*) Words in *Ys* are-short: (ut) as, (*chelys*) a-lute, (*chlamys*) a mantle, (*Othrys*) mount-Othrys, (*Erinnys*) a-Fury.

Not. (Ea syllaba) That syllable (quam) which (regula nulla) no rule (facit) makes (longam brevemve) long or short, (ducit tempus) derives its-quantity (ab auctorum scriptis) from-the-writings of authors.

§ 216. 1. Call a-raising of-the-voice in uttering syllables, *Arsis*, (*Ictus* accompanies this); and on-the-other-hand a-dropping of-the-voice is (called) *Thesis*. A-*Foot* is a-certain succession of-syllables, and *Rhythm* a-certain succession of-Feet. In-the-works-of poets the-name of-Rhythm is a-*Verse*: and a-certain order of-Verses call *Measure* or *Metre*: also a-certain part of-a-Verse is-called *Metre*.

§ 217. 2. A-long syllable following a-short is called *Iambus* (◡ -): but if a-long-syllable goes-before a-short-one, that (is) a-*Trochee* (- ◡): a-*Pyrrhich* will consist of-two short-syllables (◡ ◡): a-*Spondee* will consist of-two long-syllables (- -): a-*Dactyl* is-formed by-a-long and two short-syllables (- ◡ ◡): and an-*Anapæst* by-one long after two short-syllables (◡ ◡ -). Add to-these a-*Tribrach* formed by-three short-syllables. (◡ ◡ ◡).

You-will-say that-a-Rhythm, which a-Thesis begins, is-*ascending*; a-specimen of-which-kind thy verse, O-Iambus, will-give. On-the-other-hand, if-it-begins with *Arsis*, you-will-say it-is-*descending*; thou-makest such, O-Dactyl, and thou, O-Trochee.

One foot makes a-metre in Dactylic verse, and two-feet in others

That verse which wants one syllable for-completing its-metres, is-called *Catalectic*. That which wants two syllables for-completing its metres is-called *Brachycatalectic*. A-verse which (has) one syllable over, when-its-metres are-complete, is-called *Hypercatalectic*. That Verse, which has-nothing wanting or too-much, being-smooth and round, is-called *Acatalectic*.

§ 218. *Scansion*, which Figures adjust by-various art, distributes a-Verse according to-feet.

A. *Synalæpha* (Elision) cuts-off a-Vowel at the-end of-a-word, if there-shall-be a-vowel at the-beginning of-the-following word: (as) *I-love Phyllis before other-women: for she-wept that-I was-departing.*

Sometimes *Hiatus* violates the-law of-Synalæpha: (as) *Thrice they-endeavoured to-place Ossa on-Pelion.*

A-following vowel never elides *heu*, *O*, and *ah* (alas!).

*Ecthipsis* cuts off a-vowel and *m* from the-end, if there-shall-be a-vowel at the-beginning of-the-following word: (as) *O the-cares of-men, O what-great emptiness there-is in things.*

§ 219. C. One-syllable wrought out-of two is-called *Synæresis*, as *deest* (it is wanting), *dein* (next), *aureos* (golden), *alvearia* (hives), *Thesei* (of Theseus) show.

In-the-works-of poets *I* and *U* sometimes take the-privileges of-consonants: (as) *Eridanus king of-rivers. The-wall totters from-the-battering-ram. Knees tremble. And Serians comb light fleeces.*

D. But one-syllable divided into two is-called *Diæresis*, which *Naiades* and yellow-haired *Suævi* show to-you.

*U* is-put for *V*. you-will-see *siliās* (woods) and *solūit* (he-hath loosed).

§ 220. E. *Cæsura* ends words before the-end of-feet : (as) *Ye-Lights which lead in-heaven the-gliding year.*

A-vowel, which nature has-made short, sometimes is-made long in Arsis, Cæsura and Ictus helping : (as) *Poring-over the-breasts he-consults the-palpitating entrails."*

F. *Dialysis* (Incision) separates both a-word and foot at-once : (as) *Ye-Lights which lead in-heaven the-gliding year.*

Not. The-last syllable of-a-verse is-held common.

§ 221. The-Hexameter is-formed by-six feet : of-these the-fifth is a-dactyl : a-spondee is-put in-the-sixth place : and either-of-the-two is-found in-the-other places.

Gravity of-topics stations a-spondee in-the-fifth place.

Cæsura is-wont to-divide an-Hexameter, where the-third or fourth foot is separated at an-Arsis.

Sometimes the-only Cæsura of-a-verse is after a-Thesis : (as) "*Active, passionate, inexorable, fierce.*"

You-will-condemn a-verse which is-without any Cæsura.

A-word of-two-syllables or of-three-syllables, by custom, makes the-termination of-an-Hexameter, seldom a-word-of-more-than-two-syllables, seldom a-word-of-one-syllable, unless another go-before, closes the-verse.

The-last syllable of-a-verse (is) seldom absorbed : when this happens, the-verse (is) then called *Hypermeter* : (as) *In-all-things like Mercury, both in-voice and complexion, and yellow locks, and graceful limbs of-youth.*

§ 222. The-Pentameter has two parts : each commences with-two feet, which a-long syllable follows. A-Spondee and Dactyl enter the-first-part as-you-choose : the-second part rejoices only in-dactylic feet.

Cæsura separates the-first part of-a-Pentameter from-the-second : and Synalœpha is-excluded from that place : (as) *Although he-prevails not in-genius, he-prevails in-art.*

A-word-of-two-syllables makes by custom the-end of-a-Pentameter.

*Est* may-be thrown to the-end, if Synalœpha takes place : (as) *Thy letter was read with-unwilling eyes.* Or if a-word of-one-syllable goes-before, as in this : *If I-obtain those rewards by-my-zeal, it-is enough.*

Let-not a-word of-one-syllable be the-end of-the-first part, unless a-word of-one syllable go-before, as in this : *Yet there-is great hope in-the-goodness of-God.* Or sometimes a-word formed of-two short-syllables : (as) *She secures to-Jupiter the-formidable sceptre without force.*

§ 223. The-Heroic Muse rejoices in-Hexameters alone : *Elegies* join-together Hexameters and Pentameters.

Elegiac-Distichs prefer containing a-complete sense : nor is-it-

good for-the-construction of-a-simple sentence to-be-divided into (separate) distichs.

§ 224. The goldfinch is a singing bird, but the acanthus blooms in the fields. The maple is in the woods; the spirited horse gains an Olympic victory. The chief who carries arms on his shoulders is carried on the horse's flank. The wandering bee stores honey: Apis is an Ægyptian god. The gad-fly harasses horses; an asylum is wont to receive the wretched. He who engraves carves; he who keeps things hidden conceals. You will sing with your voice: he! lead dogs, unless you are white on the temples. Twined nets are set: the brazen helmet shines. Surround your head with the helmet: boars are caught by nets. *Cedo* (I yield) makes *cessi* (Preterperfect), *cado* (I fall) *cecidi*, *cædo* (I beat) *cecidi*. A club strikes; a nail holds firm, and a key opens. A maid carries a distaff, moist matter penetrates a strainer. The farmer tills fields, but strains thick wines. You strike close with a sword; you fall by a spear thrown from a distance. That you may please a companion, put on, as a companion, affable manners. Comedians, seek the stage; messmates, seek supper. Consult teachers, so you consult for yourself. Often has his own desire injured the man desirous of war. Songs are recited, while temples are being dedicated to the Lord. He trusted not to untie, who severed the knot with a sword. This man trains dogs to take them out soon against boars. If you have not money, you are destitute, and eat not delicacies. The sea often deceives one who relies too much on the clear surface. Fruits grow on trees, corn in the fields. The sun chases the clouds, and irrecoverable time flies. The swallow is a chirping bird: the leech swims, the reed is green in spring. By what a man sins, by the same the same man is soon punished. It is a difficult labour under the weight of which I sink. A boy's forehead is smooth, but a girl's tongue light. Seek hares in woods, elegancies in words. He is not bid for by me at a penny, who bids not for me at a penny. I had rather break with my jaw good apples than bad. Merchandise is sold, and reward comes gained by toil. Sylvia strokes with loving hand, while she milks her cow. You will be dear to the Lord, if you have sent gold to the wretched. Strive, little boy, whoever shalt desire to shine. She who is red, besmeared with paint, is forgetful of decency. He fell by base treachery, whom a friend killed. I wait for Caius, who is clad in dark dress. A mouth commands, but a bone is eaten with the mouth. It is a wife's part to bring forth and obey, a husband's to procure. Obedient children make parents rejoice. If you do not wish to be hanged, you will not refuse to pay your debts. Play at ball: a javelin is hurled; *pila* is a pillar. *Plāga* is for a net and a country; *plāga* for a blow. People are the citizens of a city: poplar is a tree. If you can avoid, drink not more than two cups. The prow is the front part (of a ship), the stern the hind part, and the keel the lowest. Thrashing machines bruise grain;

burrs are wont to injure the fallow. A bail promises, but a vessel contains food. A bail kindly assures the person, but a surety money only. If you wish to cross the waters of the sea, use sails.

Trust, but first see ; he who trusts, and has not well seen, is deceived : therefore see, lest you be inveigled by trust. Tailors delight in shears, barbers in curling-irons : but a smith takes his red-hot work with tongs. The same fortune makes partners ; the same toil comrades ; the same duty colleagues : but school, play, the table, make dear companions. *Lira* is the furrow of a field : *lyra* (the lyre) touched utters notes. Let him not be secure, who is not safe from the enemy : you have banks by a river, shore by the sea. Men are old by time ; ancients lived formerly : I feign what is not, and dissemble what is. A hoof tramples : a talon tears, holds, clutches ; tenacious sedge grows in a pool, sea-weed in the sea. We properly intrench a camp, but hedge in a sheep-fold : a spear can be called rounded, a sphere round. Blot out what is written, but quench the flame of the lamp : the tongue tastes any food which has good flavour. The cuticle is on the flesh, the skin drawn from the body : man spreads a back : a beast has *tergus* (a back). A baker has an oven, stoves are warmed by a furnace : this mark of the grammarian was not known to me. Have you anything new ? Seek another : I know nothing. That chatterer relates what matters very little. If perchance you sit anywhere, and the seat is convenient to you, sit in that seat : perhaps a new one is hardly safe.





# APPENDIX.

## I. GREEK NOUNS.

1. Greek Nouns of the First Declension in *as, es, e*. See § 14., note.
2. Greek Nouns of the Second Declension in *os, on*. See § 15., note 3.
3. Greek Nouns Heteroclitē, fluctuating between the Second and Third Declensions:—

(a) Sing. N. Pelē-ūs or Pel-eūs	(b) Achill-eūs or Achill-es
G. Pele-i or Pele-os	Achille-i, Achill-i, Achill-is, or Achille-os
D. Pele-o	Achill-i
Acc. Pele-um or Pele-ā	Achill-em, Achill-en, or Achil- le-a
V. Peleū	Achill-eu or Achill-ē
Abl. Pele-o.	Achill-e.

(c) Sing. N. Thucydid-es	(d) Pericl-es
G. Thucydid-is or Thucydid-i	Pericl-is or Pericl-i
D. Thucydid-i	Pericl-i
Acc. Thucydid-em or Thucydid-en	Pericl-em or Pericle-a
V. Thucydid-e or Thucydid-es	Pericl-es
Abl. Thucydid-e.	Pericl-e.

4. Greek Nouns entirely of the Third Declension:—

(a) Sing. N. Thal-es	(b) Sing. N. Ech-o	(c) Sapph-o
G. Thal-is or Thalet-is	G. Ech-us	Sapph-us or Sapphon-is
D. Thal-i or Thalet-i	D. Ech-o	Sapph-o or Sapphon-i
Acc. Thal-em, Thal-en, or Thal-eta	Acc. Ech-o	Sapph-o or Sapphon-ēēa
V. Thal-e or Thal-es	V. Ech-o	Sapph-o
Abl. Thal-ē or Thalet-ē.	Abl. Echo	Sapph-o or Sapphon-ē.

<p>(d) Sing. N. Memn-on          G. Memnon-is          D. Memnon-i          Acc. Memnon-em or Memnon-a          Abl. Memnon-ē.</p>	<p>(e) Æth-er          Æther-is          Æther-i          Æther-em or Æther-a          Æther-ē.</p>
<p>(f.) Sing. N. Thyrs-is          G. Thyrsid-is or Thyrsid-os          D. Thyrsid-ī          Acc. Thyrs-in or Thyrsid-a          V. Thyrs-ī          Abl. Thyrsid-e.</p>	<p>(g) Tiber-is (Roman word.)          Tiber-is          Tiber-i          Tiber-im          Tiberis          Tiber-i</p>
<p>(h) Sing. N. Nere-is          G. Nereid-is or Nereid-os          D. Nereid-i          Acc. Nereid-em or Nereid-a.          V. Nere-i          Abl. Nereid-e.          Plur. N. Nereid-es          G. Nereid-um.          D. Nereid-ibus or Nereis-in          Acc. Nereid-es or Nereid-as          V. Nereid-es          Abl. Nereid-ibus or Nerei-sin.</p>	<p>(i) Erinn-ys          Erinny-is or Erin-ny-es.          Erinn-y          Erinn-ym, Erinn-yn, or Erinny-a          Erinny-y          Erinny-e.          Erinny-es          Erinny-um          Erinny-sin          Erinny-as          Erinny-es          Erinny-i.</p>



## II. PATRONYMICS.

**PATRONYMICS** are Proper Names, which denote the descendant, by derivation from the name of his father or ancestor. They are Masculine or Feminine. Masculine Patronymics end in *des* of the First Declension. Feminine, in *is* or *as* of the Third, or in *ne* of the First Declension.

**A.** Patronymics derived from Nouns of the First Declension in *us, es*:—

(a) Masculine.

1. Æne-ādes, son of Æne-us.
2. Laert-iades . . Laert-es.

(b) Feminine.

1. Æne-is, daughter of Æne-as.
2. Laert-ias . . Laert-es.

**B. Patronymics derived from Nouns of the Second Declension :—**

(a) Masculine.

1. Tyndar-ides, *son of Tyndar-us.*
2. Thesti-ades . . . Thesti-us.

(b) Feminine.

1. Tyndar-is, *daughter of Tyndar-us.*
2. Thesti-as . . . Thesti-us.
3. Neptun-ine . . . Neptun-us.
4. Acrisi-one . . . Acrisi-us.

**C. Patronymics derived from Heteroclit Nouns in *us* of the Second and Third Declensions :—**

(a) Masculine.

Nel-ides, *son of Nel-eus.*

(b) Feminine.

1. Nel-ēis, *daughter of Nel-eus.*
2. Peli-as . . . Pel-eus.

**D. Patronymics derived from Nouns of the Third Declension :—**

(a) Masculine.

1. Agenor-ides, *son of Agenor.*
2. Cecrop-ides . . . Cecrop-s.
3. Mino-ides . . . Mino-s.
4. Arsac-ides . . . Arsac-es.
5. Atlant-iades . . . Atlas.
6. Telamon-iades . . . Telamon.

(b) Feminine.

1. Agenor-is, *daughter of Agenor.*
2. Cecrop-is . . . Cecrop-s.
3. Mino-is . . . Mino-s.
4. Arsac-is . . . Arsac-es.
5. Atlant-is } . . . Atlas.
- Atlant-ias }
6. Telamon-ias . . . Telamon.

*Obs.* Personal Names of both Genders are also derived from names of places; as, Mæon-ides, Mæon-is, *native of Mæon-ia.*

### III. FEMININE FORMS CORRESPONDING TO MASCULINE.

- |                                    |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. us . . . a : as,                |                                     |
| Masc. equ-us, <i>a horse.</i>      | Fem. equ-a, <i>a mare.</i>          |
| 2. er . . . ra : as,               |                                     |
| Masc. magist-er, <i>a master.</i>  | Fem. magist-ra, <i>a mistress.</i>  |
| 3. tor . . . trix : as,            |                                     |
| Masc. vic-tor, <i>a conqueror.</i> | Fem. vic-trix, <i>a conqueress.</i> |

4. a . is: as,

Masc. Pers-a, a *Persian*.Fem. Pers-is, a *Persian woman*.

5. iz . issa: as,

Masc. Phœn-ix, a *Phœnician*.Fem. Phœn-issa, a *Phœnician woman*.

Add to these many particular forms: as, leo, a *lion*; leiona, a *lioness*.  
 rex, a *king*; regina, a *queen*: Cres, a *Cretan*; Cressa, a *Cretan woman*:  
 Tros, a *Trojan*; Troas, a *Trojan woman*: Thrax, a *Thracian*; Threïssa,  
 a *Thracian woman*: Laco, a *Lacedæmonian*; Lacæna, a *Lacedæmonian*  
 woman: Liby-a, a *Libyan*; Libyssa, a *Libyan woman*, &c.



## IV. ADVERBS.

## A. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

## (1.) Rest in a Place.

Ubi, *where?*

ibi, }

illic, } *there*.

istic, }

hic, *here*.utrobique, *in both places*.utrimque, *on both sides*.ibidem, *in the same place*.alibi, *elsewhere*.alicubi, *somewhere*.

usquam, }

uspiam, } *anywhere*.

nusquam, }

nullibi, } *nowhere*.

ubivis, }

ubilibet, } *where you will*.ubiubi, } *wheresoever*.

ubicumque, }

ubique, } *everywhere*.

passim, }

prope, *near*.procul, *far away*.

intus, }

intrinsecus, } *within*.

extrinsecus, }

foris, } *without*.subtus, *beneath*.superne, *above*.inferne, *below*.præsto, *at hand*.peregre, *abroad*.

## (2.) Motion to a Place.

Quo, *whither?*

eo, }

illuc, } *thither*.

istuc, }

huc, *hither*.eodem, *to the same place*.alio, *to another place*.

quo, }

aliquo, } *anywhither*.

quopiam, }

quovis, } *whither you will*.

quolibet, }

utrovis, *whither of the two you will*.

quoquo, }

quocumque, } *whither soever*.intro, *to within*.foras, *to without*.

(3.) *Motion towards a Place (versus or versum).*

Quorsum, *whitherward?*  
 illorsum, *thitherward.*  
 horsum, *hitherward.*  
 aliorsum, *towards another quarter.*  
 utraque versum, *towards both quarters.*  
 aliquorsum, *towards some quarter.*  
 quaque versus, or -um, *towards every quarter.*  
 introrsum, *inwards.*

deorsum, *downwards.*  
 sursum, *upwards.*  
 retrorsum, *backwards.*  
 prorsus, *straightforward.*  
 seorsum, *sideways.*  
 adversum, } *towards, against.*  
 adversus, }  
 dextrorsum, *towards the right.*  
 sinistrorsum, *towards the left.*

(4.) *Motion from a Place.*

Unde, *whence?*  
 inde, }  
 illinc, } *thence.*  
 istinc, }  
 hinc, *hence.*  
 utrimque, *from both sides.*  
 indidem, *from the same place.*  
 aliunde, *from elsewhere.*  
 alicunde, *from some place.*  
 undique, }  
 undique versum, } *from all sides.*

undevis, } *from which side you*  
 undelibet, } *will.*  
 undeunde, }  
 undecumque, } *from whatever side.*  
 minus, *from far.*  
 cominus, *from near, close.*  
 funditus, *from the ground, utterly*  
 radicitus, } *from the roots.*  
 stirpitis, }  
 cœlitus, *from heaven.*  
 divinitus, *from the gods.*

(5.) *Motion by a Way.*

Quà, *which way?*  
 eà, }  
 illac, } *that way.*  
 istac, }  
 hac, *this way.*  
 utrâque, *both ways.*  
 eàdem, *the same way.*  
 alià, *another way.*  
 aliqua, }  
 quadam, } *some way.*

quavis, } *which way you will.*  
 qualibet, }  
 utrâvis, *which of the two ways you*  
 will.  
 quaquâ, } *which way soever.*  
 quacumque, }  
 rectâ, *straight.*  
 dextrâ, *to the right.*  
 sinistrâ, *to the left.*

## B. ADVERBS OF TIME.

(1.) *When?*

Quando, *when?*  
 nunc, } *now.*  
 modò, }  
 hodie, *to-day.*  
 tunc, } *then.*  
 tum, }  
 neri, *yesterday.*  
 pridie, *the day before.*

dudum, } *some time back.*  
 pridem, }  
 jamdudum, }  
 nuper, *lately.*  
 nudiustertius, *three days since.*  
 ante hac, } *heretofore.*  
 ante, }  
 antea

jamdiu, *long since.*

jam, *now, presently.*

jamjam, *directly.*

mox, } *soon*

cito, }

statim, }

confestim, }

ilicet, }

illicò, }

protinus, }

cras, *to-morrow.*

postridie, *the following day.*

perendie, *the day after to-morrow.*

post, }

postea, }

posthac, }

postmodum, }

postmodo, }

*immediately, forthwith.*

*afterwards, hereafter.*

nonnunquam, }

aliquando, }

quandoque, }

quondam, }

olim, }

interim, interea, *meanwhile.*

interdum, *sometimes.*

unquam, *ever.*

tandem, *at length.*

quandocumque, *whensoever*

alias, *at another time.*

vixdum, }

nondum, }

nunquam, *never.*

semper, *always.*

*sometimes.*

*some time ago or hereafter*

## (2.) *How long?*

Quamdiu, *how long?*

diu, *long.*

aliquamdiu, }

aliquamtisper, }

tamdiu, *so long.*

*some length of time.*

tantisper, *so long.*

parumper, }

paulisper, }

adhuc, *hitherto.*

in perpetuum, *for ever.*

*for a short time.*

## (3.) *How often?*

Quoties, *how often?*

toties, *so often.*

quotidie, *daily.*

quotannis, *yearly.*

aliquoties, *several times.*

identidem, *repeatedly.*

interdum, }

subinde, }

denuo, *afresh.*

*now and then.*

rursus, }

iterum, }

plerumque, *usually.*

sæpe, *often.*

crebrò, *frequently.*

rarò, *seldom.*

semel, *once.*

bis, *twice.*

&c. &c. see § 31.

## C. ADVERBS OF ORDER.

Primum, primò, *in the first place.*

deinde, *in the second place.*

deinceps, *next.*

porrò, }

præterea, }

*moreover.*

insuper, *moreover.*

tertiò, *thirdly.*

denique, }

postremo, }

*finally.*

## D. ADVERBS OF QUALITY, MANNER, AND DEGREE.

(1.) Interrogative: as, cur, quare, quamobrem, *why?* num, an, *whether?* quomodo, *how?* &c.

(2.) Qualitative: as, bene, *well*; male, *ill*; pulchrè, *beautifully* fortiter *bravely*; sapienter, *wisely*; with many others derived from Adjectives.

(3.) Intensive : as, *magnoperè, maximè, very greatly* ; *magis, more* ; *multum, much* ; *oppidò, perquam, valdè, very* ; *longè, by far* ; *potissimùm, præcipuè, præsertim, especially* ; *omninò, penitus, prorsus, wholly* ; *potiùs, rather* ; *satis, enough* ; *nimis, nimium, too much, &c.*

(4.) Diminutive : as, *parum, too little* ; *fermè, ferè, penè, prope, propemodum, almost* ; *paullum, paullulum, very little* , *paullo, by a little* ; *ægrè, vix, scarcely, &c.*

(5.) Limitative : as, *duntaxat, modò, tantummodi, solùm, tantum, only* ; *plerumque, generally, &c.*

(6.) Modal : as, *adeo, ita, sic, so* ; *itidem, similiter, in like manner* ; *aliter, secus, otherwise, &c.*

(7.) Gradulative : as, *paullatim, sensim, &c., by degrees.*

(8.) Distributive : as, *sigillatim, separatim, individually* ; *partim, partly* ; *viritim, man by man, &c.*

(9.) Collective : as, *pariter, simul, unà, together, &c.*

(10.) Affirmative : as, *certè, etiam, ita, nà, planè, profectò, sanè, utique, yes, truly, &c.*

(11.) Negative : as, *haud, non, not, no* ; *nequaquam, haudquaquam, neutiquam, minimè, by no means, &c.*

(12.) Dubitative : as, *fors, forsan, forsitan, fortasse, fortassis, perhaps* ; *forte, by chance, &c.*

(13.) Asseverative : as, *pol, edepol, by Pollux* ; *hercule, mehercule, by Hercules, &c.*

(14.) Definitive : as, *nempe, nimirum, scilicet, videlicet, to wit, &c.*

## V. CONJUNCTIONS.

### A. CO-ORDINATIVE.

(1.) Sociative : *et, que, atque, ac, and* ; *etiam, quoque, item, also* , *neque, nec, nor* ; *et . . . et, both . . . and* ; *neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.*

(2.) Adversative : *at, ast, sed, autem, verum, verò, but* ; *tamen, yet* ; *attamen, verumtamen, but yet* ; *atqui, but indeed* ; *enimvero, verum enimvero, but in truth.*

(3.) Dissociative : *aut, vel, ve, or* ; *aut . . . aut, vel . . . vel, ve . . . ve, either . . . or.*

(4.) Causal : *nam, namque, enim, etenim, for* ; *enimvero, for in truth.*

(5.) Conclusive : *eo, ideo, idcirco, propterea, on that account* ; *itaque, ergo, igitur, therefore* ; *proinde, accordingly* ; *quocirca, quamobrem, quare, quapropter, wherefore.*

### B. SUBORDINATIVE.

(1.) Local : *ubi, where* ; *unde, whence* ; *quo, whither* ; *qua, in which direction* ; *quatenus, how far.*

(2.) Temporal : *quum, quando, ut, ubi, when* ; *dum, donec, whilst, until* ; *quoad, as long as, until* ; *priusquam, antequam, before* ; *postquam, ut, after, since* ; *simul atque, as soon as* ; *quoties, as often as.*

(3.) Causal : *quum, quoniam, quandoquidem, since* ; *quia, quòd, because* ; *quippe, for that.*

(4.) Conditional : *si, if* ; *nisi, unless* ; *sin, but if* ; *dum, dummodo, provided that* ; *sive, or if* ; *seu . . . sive, whether . . . or.*

(5.) Concessive: etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, quamquam, quamvis, ut, licet, *although*.

(6.) Final: ut, *in order that*; quo, *that*; ne, *that... not, lest*; neve, neu, *and that... not, and lest*; quominus, *but that, that... not*.

(7.) Consecutive: ut, *so that*; quin, *but that; that... not*.

(8.) Comparative: ut, sicut, velut, ceu, *as*; tamquam, quasi, *as if*.

(9.) Conclusive: cur, quamobrem, quare, *why, wherefore*.

(10.) Modal: quomodo, quemadmodum, quàm, *how, &c.*

(11.) Optative: utinam, si, O si, *would that*.

## VI. INTERJECTIONS.

(1.) Invocative: O! heus! ohe! eho! ehodum! O! ho! eja, *come!*

(2.) Monstrative: en, ecce, *lo!*

(3.) Admirative: O! au! hui! hem! ehem! vah! atat! papæ *ha! oh!*

(4.) Jubilative: io! evoe! hurra! eu! euge! bravo! *well-done!*

(5.) Lamentative: hei! heu! eheu! ah! vœ! proh! alas, *woe's me!*

## VII. ORTHOGRAPHY.

THE Orthography of the Latin language is very unsettled, on account of the uncertain etymology of many words, and the changes which took place from time to time in the manner of speaking and writing.

The subjoined Table exhibits the preferable Orthography of some disputed words:—

<i>Write</i>				<i>Write</i>			
valētudo	<i>rather than</i>	valitudo.		lacrima	<i>rather than</i>	lacryma.	
genitrix	:	genetrix.		cæcus	.	cœcus.	
deminutio	.	diminutio.		mæreo	.	mœreo.	
ceteri	.	cæteri.		sollers	.	solers.	
frenum	.	frænum.		sollennis	.	solemnis.	
heres	.	hæres.		Juppiter	.	Jupiter.	
lēvis	.	lævis.		quattuor	.	quatuor.	
prelum	.	prælum.		rettuli	.	retuli.	
secundus	.	fæcundus.		conjux	.	conjunx.	
femina	.	fæmina.		have	.	ave.	
fetus	.	fætus.		ahenum	.	aenum.	
fenus	.	fœnus.		exsul	.	exul.	
suboles	.	soboles.		letum	.	lethum.	
hiems	.	hyems.		sulfur	.	sulphur	
ocius	.	ocyus.		tus	.	thus.	
silva	.	sylva.		ancora	.	anchora.	
stilus	.	stylus.		viéesimus	.	vigesimus.	
Sulla	.	Sylla.		Caius	.	Gaius.	
satira	.	satura.		Cnæus	.	Gnæus.	
clipeus	.	clypeus.		obsonor	.	opsonor.	



## VIII. ON THE DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

**SYLLABLES**, if possible, begin with a Consonant, and end with a Vowel.  
Hence —

1. A Consonant between two Vowels belongs to the latter syllable; as, *pa-ter, a-ma-tur*.

2. When two or three Consonants come between two Vowels, they all belong to the latter syllable, if they can begin a Latin or Greek word; as, *ma-gnus, a-gri, e-sca, pe-stis, a-stra, A-bdera, pu-blicus, Ara-chne, Pa-phlago, rhy-thmus, seri-psi, a-sthma*: if not, they are divided between the two syllables; as, *an-nus, cur-ro tel-lus, an-te, pun-ctum, ar-ctus, jux-ta*.

*Obs.* 1. A compounded word is divided into the words which compose it; as, *ab-avus*: unless the first element is a mutilated word, when it follows the general rule; as, *a-ni-madverto*.

*Obs.* 2. An euphonic letter between the Compounds belongs to the former syllable; as, *neg-otium, prod-est*. But see § 94. N. 2. (11)

## IX. SIGLARIUM ROMANUM.

*Abbreviations used in the Latin Language.*

## 1. PRÆNOMINA.

A. Aulus	K. Kæso	P. Publius	Sp. Spurius
C. Caius	L. Lucius	Q. Quintus	T. Titus
CN. Cnæus	M. Marcus	SER. Servius	TI. Tiberius.
D. Decimus.	M'. Manius.	SEX. Sextus.	

## 2. TITLES.

Cos. Consul.	Coss. Consules or	P. M. Pontifex Maximus.
Consulibus.		PROC. Proconsul.
Cos. DES. Consul Designatus.		S. P. Q. R. Senatus Populusque
D. Divus.		Romanus.
IMP. Imperator.		TR. PL. Tribunus Plebis.
P. C. Patres Conscripti.		

## 3. IN VOTING ON TRIALS AND ELECTIONS.

A. Absolvo.	C. Condemno.	A. P. Antiquam (legem) proba.
N. L. Non liquet.		V. R. Uti rogas.

## 4. ON TOMBS.

F. C. Faciundum curavit.	OB. Obiit.
H. C. E. Hic conditus est.	P. C. Poni curavit.
H. S. E. Hic situs est.	V. Vixit.

## 5. MISCELLANEOUS.

A. U. C. Anno Urbis Condita.	S. C. Senatus Consultum.
D. D. Dono dedit.	S. D. Salutem dicit.
D. D. D. Dat, dicat, dedicat.	S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicit.
D. M. Diis Manibus.	S. V. B. E. E. Q. V. Si vales, bene est, ego quoque valeo.
D. O. M. Deo Optimo Maximo.	Tr. Pot. Tribunicia Potestate
F. Filius.	
F. F. F. Felix, faustum, fortunatum.	

## 6. MODERN.

A. B. Artium Baccalaureus.	i. q. idem quod.
A. C. Anno Christi.	L. or LIB. Liber.
A. D. Anno Domini.	L. B. Lectori benevolo.
A. M. Artium Magister. Anno Mundi.	l. c. loco citato.
l. C. n. ante Christum natum.	l. l. loco laudato.
p. C. n. post Christum natum.	leg. lege or legatur.
C. P. P. C. Collatis pecuniis pon curaverunt.	LL. D. Legum Doctor.
Cet. Cetera.	M. D. Medicinæ Doctor.
Cf. Confer or Conferatur.	N. B. Nota bene.
Coll. Collato or Collatis.	N. T. Novum Testamentum.
Cod. Codex. Codd. Codices.	Obs. Observa or observetur.
D. Doctor.	P. S. Postscriptum.
Del. Dele or Deleatur.	S. T. P. Sanctæ Theologiæ Professor.
Ed. Editio. Edd. Editiones.	sc. scilicet.
Etc. Etcetera.	s. v. sub voce.
h. e. hoc est.	vid. vide or videatur.
I. C. Jesus Christus.	viz. videlicet.
Ictus. Jurisconsultus.	V. Cel. Vir celeberrimus.
i. e. id est.	V. Cl. Vir Clarissimus.
	V. T. Vetus Testamentum

## X. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

(a) The Roman Calendar agrees with the English, except in the manner of naming the days of the month. Every Roman month had three chief days; Calendæ (Calends), Nonæ (Nones), Idus (Ides.) The Calends were always the 1st day of the month: the Nones were on the 5th: the Ides on the 13th; except in March, May, July, and October, in which month the Nones were on the 7th, the Ides on the 15th.

*Martius, October, cum Maio Julius, exstant,  
Quindecima in quibus lux facit Idus, septima Nonas.*

These three days, the Calends, Nones, and Ides, were taken as points, from which the other days were counted backwards. That is, the Romans did not say, such and such a day after, &c., but such and such a day before the Calends, or Nones, or Ides.

Days of English Month.	MARTIUS, MAIUS, JULIUS, OCTOBER, 31 Days.	JANUARIUS, AUGUSTUS, DECEMBER, 31 Days.	APRILIS, JUNIUS, SEPTEMBER, NOVEMBER, 30 Days.	FEBRUARIUS, 28 Days — in every fourth Year 29.
1	Calendis.	Calendis	Calendis.	Calendis.
2	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
3	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
4	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
5	a.d. III.	Nonis	Nonis	Nonis
6	Pridie	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.
7	Nonis	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.
8	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.
9	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.
10	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
11	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
12	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
13	a.d. III.	Idibus	Idibus	Idibus
14	Pridie	a.d. XIX.	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVI.
15	Idibus	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XV.
16	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XIV.
17	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIII.
18	a.d. XV.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XII.
19	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XI.
20	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. X.
21	a.d. XII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. XI.	a.d. IX.
22	a.d. XI.	a.d. XI.	a.d. X.	a.d. VIII.
23	a.d. X.	a.d. X.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VII.
24	a.d. IX.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.
25	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.
26	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.
27	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. V.	a.d. III.
28	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. IV.	Pridie
29	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. III.	
30	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	Pridie	
31	Pridie	Pridie		

[In Leap-year, Feb. 24th (a.d. VI. Cal. Mart.) was twice reckoned,—hence this day was called **DIES BISSEXTUS**, and leap-year itself **ANNUS BISSEXTUS**]

'b) If we take the month of January as a sample, the first day was *Calendæ Januariæ*. The 2d must be reckoned backwards from the Nones, which in January fell on the 5th, *Nonæ Januariæ*. But in this reckoning the day of the Nones itself must be included. Therefore our 4th of January was the 2d day before the Nones, called *pridie (ante) Nonas Januarias*. The 3d of January was *tertio (ante) Nonas Januarias*; the 2d, *quarto (ante) Nonas Januarias*; or, abbreviated, III. Non. Jan., IV. Non. Jan. To obtain the Roman name for the 6th of January, we must begin to count backwards from the Ides, which fell on the 13th, *Idus Januariæ*. Thus, the 12th was *pridie Id. Jan.*; the 11th, III. *Id. Jan.*; the 10th, IV. *Id. Jan.* &c; the 6th was therefore VIII. *Id. Jan.* To obtain the name for the 14th of January, we must count back from the Calends of the next month, February, *Calendæ Februariæ*. Thus, January 31st was *pridie Cal. Feb.*; January 30th, III. *Cal. Feb.* &c. &c.; January 14th was, therefore, XIX. *Cal. Feb.*

(c) From these observations it appears that we may find the Roman name for any given English day by the following rules: —

(1) If the given day is between the Calends and Nones of the Roman month, subtract its English number from the English number of the day on which the Nones fall, increased by one: the remainder will give that number before the Nones by which the day is called in Latin.

(2) Similarly, if the given day is between the Nones and Ides of the Roman month, subtract its English number from the English number of the day on which the Ides fall, increased by one: the remainder will give that number before the Ides by which the day is called in Latin.

Thus, to find the Roman name for the 4th of June, the Nones of June falling on the 5th, subtract 4 from  $5 + 1$ , or 6; the remainder is 2 (*pridie*); therefore, the 4th of June is *pridie Non. Jun.* Again; to find the Roman name for the 10th of May, the Ides of May falling on the 15th, subtract 10 from  $15 + 1$ , or 16; the remainder being 6, the 10th of May is called VI. *Id. Mai.*

(3) But, if the given day is between the Ides of the given month and the Calends of the next, then subtract its English number from the total number of days in the given month, increased by two; the remainder will give that number before the Calends of the next month by which the day is called in Latin.

Thus, to find the Roman name for the 18th of August: subtract 18 from  $31 + 2$ , or 33, the remainder is 15, and August 18th is called XV. *Cal. Sept.* For April 21st, subtract 21 from  $30 + 2$ , or 32, there remains 11; and April 21st is called XI. *Cal. Mai.* For February 25th, subtract 25 from  $28 + 2$ , or 30, there remains 5; and February 25th is called V. *Cal. Mart.*

(d) As regards Construction, *Calendis, Nonis, Idibus* are used as Ablatives of time; and when *tertio, quarto, &c., Calendas, &c.,* are used, the words *die ante* are understood. But Cicero does not use these latter phrases: he writes (for instance) *ante diem tertium Calendas Januarias*, or, abbreviated, *a. d. III. Cal. Jan.* to express December 30th, and so in every case.

Here the Preposition *ante* has, by a corruption of custom, quitted its proper place before *Calendas*, to stand before *diem* which it does not govern. So merely idiomatic is this mode of expression, that we find it used in dependence on Prepositions; as *Consul Latinus in ante diem tertium Idus Sextiles edixit.*—Liv. *De Quinto fratre nuntii nobis tristes venerunt ex ante diem Non. Jun. usque ad pridie Cal. Sept.*—Cic.

(e) The names of the months are Adjectives agreeing with *mensis* understood: *Januarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Junius, Julius*, (so called from Julius Cæsar, but before his time *Quintilis*), *Augustus* (so called from Augustus Cæsar, but before his time *Sextilis*), *September, October, November, December.* With the words *Calendæ, Nonæ, Idus*, they are always used attributively, never as Possessive Genitives: as, *Natus est Augustus IX. Calendas Octobres.*—Suet. *Memoria tenent, me a. d. XIII. Calendas Januarius principem revocandæ libertutis fuisse.*—Cic. *Capuam venire jussi sumus ad Nonas Februarias.*—Cic. VII. *Idus Maias æstatûs initium.*—Colum.

## XI. COMPOUND NUMERALS.

a. The General Rules for writing Compound Numbers, Cardinal, Ordinal, and Distributive, are as follows:—

(1) In Compound Numbers less than 20, either the smaller number without *et* precedes the larger, or the larger with *et* precedes the smaller: as, *Nos Tyndaritani in septemdecim populis Siciliæ numeramur.*—CIC. *Octavo decimo ætatis anno Cn. Pompeius, nono decimo Cæsar Octavianus civilia bella sustinuerunt.*—TAC. *Gallinis ova terna dena subjcito æstate.*—PLIN. *Roscius fundos decem et tres reliquit.*—CIC. *Licet dicere decimus et septimus pro septimus decimus.*—PRISC.

(2) In Compound Numbers greater than 20, either the smaller number with *et* precedes the larger, or the larger without *et* precedes the smaller: as, *Romulus septem et triginta regnavit annos.*—CIC. *Macedo Alexander tertio et tricesimo anno mortem obiit.*—CIC. *Plinius scripsit sub Nerone naturæ historiarum libros triginta septem.*—PLIN. *Dentes triceni bini viris attribuuntur.*—PLIN.

(3) In Compound Numbers above 100, the larger with or without *et* generally precedes the smaller: as, *Leontinus Gorgius centum et septem complevit annos.*—CIC. *Annum magnum esse voluerunt omnibus planetis in eundem recurrentibus locum, quod fit post duodecim millia nongentos quinquaginta quatuor annos.*—CIC. *Sexcentesium et quadragesimum annum urbs Roma agebat, quum primum Cimbrorum audita sunt arma.*—TAC. *Olympiade centesimâ quartâ-decimâ Lysippus fuit.*—PLIN. *Aristidis arbitrio quadrigena et sexagena talenta quotannis Delum sunt collata.*—NEP.

(4) The Thousands are expressed either by prefixing the numerical adverbs *bis, ter, &c.*, to *mille* (a construction chiefly found in poetry), or by prefixing the cardinal numbers to *millia*; as, *duo millia, tria millia, &c.*

*Millia* (better written *milia*), is generally followed by a Genitive, as in example to § 171. (b); but, if smaller numbers intervene between *millia* and the Substantive, the latter will often stand in the same case as the Numeral: as, *Tria millia et septingenti pedites ierunt.*—LIV.

(5) The Numbers above 100,000 are expressed by the Numeral Adverbs joined to *centum millia* or *centena millia*, as stated in the following passage: *Non erat apud antiquos numerus ultra centum millia; itaque et hodie multiplicantur hæc, ut decies centena millia aut sæpius dicantur.*—PLIN.

b. *Unus* is often used in Compound Numbers for the Ordinal *primus*, as in the first example to B.

c. The numbers compounded with 8 and 9 are commonly expressed by a subtraction of *duo* and *unus* from the next multiple of 10: as, *duodeviginti* (*duodevicesimus*), 18; *undeviginti* (*undevicesimus*), 19; *duodetriginta* (*duodetricesimus*), 28; *undetriginta* (*undetricesimus*), 29; &c. &c.: *duodecentum* (*duodecentessimus*), 98; *undecentum* (*undecentessimus*), 99.

## XII. ROMAN MONEY.

a. The *As*, or *Libra*, was originally the weight of a pound of 12 ounces (*uncia*), hence called *as libralis*, and *as grævus*. It was divided into parts which were named according to their quantity, or number of ounces they contained, as follows:—

Uncia	= 1 oz. or $\frac{1}{12}$ of the <i>As</i> .	Septunx	= 7 oz. or $\frac{7}{12}$ of the <i>As</i> .
Sextans	= 2 or $\frac{1}{6}$	Bes	= 8 or $\frac{2}{3}$
Quadrans	= 3 or $\frac{1}{4}$	Dodrans	= 9 or $\frac{3}{4}$
Triens	= 4 or $\frac{1}{3}$	Dextans	= 10 or $\frac{5}{6}$
Quincunx	= 5 or $\frac{5}{12}$	Deunx	= 11 or $\frac{11}{12}$
Semissis	= 6 or $\frac{1}{2}$		

The etymology of *bes* is doubtful (some suppose *bis triens*): *dodrans* is for *de-quadrans* (*As*— $\frac{1}{4}$ ): *dextans* for *de-sextans* (*As*— $\frac{1}{6}$ ): *deunx* (*As*—*uncia*). The *Uncia* was also subdivided: viz.

Semuncia	= $\frac{1}{2}$ of <i>Uncia</i> = $\frac{1}{24}$ of <i>As</i> .	Sextula	= $\frac{1}{6}$ of <i>Uncia</i> = $\frac{1}{72}$ of <i>As</i> .
Duella	= $\frac{1}{3}$ — = $\frac{1}{36}$	Scrupula	= $\frac{1}{24}$ — = $\frac{1}{288}$
Sicilicus	= $\frac{1}{4}$ — = $\frac{1}{48}$	Siliqua	= $\frac{1}{144}$ — = $\frac{1}{1728}$

*Sescuncia* or *Sescunx* =  $1\frac{1}{2}$  *uncia* =  $\frac{1}{2}$  *quadrans* =  $\frac{1}{8}$  *As*. *Sesquialtera ratio* = 1 :  $1\frac{1}{2}$  = 2 : 3. Of the divisions of the *As*, the *uncia*, *sextans*, *quadrans*, *triens*, *quincunx*, *semis*, were represented by copper coins.

b. *As* was the Roman unit, and was used for any whole divided into 12 equal parts; which parts were called *uncia*. Hence it was applied to measure length, capacity, &c., as well as weight: and “inch,” or the 12th part of a foot, as well as “ounce,” the 12th part of a lb., is derived from *uncia*. It was also used to calculate interest. Thus (interest being paid monthly at the rate of so much per 100 *Asses*):

<i>Unciæ usuræ</i>	= $\frac{1}{12}$ per cent per month	= 1 per cent per annum.
<i>Sextantes</i>	= $\frac{1}{6}$ — — = 2	
<i>Quadrantes</i>	= $\frac{1}{4}$ — — = 3	
&c.	&c.	&c.

*Asses usuræ* = 1 per cent per month = 12 per cent per annum.

*Asses usuræ* were also called *centesimæ*; and *binæ centesimæ* = 2 per cent per month = 24 per cent; so *quaternæ centesimæ* = 48 per cent per annum. Horace says: *Quinas hic capiti mercedes exsecat* (i. e. *quinas centesimas*). (This man slices off 60 per cent from the capital; i. e. in lending a sum of money he deducts from it interest at the rate of 5 per cent per month = 60 per cent per annum.) The meaning of *unciarium fœnus*, which was the yearly interest legalised by the Twelve Tables, has been disputed. In the *Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities*, it is understood to mean 1 *uncia* per *as* =  $8\frac{1}{3}$  per cent per annum.

c. <i>Heres ex asse</i>	means heir to the whole estate.
<i>Heres ex deince</i>	— heir to $\frac{1}{12}$ of the estate.
<i>Heres ex semisse</i> , or	— heir to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the estate.
<i>Heres ex dividiâ parte</i> }	
&c.	&c.

d. Fractions might also be expressed by the Ordinals as Denominators and the Cardinals for Numerators (above 1). Thus,  $\frac{1}{2}$  is *dimidia pars*,  $\frac{1}{3}$  *tertia pars*, &c.;  $\frac{1}{6}$  *sexta pars* or *dimidia tertia* ( $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{3}$ );  $\frac{1}{8}$  *octava pars* or *dimidia quarta* ( $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{4}$ ), &c. So  $\frac{1}{21}$  was *tertia septima* ( $\frac{1}{3} \times \frac{1}{7}$ ). Again,  $\frac{2}{3}$  is either *duæ tertiæ*, or *duæ partes*, or *dimidia et sexta* ( $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{6} = \frac{2}{3}$ ). And  $\frac{3}{4}$  is *tres quartæ*, or *tres partes*, or *dimidia et quarta* ( $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{3}{4}$ ).

e. The *Sestertius* (*Nummus*), or sesterce, was a silver coin equal to 2½ asses, and  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the *denarius*. Some derive its symbol HS from IIS (2½), others from LLS (*Libra Libra semis*), which comes to the same thing.

The *Sestertium* (= 1000 *sestertii*) was not a coin, but a sum, and is only used in the Plural Number.

Some suppose that the Substantive joined with the Numeral Adverbs *decies*, *vicies*, &c., is a Neuter Noun *Sestertium*, only used in the Singular, and signifying 100,000 sesterces. Be this correct or not, the practical rule for the student's guidance is as follows:—

(1) *Sestertius*, or *Sestertii* (PLUR.) (often expressed by HS.) joined with the Cardinal or Distributive Numbers, denotes so many *nummi sestertii* (coins called sesterces) as in the examples cited § 172. (b).

(2) *Sestertia*, in the Plural (also often represented by HS.) joined with the Cardinal or Distributive Numbers, denotes so many 1000 *nummi sestertii*: as, in the examples cited (c).

(3) The Numeral Adverbs, joined with (or understanding) *sestertii* (Gen. sing.), *sestertiūm*, *nummūm*, or HS., denote so many 100,000 *nummi sestertii*, as in the examples to Obs. When an amount is described by more than one of these Adverbs, they must be added together if the larger Numeral stands first, but multiplied when the smaller is first; care being taken not to reckon the *centena millia*, which is understood, more than once in the whole amount. Thus, *millies quingenties* = 150,000,000 sesterces; but *quaterdecies millies* = 1,400,000,000 sesterces. When the numbers are in cipher, it is often difficult to know whether *sestertii* or *sestertia* are meant. A distinction is sometimes made by a line over the Numeral.

Thus, HS. X = *Sestertii decem*.

HS.  $\overline{\text{X}}$  = *Sestertia decem*.

$\overline{\text{HS}}$ . X = *Sestertii decies*.

Wurm gives the following rule:—When the Numbers are divided into three classes by points, the right-hand division indicates units, the second thousands, the left-hand hundreds of thousands.

Thus, III. XII. DC = 300,000 + 12,000 + 600 = 312,600 sesterces. But these distinctions are not strictly observed in manuscripts.

### XIII. METRES.

#### A. LIST OF FEET.

##### (a) Of two Syllables —

∪ ∪ Pyrrhichius: *pătēr*.

∪ ∪ Iambus: *ămănt*.

| ∪ Trochæus: *avdīr*.

| ∪ ∪ Spondeeus: *lătōs*.

## (b) Of three syllables —

υ υ υ	Tribrachys: <i>rĕgĕrĕ.</i>		- υ -	Creticus: <i>dīxĕrānt.</i>
- υ υ	Dactylus: <i>cōrpōrā.</i>		υ - -	Bacchius: <i>rĕgĕbānt.</i>
υ υ -	Anapæstus: <i>ānīmōs.</i>		- - υ	Antibacchius: <i>rĕxīssĕ.</i>
υ - υ	Amphibrachys: <i>lātīnūs.</i>		- - -	Molossus: <i>dīcĕbūs.</i>

## (c) Of four syllables —

υ υ υ υ	Proceleusmaticus: <i>hōmīnībūs.</i>
- υ υ υ	Pæon Primus: <i>cōndīdīmūs.</i>
υ - υ υ	Pæon Secundus: <i>āmābīmūs.</i>
υ υ - υ	Pæon Tertius: <i>nēmōrālīs.</i>
υ υ υ -	Pæon Quartus: <i>rĕgīmīnī.</i>
υ υ - -	Ionicus a Minore: <i>mētūēntēs.</i>
- - υ υ	Ionicus a Majore: <i>tĕrrĕbīmūs.</i>
υ - υ -	Diambus: <i>prōtĕrvītūs.</i>
- υ - υ	Ditrochæus: <i>cōndīlīssĕ.</i>
- - υ -	Choriambus: <i>ōppōsītīs.</i>
υ - - υ	Antispastus: <i>rĕgĕbāmūr.</i>
υ - - -	Epitrītus Primus: <i>āmāvīstī.</i>
- υ - -	Epitrītus Secundus: <i>aūdīĕbās.</i>
- - υ -	Epitrītus Tertius: <i>āudīvērānt.</i>
- - - υ	Epitrītus Quartus: <i>rĕxīssēmūs.</i>
- - - -	Dispondeus: <i>sūspĕxērūnt.</i>

The Trochee is also called *Choreus*, the Cretic *Amphimacer*

## B. ARSIS.

As Arsis properly falls on a long syllable, in Iambic Metre it will fall on the second syllables of the feet, in Dactylic and Trochaic on the first. When a long syllable having Arsis is resolved into two short ones, the Arsis falls on the first of these; hence, when a Tribrach is put for an Iambus, the Arsis is on its second syllable; when for a Trochee, on its first. Cæsura after Arsis is called *strong*; after Thesis *weak*.

## C. METRICAL TERMS.

Two feet (Dipodia) make a metre in Iambic, Trochaic, and Anapæstic Verses, one foot in Dactylic and other Measures.

A Verse of one Metre is called *Monometer*.

—	two	—	<i>Dimeter.</i>
—	three	—	<i>Trimeter.</i>
—	four	—	<i>Tetrameter.</i>
—	five	—	<i>Pentameter.</i>
—	six	—	<i>Hexameter. &amp;c.</i>

Two feet and a syllable in Dactylic, Iambic, and Trochaic Verses are called *Penthemimeris*, a Penthemimer: as, *Arboribusque comæ.* — *Beatus ille.* — *Truditur dies.* Three feet and a syllable are called *Hephthemimeris*, a Hephthemimer: as, *Quid faciat lætas segetes.* — *Locas sub ipsum funus.* — *Truditur dies die.* So *Trihemimeris*, one foot and a syllable; *Ennehemimeris*, four feet and a syllable. *Anacrusis* is a syllable in Thesis at the beginning of certain kinds of verse. A *Base* is a Trochee (or Spondee with Arsis on the first syllable) at the beginning of certain verses.



## D. DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

a. The Dactylic Hexameter is also called *Senarius* from having six feet (*seni pedes*) and *Heroicus*, because the deeds of Heroes were celebrated in this measure by the oldest poets, Homer, Hesiod, &c., and afterwards by their Latin imitators Ennius, Virgil, &c.

b. When a Spondee occurs in the 5th place (which is a rare licence, and seldom to be imitated) a Dactyl generally precedes it: as,

*Cara deûm soboles, magnum Jovis incrementum.*—VIRG.

But not always: as,

*Cum patribus populoque, Penatibus et magnis Dîs.*

c. Such lines as these, being without Cæsura, are bad and inadmissible:

*Hastis campus longis circum splendet et horret.*

*Lumina dilabentem cælo ducitis annum.*

*Efficientia cernite dissociabile marmor.*

d. The following rules are also to be borne in mind by the young composer of Heroic Hexameters:—

(1) A Spondaic word, followed by a stop, and belonging in sense to the preceding verse, seldom begins an Hexameter: as,

*Spiramenta linunt, fucoque et floribus oras*

*Explant, | collectumque hæc ipsa ad munera gluten.*—VIRG.

This may, however, be done for the sake of emphasis: as,

*Extinctum Nymphæ crudeli funere Daphnin*

*Flebant: | vos coryli testes et flumina Nymphis.*—VIRG.

(2) Dialysis after the 2d foot is very rare, and to be avoided: as,

*Scilicet omnibus | est labor impendendus, et omnes.*—VIRG.

Unless the 2d foot ends with a monosyllable or a pyrrhich: as,

*Experiar, tu | deinde iubeto certet Amyntas.*—VIRG.

*Ecce duas tibi, | Daphni, duas altaria Phæbo.*—VIRG.

The only common exception to this rule is when *inter* or *intra* forms the 2d foot, followed by a monosyllabic pronoun: as,

*Talibus inter se dictis ad tecta subibant.*—VIRG.

If an elided syllable follows the 2d foot, it is commonly followed by a monosyllabic particle: as,

*Tum durare solum || et discludere Nerea ponto.*—VIRG.

But not always, as,

*Quin etiam patriâ || excussos infesta per undas.*—VIRG.

(3) Verses with only weak Cæsuras in the first four feet are rare, but when occasionally introduced they contribute to the melody of the versification: as,

*Dicemus, Daphninque tuum tollemus ad astra.*

*Daphnin || ad astra || feremus, || amavit nos quoque Daphnis.*—VIRG.

- (4) The 3d foot may not consist of a single word. Such verses as the following are therefore bad :

*Et liquidi simul ignes, his exordia primis.  
Non aliter quam fervida qui freta remige findit.*

The following exception occurs in Virgil :

*Summa leves hinc nescio quâ dulcedine lætæ.*

But *nescio quis* was considered as equivalent to a single word.

- (5) Verses without Cæsura in the 3d foot are comparatively rare : as,

*Eumenides, quibus angineo redimita capillo.*—CATULL.

- (6) A Verse, which has the strong Hephthemimeral Cæsura without the strong Penthemimeral, generally has the strong Trihemimeral : as,

*Non unquam || gravis ære domum || mihi dextra redibat.*—VIRG.

rarely the weak Trihemimeral without a Penthemimeral : as,

*Degeneremque || Neoptolemum || narrare memento.*—VIRG.

rarely the weak Penthemimeral without a Trihemimeral : as,

*Orphei Calliopea || Lino || formosus Apollo.*—VIRG.  
*Armentarius Afer || agit || tectumque Laremque.*—VIRG.

rarely the two weak Cæsuras together : as,

*Una Eurisque || Notusque || ruunt, || creberque procellis.*—VIRG.

- (7) Dialysis with stop after the 3d foot is rare, and to be very sparingly introduced : as,

*Montibus audiri fragor : | et resonantia longè.*—VIRG.

- (8) The strong Ennehemimeral Cæsura (after the first syllable of the 5th foot) is rare and harsh : as,

*Nec saturare fimo pingui pudeat || solu, neve.*—VIRG.

When the verse ends with a quadrisyllabic word, forming an *Ionic a Minore*, this Cæsura is unavoidable : as,

*Per connubia nostra, per inceptos || hymenæos.*—VIRG.

- (9) Verses, in which the latter half makes a double rhyme to the former, should be avoided : as,

*Trajicit : i, verbis virtutem illude superbis.*—VIRG.

- (10) The sound and rhythm of Verses may often be suited to the sense ; thus Virgil uses Spondees to express slowness and difficulty ; Dactyls to mark rapidity and ease : as,

(a) *Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt.*—VIRG.

*Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossan*

*Scilicet, atque Ossæ frondosum involvere Olympum.*—VIRG.

(b) *Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum.*—VIRG.

*Sed fugit interea, fugit irreparabile tempus.*—VIRG.

*Labitur et labetur in omne volubilis ævum.*—HOR.

A final Monosyllable often expresses ponderousness : as,

*Sternitur exanimisqæ tremens procumbit humi bos.*—VIRG.

Crowded Elisions, especially Ethlipses, give a harsh and rugged sound to a Verse, and are sometimes used where the idea conveyed is of that character : as in the well-known description of the Cyclops :

*Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.*—VIRG.

Both the pauses, Cæsura, and Dialysis, are often accommodated to the sense with great effect and beauty.



## E. DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.

a. A trisyllabic word at the end of the Pentameter is ungraceful, and to be avoided, though sometimes found : as,

*Abditu quæ senis fata canit pedibus.*—TIBULL.

A quadrisyllabic or quinesyllabic termination is not so ungraceful as the trisyllabic, but it occurs seldom in Ovid, and is not generally proper for imitation : as,

*Maxima de nihilo nascitur historia.*—PROPERT.

*Lis est cum formâ magna pudicitia.*—OV.

b. The following additional rules for the Pentameter will be found useful by the young composer :—

(1) The first Penthemimer seldom ends with an Iambic word ; but when it does, the 1st foot is usually a Spondee : as,

*Pascebatque suas ipse senator oves.*—OV.

But not always : as,

*Si tibi cura mei, sit tibi cura tui.*—OV.

(2) The first Penthemimer seldom begins with a spondaic word ; seldom contains two spondees ; and begins more frequently with a dactyl than with a spondee.

(3) Elisions in the second Penthemimer are inelegant : before the final disyllable an elision, such as in the following verse, is to be entirely avoided :

*Quis scit an hæc sævas tigridas insula habet ?*—OV.

(4) The final disyllabic word should be either a verb, a substantive, or a pronoun (personal or possessive). An adverb is seldom placed there ; an adjective or participle very seldom, unless as a predicate or with a strong emphasis : as,

*Hoc faciet positæ te mihi, terra, levem.*—OV.

(5) The verse seldom ends with a short vowel : as,

*Qualiter abjectâ de nive manat aqua.*—OV.

- (6) The Penthemimers may end with words that rhyme singly: *as*,

*Huc ades, et nitidas casside solve comas.*—Ov.

But the double or Leonine rhyme is to be avoided: *as*,

*Quærebant flavos per nemus omne favos.*—Ov.

- (7) The word preceding the final disyllable should not be a monosyllable



## F. THE ELEGIAC DISTICH.

*a.* Sentences are not often carried on from one distich to another at all: but when they are, there should be some kind of pause in the sense. Attributives are not to be so separated from the words which they qualify: but verbs and other predicates are occasionally so divided from their subjects. *As*,

*Languor et immodici nullo sub vindice somni,*

*Aleaque, et multo tempora quassa mero,*

*Eripiunt omnes animo sine vulnere nervos:*

*Adfluit incautis insidiosus amor.*—Ov.

*b.* The following additional Rules for the Elegiac Distich may also be useful:—

- (1) The Elegiac Hexameter is much more restricted in its rhythms than the Heroic. One of the Cæsuras, strong or weak, in the 3d foot, is almost always present: almost always, too, either the strong Penthemimeral or the strong Hephthemimeral Cæsura. A Dialectic at the end of the 2d foot, after a word of more than two times, is bad. Ennehemimeral Cæsuras (except after a monosyllable), spondees in the fifth place, terminations by a word of more than three syllables, &c., must be avoided.

- (2) A pause in the sense is found, oftener than not, at the close of the Hexameter. Ovid very seldom intermixes the sense from the beginning to the end of a distich: and when he does so, he takes care to make the arrangement of words as neat and perspicuous as possible: *as*,

*Roma, nisi immensum vires promôset in orbem,*

*Stramineis esset nunc quoque densa casis.*—Ov.

- (3) If the sense is carried on to the first word of the Pentameter, after which is a pause, that word is usually a dactyl, often a trochee, seldom a spondee or molossus, more rarely yet a choriambus.

- (4) Elisions should be sparingly and never harshly used. It has been observed that in the first 1000 lines of the *Fasti* there are cut off only 4 final syllables in *m*, 7 long, and 39 short vowels, making a total of 50, or an average of only one elision in 20 lines. And of these 33 are before the word *est*.

## G. OTHER METRES USED BY POETS OF THE AUGUSTAN AGE.

## I SINGLE VERSES.

(Metres consisting of one sort of Rhythm (as the Heroic) are called Monocola.)

## a. DACTYLIC RHYTHMS.

(1) Dimeter Hypercatalectic (Penthemimer) Archilochius Minor consisting of two Dactyls and a syllable:

$\overset{1}{-} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | - \overset{2}{\underset{\cdot}{\cup}} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | -$   
*Arbōri|busque col|mæ. — HOR.*

(2) Tetrameter Alcmæus, having a Dactyl in the 3d and a Spondee in the 4th foot.

$\overset{1}{-} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | - \overset{2}{\underset{\cdot}{\cup}} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | - \overset{3}{\underset{\cdot}{\cup}} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | - \overset{4}{-} -$   
*Mobili|bus po|maria | rivis. — HOR.*

In the case of a Proper Name Horace has a Spondee in the 3d foot: as.

*Menso|rem coh|bent, Ar|chyta.*

## b. TROCHAIC RHYTHMS.

(1) Dimeter Catalectic; three Trochees and a Syllable:

$\overset{1}{-} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | - \overset{2}{\underset{\cdot}{\cup}} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | - \overset{3}{\underset{\cdot}{\cup}} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | -$   
*Non tra|bes Hy|metti|æ. — HOR.*

(2) Alcaicus Enneasyllabus, or Trochaic Dimeter with Anacrusis:

Anacr  $\overset{1}{-} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} || - \overset{2}{\underset{\cdot}{\cup}} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | - - | - \overset{3}{\underset{\cdot}{\cup}} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | - \overset{4}{-} -$   
*Per||jura | pugna|ces A|chivos. — HOR.*

In Horace, the fifth syllable is always long; the first seldom short.

(3) The Tetrameter Catalectic was used by the Greek Tragic and Comic Poets. The Latin Poem (of uncertain age and author) called Pervigilium Veneris, is a Monocolon in this Metre; of which the following is the scheme:

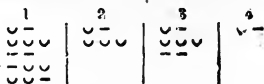
$\overset{1}{-} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | \overset{2}{\underset{\cdot}{\cup}} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | \overset{3}{\underset{\cdot}{\cup}} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | \overset{4}{\underset{\cdot}{\cup}} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} || \overset{5}{\underset{\cdot}{\cup}} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | \overset{6}{\underset{\cdot}{\cup}} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | \overset{7}{\underset{\cdot}{\cup}} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} \underset{\cdot}{\cup} | -$

*Cras a|met qui |nunquam a|mavit || quique a|mavit | ras a|met*

Dialysis after the 4th foot is essential in general.

## C. IAMBIC RHYTHMS.

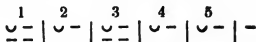
## (1) Dimeter Acatalectic:



*Forti | seque|mur pec|tore. — HOR.*

*Canidi|a tra|ctavit | dapes. — HOR.*

## (2) Trimeter Catalectic:



*Meā | reni|det in | domo | lacu|nar. — HOR.*

*Trahunt|que sic|cas ma|chinæ | cari|nas. — HOR.*

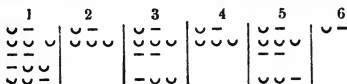
There is always a Penthemimeral Cæsura.

## (3) Trimeter Acatalectic, or Senarius, which sometimes consists of six Iambic feet (Hexapodia Iambica): as,

1	2	3	4	5	6
—	—	—	—	—	—
∪	∪	∪	∪	∪	∪
∪	∪	∪	∪	∪	∪
∪	∪	∪	∪	∪	∪

*Suis | et ip|sa Ro|ma vi|ribus | ruit. — HOR.*  
*Gemel|le Cas|tor et | gemel|le Cas|toris. — CATULL.*

But usually Spondees are admitted into the 1st, 3d, and 5th places; a Tribrach may stand in any place but the last for an Iambus; a Dactyl in the 1st place, and an Anapæst in the 1st (rarely in the 5th), for a Spondee.



*Pater|na ru|ra bo|bus ex|ercet | suis. — HOR.*

*Aliti|bus at|que cani|bus homi|cidam Hec|torem. — HOR.*

*Pavidum|que lepo|rem et ad|venam | laqueo | gruem. — HOR.*

A strong Penthemimeral or Hephthemimeral Cæsura is necessary to the harmony of the Verse. This Verse may form a Metrum Monocolon.

## (4) Tetrameter Catalectic Hipponacteus: as

1	2	3	4	5	6	7
—	—	—	—	—	—	—
∪	∪	∪	∪	∪	∪	∪
∪	∪	∪	∪	∪	∪	∪
∪	∪	∪	∪	∪	∪	∪

*Depren|sa na|vis in | mari || vesa|nien|te ven|to. — CATULL.*

There is a Dialysis after the 4th foot. This Verse forms a Metrum Monocolon, not used by Horace.

## (5) Scæzon, or Choliambus; which is an Iambic Trimeter with a Spondee in the 6th, and an Iambus in the 5th, place: as,

1	2	3	4	5	6
—	—	—	—	—	—
∪	∪	∪	∪	∪	∪
∪	∪	∪	∪	∪	∪
∪	∪	∪	∪	∪	∪

*Miser | Catul|le, de|sinas | inep|tire. — CATULL.*

Used as a Metrum Monocolon, but not by Horace.

*Obs.* The Comic Poets, Plautus and Terence, allowed themselves great liberties in the construction of Trochaic and Iambic Verses, admitting Spondees, Dactyls, and Anapæsts, in every place but the last,

sometimes even Proceleusmatics; with frequent Hiatus and other licences: as.

(a) *Juben' an|non ju|bes as|titui| aulæ, | patinas | elui.* — PLAUT.  
*Ad te ad|venio| spem, sa|lulem | consili|um, auxili|um appe|tens.*  
 — TER.

(b) *Hoc pater| ac domi|nus in|terest: | hoc qui | facit,*  
*Fatea|tur ne|scire im|pera|re li|beris.* — TER.

The Iambic Trimeters of the fabulist Phædrus resemble these, but take fewer feet of three syllables and fewer licences.

#### d. IONIC RHYTHMS.

(1) Ionicus a minore Dimeter Acatalecticus.

1 2  
 ∪ ∪ — — | ∪ ∪ — —  
*Patruæ ver|bera linguæ.* — HOR.

(2) Ionicus a minore Tetrameter Acatalecticus.

1 2 3 4  
 ∪ ∪ — — | ∪ ∪ — — | ∪ ∪ — — | ∪ ∪ — —  
*Miserarum est | neque amori | dare ludum, | neque dulci.* — HOR.

#### e. MIXED RHYTHMS.

1. Logædic. The Logædic Rhythm is that in which Dactyls are followed by Trochees. An Anacrusis or a Base often begins it, and sometimes a Choriambus is inserted.

(1) Adonius, consisting of Dactyl and Trochee (Dactylus simplex simpliciter Trochaicus):

1 2  
 — ∪ ∪ | — ∪  
*Risit A|pollo.* — HOR.

(2) Aristophanius, consisting of Dactyl and two Trochees (Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus):

1 2 3  
 — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ | — ∪  
*Lydia | dic per | omnes.* — HOR.

After the Dactyl there is always Dialysis.

(3) Pherecrateus, consisting of an Adonius preceded by a Base, which, in Horace, is always in Spondaic; in Catullus, almost always Trochaic:

Base 1 2  
 — — || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪  
*Vix du||rare ca|rinæ.* — HOR.  
*Lute||umve pa|paver.* — CATULL.

(4) Glyconeus, consisting of Dactyl, Trochee, and Syllable (Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus Catalectic); preceded by a Base, which, in Horace, is almost always Spondaic; in Catullus, usually Trochaic.

Base 1 2  
 — — || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ | —  
*Mater || sæva Cu|pidi|num.* — HOR.  
*Tardat || ingenu|us pu|dor.* — CATULL.

(5) Asclepiadeus Minor, consisting of a Choriambus preceded by a Spondaic Base, and followed by Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus Catalecticus:

Base            1            2            3  
 -- || - ∪ ∪ - | - ∪ ∪ | - ∪ | -

*Mæce||nas atavis | edite | regi|bus. — HOR.*

Horace almost always has a Dialysis after the Choriambus. An Elision rarely follows it: as,

*Audi||tam modere|re arbori|bus fi|dem. — HOR.*

It is used as Metrum Monocolon.

(6) Asclepiadeus Major, which differs from A. Minor only in having two successive Choriambic feet instead of one,

Base            1            2            3            4  
 -- || - ∪ ∪ - | - ∪ ∪ - | - ∪ ∪ | - ∪ | -

Base  
*Nullam || Vare sacrâ | vite priùs | severis | arbo|rem. — HOR.*

Horace has a Dialysis after each Choriambus. This is used as Metrum Monocolon.

(7) Alcaicus Decasyllabus, consisting of two Dactyls and two Trochees (Dactylus duplex dupliciter Trochaicus):

1            2            3            4  
 - ∪ ∪ | - ∪ ∪ | - ∪ | - ∪

*Nec vete|res agi|tantur | orni. — HOR.*

If there is a Dialysis after the first dactyl, there should be none after the second. Such a line as the following would be bad:

*Omnia perfidus ille dixit.*

A weak Cæsura in the second dactyl is generally to be avoided: Horace has few such verses as

*O Thaliarche || merum diota. — HOR.*

*Me cichorea || levesque malvæ. — HOR.*

(8) Phalæcius Hendecasyllabus, consisting of a Dactyl and three Trochees (Dactylus simplex tripliciter Trochaicus) preceded by a Base (usually Spondaic), is a Metrum Monocolon, not used by Horace.

Base            1            2            3            4  
 -- || - ∪ ∪ | - ∪ | - ∪ | - ∪

*Soles | occide|re et re|dire | possunt. — CATULL.*

Instead of the Spondaic base we sometimes find an Iambus, seldom a Trochee: as,

*Minister vetuli, puer, Falerni. — CATULL.*

*Aridâ modò pumice expolitum. — CATULL.*

A Spondee is sometimes put for the Dactyl, but very inharmoniously.

This Verse usually has either Dialysis after the second foot, or a Cæsura after the first syllable of the third.



(9) Archilochius Major, consisting of a Dactylic Tetrameter (always with a Dactyl in the 4th place) and three Trochees (or Versus Ithyphallicus).

- <sup>1</sup> u u | - <sup>2</sup> u u | - <sup>3</sup> u u | - <sup>4</sup> u u | - <sup>5</sup> u | - <sup>6</sup> u | - <sup>7</sup> u

*Solvitur | acris hi|ems gra|tâ vice||veris | et Fa|coni.* — HOR.

Dialysis after the 4th foot is essential.

(10) Sapphic Minor, consisting of a Dactyl and two Trochees (Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus) preceded by a double Base (Trochee + Spondee).

Double Base    1    2    3  
- u - - || - u u | - u | - u

*Nota quæ se||des fue|rat co|lumbis.* — HOR.

Sappho, the inventor of this verse (as also Catullus) often used the double Trochee for Base : but Horace always lengthens the 4th syllable.

The strong Cæsura after the 5th syllable is almost always found ; occasionally the weak Cæsura after the 6th (short) syllable : as,

*Non semel dicemus || io triumphe.* — HOR.

One or the other is essential to the harmony of the verse.

(11) Sapphic Major Anacreontius ; which only differs from the last in having a Choriambus between the Base and Dactyl.

Double Base    1    2    3    4  
- u - - || - u u - | - u u | - u | - u

*Sæpe trans fi||nem jaculo | nobilis | expe|dito.* — HOR.

There is a Cæsura after the 5th and a Dialysis after the 8th syllable.

(12) Versus Alcaicus Hendecasyllabus, consisting of Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus Catalectic, preceded by a double Base (Trochee + Spondee), which is again preceded by an Anacrusis.

Anacr.    Base    1    2  
u || - u - - | - u u | - u | -

*Mors || et fugacem || persequi|tur vi|rum.* — HOR.

*Vi||des ut altâ || stet nive | candi|dum.* — HOR.

[The young composer may scan it as consisting of a Spondee (or Iambus), an Iambus, long syllable, and two dactyls.

u = | u - | - | - u u | - u u |

*Qui pri|mus al|mâ | risit a|doreâ.* — HOR.]

The short Anacrusis is used but seldom. There is Dialysis after the 5th syllable. An elision sometimes occurs there : as,

*Regum timendo||rum in proprios greges.* — HOR.

## 2. Asynartete.

(1) Iambelegus Archilochius, composed of an Iambic Dimeter and a Dactylic Penthemimer.

1 2 3 4 5 6  
 — — | — — | — — | — — || — — — | — — — | — —

*Tu vi|na Tor|quato | move || consule | pressa me|o. — Hor.*

There is a Dialysis at the end of the Dimeter.

(2) Elegiambus Archilochius, in which a Dactylic Penthemimer goes before an Iambic Dimeter.

1 2 3 4 5 6  
 — — — | — — — | — || — — | — — | — — | — —

*Jussus ab|ire do|num || fere|bar in|certo | pede. — Hor.*

There is a Dialysis at the end of the Penthemimer.

(a) — The Anapæstic Rhythm is the converse of the Dactylic. It admits however Spondees and Dactyls; in which the Ictus falls on the second syllable. The most usual verse is the Dimeter, having a Dialysis after the second foot; as,

*O va|ne pudor || falsum|que decus.*

The Greek poets used this verse in systems ending with a Dimeter Catalectic, called Versus Paræmiacus; but the Roman poets have not imitated them. A monometer is sometimes introduced (in Greek always before the Paræmiacus), called a Base. In Anapæstic verse alone, the last syllable of a verse is not held common, and makes position with the succeeding verse.

(b) — The Saturnian Verse, an old Roman measure, not used in the best ages, consisted of an Iambic Hephthemimer followed by an Ithyphallic: as,

*Dabunt | malum | Metel|li || Nævi|o po|ëtæ.*

Many licenses were admitted.

## II. ON STROPHIC METRES.

Metres consisting of more than one kind of verse in a recurring order are called Strophic. A Metre containing two kinds is called Dicolon; three, Tricolon, &c. When two Verses alternate, the metre is called Distichon (or Distrophon); when the recurrence takes place after four lines, Tetrastichon (or Tetrastrophon). The following Strophic Metres occur in the Augustan poets.

## a. DICOLA DISTICHA OR DISTROPHA.

(1) Metrum Hipponactæum.

Trochaic. Dimeter Catalectic. + Iambic. Trimeter Catalectic.

*Non ebur neque aureum*

*Mæâ renidet in domo lacunar. — Hor. 2, 18.*

The Trochaic Verse admits only Trochees. The Iambic has no Dactyls or Anapæsts; and always has the Penthemimeral Cæsura.

(2) Metrum Iambicum Senarium Quaternarium.

Iambic. Trim. Acat. + Iambic. Dim. Acat.

*Beatus ille qui procul negotiis,  
Ut prisca gens mortalium.* — HOR. *Epod.* 2.

(3) Metrum Archilochium Primum.

Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Dactyl. Archilochius Minor.

*Diffugere nives; redeunt jam gramina campis,  
Arboribusque comæ.* — HOR. *Od.* 4, 7.

(4) Metrum Archilochium Secundum.

Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Iambelegus Archilochius.

*Horrida tempestas calum contraxit, et imbres  
Nivesque deducunt Jovem; nunc mare nunc siluæ.*  
— HOR. *Epod.* 13

(5) Metrum Archilochium Tertium.

Iambic. Trim. Acat. + Elegiambus Archilochius.

*Petti, nihil me, sicut antea, juvat  
Scribere versiculos Amore percussum gravi.* — HOR. *Epod.* 11.

(6) Metrum Archilochium Quartum.

Logaædicus Archilochius Major + Iamb. Trim. Cat.

*Solvitur acris hyems gratâ vice veris et Favoni,  
Trahuntque siccæ machinæ carinas.* — HOR. *Od.* 1, 4.

The Iambic line always has a Spondee in the third place, and admits no trisyllabic feet.

(7) Metrum Pythiambicum Primum.

Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Iamb. Dim. Acat.

*Mollis inertia cur tantam diffuderit imis  
Oblivionem sensibus.* — HOR. *Epod.* 14.

(8) Metrum Pythiambicum Secundum.

Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Hexapodia Iambica.

*Altera jam teritur bellis civilibus atas,  
Suis et ipsa Roma viribus ruit.* — HOR. *Epod.* 16.

(9) Metrum Alcmanium.

Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Dactyl. Tetram. Alcmanius.

*Laudabunt alii claram Rhodon, aut Mitylenen  
Aut Ephesum, bimariseve Corinthi.* — HOR. *Od.* 1, 7. *Epod.* 7

(10) Metrum Asclepiadeum Secundum.

Versus Glyconeus + Versus Asclepiadeus Minor.

*Sic te Diva potens Cypri,  
Sic fratres Helenæ, lucida sidera.* — HOR. *Od.* 1, 8.

Horace has twelve Odes in this measure.

(11) Metrum Sapphicum Majus.

Dactylus simplex dupliciter Trochaicus + Sapphicus Majus.

*Lydia, dic per omnes  
Te deos oro, Sybarin cur properes amando.* — HOR. *Od.* 1, 3

b. DICOLA TETRASTICHA OR TETRASTROPHA.

(1) Strophe Sapphica Minor.

Terni Sapphici Minores + Adonius.

*Integer vitæ scelerisque purus  
Non eget Mauri jaculis, neque arcæ,  
Nec venenatis gravidâ sagittis,  
Fusce, pharetrâ.* — HOR. *Od.* 1, 22.

There are 26 Sapphic Odes in Horace.

The Adonian Verse is so intimately connected with the third Sapphic line that Hiatus at the close of the latter is unusual, and words are sometimes divided between the two verses: as,

*Thracio bacchante magis sub inter-  
lunia vento.* — HOR.

An Hypermeter is sometimes found among the Sapphic lines: as.

*Dissidens plebi numero beatorum  
Eximit virtus.* — HOR.

(2) Metrum Asclepiadeum Tertium.

Terni Asclepiadei Minores + Glyconeus.

*Jam veris comites, quæ mare temperant,  
Impellunt animæ lintea Thraciæ:  
Jam nec prata rigent, nec fluvii strepunt  
Hibernâ nive turgidi.* — HOR. *Od.* 4, 12.

Horace has nine odes in this measure.

c. TRICOLA TETRASTICHA.

(1) Metrum Asclepiadeum Quartum.

Bini Asclepiadei Minores + Pherecrateus + Glyconeus.

*Primâ nocte domum claude: neque in vias  
Sub cantu querulæ despice tibix:  
Et te sæpe vocanti  
Duram difficilis mane.* — HOR. *Od.* 3, 7, 29

Horace has seven Odes in this Metre.

## (2) Strophe Alcaica.

Bini Alcaici Hendecasyllabi + Alcaicus Enneasyllabus + Logaedicus Alcaicus Decasyllabus.

*Qui rore puro Castaliæ lavit  
Crines solutos, qui Lyciæ tenet  
Dæmetæ natalemque sylvam,  
Delius et Patareus Apollo.* — HOR. *Od.* 3, 4, 61.

Horace has written thirty-seven Odes in this Metre.

The following Rules for the rhythm of the Alcaic stanza must be observed : —

## (a.) First and second lines.

(1) The short syllable at the beginning is to be very sparingly used.

(2) The Dialysis after the 5th syllable must be generally preserved. The instances of its absence are few : as,

*Hostile aratrum ex|ercitus insolens.* — HOR.  
*Mentemque lymp|ham Mareotico.* — HOR.

But an Elision often occurs after it : as,

*Quo Styx et invis|i horrida Tenari.*

(3) A Monosyllable before the Dialysis is rare (unless with another preceding) but occasionally found : as,

*Nil Claudiæ non perficient manus.* — HOR.  
*Te fontium qui celat origines.* — HOR.

(4) A Monosyllable rarely occurs at the end of the line : as

*Ne forte credas interitura quæ.* — HOR.

Excepting *et*, with a preceding elision, which is not unfrequent : as,

*Judex honestum prætulit utili et.* — HOR.

## (b.) Third line.

(1) The initial Iambus (short syllable) is to be very seldom used. Horace has only 10 instances, and of these only 2 in the 3rd and 4th Books of the Odes, which are his last and most finished compositions.

(2) Horace never begins with a word of four syllables, unless an elision follows, as,

*Funalia et vectes et arcus.* — HOR.

and that very seldom : never with two disyllables. Such lines as the following are therefore bad, and to be avoided entirely : —

*Immobiles mansere Graii.  
Inter feras horret catervas.*

A Monosyllable and Cretic are also to be avoided, being but once used by Horace :

*Hunc Lesbio sacrare plectra.*

(3) This Verse should not end with a word of four syllables. Horace has only three instances, all within the 1st and 2nd Books. Nor with two disyllables, though of this rhythm there are eight examples in the first book. Avoid, therefore, these Rhythms:

*Regumque matres barbarorum.*

*Prenos relabi posse rivos.*

(4) No monosyllable should end the line, except (and that rarely) *et* or *in* with an elision: as,

*Cum flore Mæcenæ rosarum, et.* — HOR.

*Insude diffingas retusum in.* — HOR.

(5) Hypermeters occur only twice in Horace: as,

*Sors exitura, et nos in ater|num*

*Exilium impositura cymbæ.*

*Cum puce delabentis Etru|scum*

*In mare.*

#### (c.) Fourth line.

(1) The principal cautions for the structure of this verse have been already given, p. 208. (7).

(2) A rhythm generally objectionable is sometimes justified by its accommodation to the sense of the passage: as,

*Juppiter ipse ruens tumultu.*

*Stesichorique graves Camenæ.*

*Note 1.*—Modern scholars have observed that most of Horace's Odes in Metra Monocola or Dicola contain as many lines as form some multiple of 4. This has justly led them to regard such Metres as Tetra-strophic; and as such they are printed by Orelli, Dillenburger, &c. Such are Carm. I. 1. 3. 4. 8. 11. &c.

*Note 2.*—A careful examination of the Odes of Horace, especially of those in the 3rd and 4th books, his last and most finished works, will show that this poet carefully regarded the metrical relation of one verse to another, especially in the same strophe: that a verse ending with a vowel or *m* before another beginning with a vowel rarely occurs. Such juxtapositions as the following are therefore rather to be avoided than imitated.

*Neve te nostris vitis iniquum*

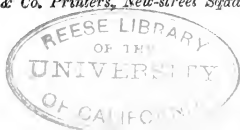
*Ocior aura.*

*Fias recantatis amon*

*Opprobriis, animumque reddas.*

#### THE END

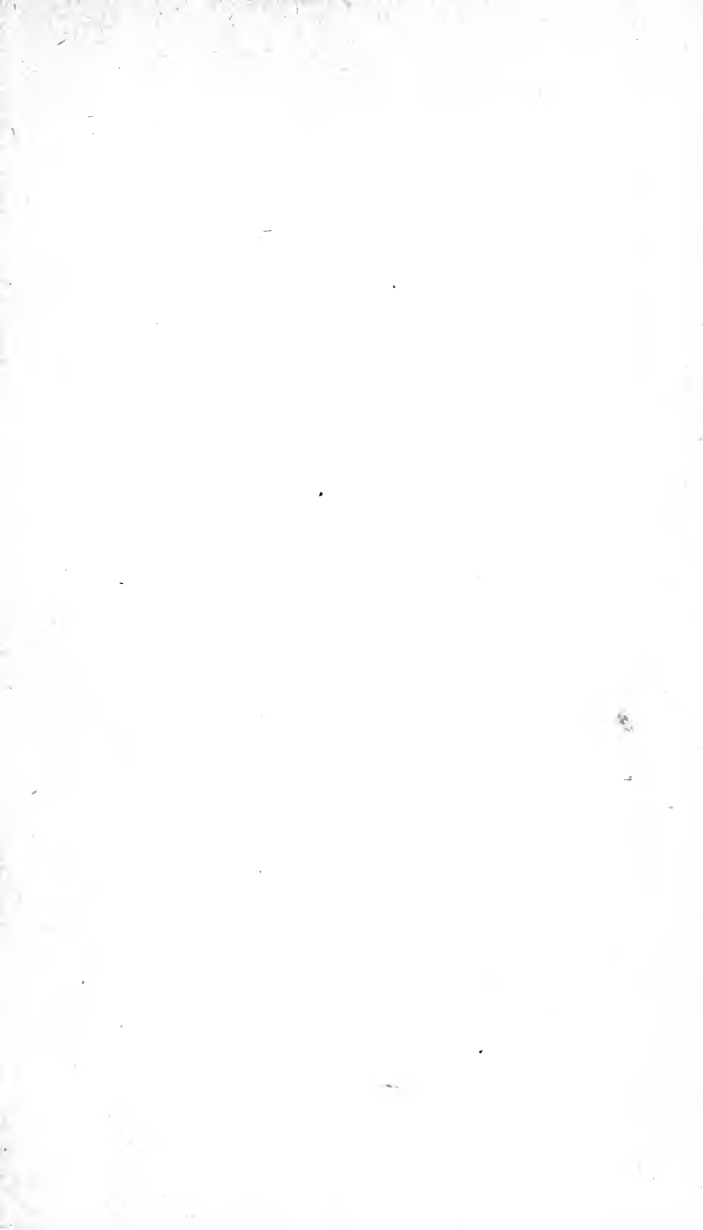
Spottiswoode & Co. Printers, New-street Square, London.











RETURN TO the circulation desk of any  
University of California Library  
or to the

NORTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY  
Bldg. 400, Richmond Field Station  
University of California  
Richmond, CA 94804-4698

---

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS

- 2-month loans may be renewed by calling (510) 642-6753
  - 1-year loans may be recharged by bringing books to NRLF
  - Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days prior to due date.
- 

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

---

JUN 04 1997

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C042922474

80368

